MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 67

The Deeds of Louis the Fat

Suger of Saint-Denis

Vita Ludovici Grossi Regis
De Rebus in Administratione Sua Gestis
De Consecratione

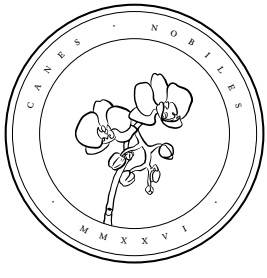
The Deeds of Louis the Fat

With Suger's Books on His Administration
and on the Consecration of Saint-Denis

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

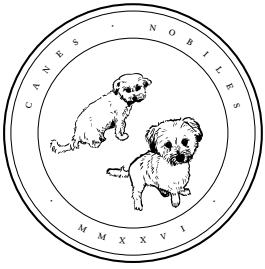


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 67 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Albert Lecoy de la Marche's
edition, Œuvres complètes de Suger (Paris, 1867)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

VITA LUDOVICI GROSSI REGIS

Prologue · To Bishop Goslen 11
1 · Louis's Youth and the War with William Rufus 13
2 · Bouchard of Montmorency 20
3 · Matthew of Beaumont and Luzarches 23
4 · The Siege of Chambly 25
5 · Ebles of Roucy 28
6 · The Castle of Meung 31
7 · The Castle of Montaigu 32
8 · Milo and Montlhéry 37
9 · Bohemond of Antioch 43
10 · The Taking of Gournay 61
11 · The Taking of Sainte-Sévère 67
12 · The Death of King Philip 70
13 · Louis Crowned King 73
14 · La Ferté-Baudouin and the Count of Corbeil 76
15 · The Parley at Les Planches de Neaufles 83
16 · The Murder at La Roche-Guyon 94
17 · Mantes and Montlhéry Taken from Philip 102
18 · The Destruction of Le Puiset 107
19 · Hugh Released 122
20 · Toury Besieged and Le Puiset Restored 125

VITA LUDOVICI GROSSI REGIS

(continued)

21 · Hugh's Last Treachery 139
22 · Peace with England and Theobald 140
23 · Thomas of Marle and Crécy 141
24 · Aimo of Bourbon 146
25 · The War with Henry of England 149
26 · The Popes Gelasius and Calixtus; Suger Made Abbot 161
27 · The Emperor Turned Back 172
28 · The Expeditions to Auvergne 183
29 · The Murder of Charles the Good 190
30 · Thomas of Marle's End 197
31 · The Schism and the Death of Prince Philip 202
32 · The Death of King Louis 214

DE REBUS IN ADMINISTRATIONE SUA GESTIS

1 · Why Suger Writes; Saint-Denis Castle 227
2 · Tremblay 233
3 · Argenteuil Recovered 235
4 · The Vexin 238
5 · Cormeilles-en-Parisis 241
6 · Montigny 242
7 · Cergy 242
8 · Louveciennes 243
9 · Vernouillet 244
10 · Vaucresson, Chevreuse, and the Beauce 245
11 · Monnerville and Rouvray 250
12 · Toury 254
13 · Poinville 260
14 · Fains and Vendreville 261
15 · Beaune-la-Rolande 262

DE REBUS IN ADMINISTRATIONE SUA GESTIS

(continued)

16 · The Barville Tithe and Beaune's Houses 265
17 · Essonnes 266
18 · The Cell at Notre-Dame-des-Champs 267
19 · The Mute Girl 269
20 · The Dropsical Woman and the New Priory 271
21 · Mareuil and the Exchange for La Celle 276
22 · Chaumont 278
23 · Berneval and Other Villages 280
24 · The First Painting of the Church 282
25 · The Enlargement Begun 283
26 · The Dedication of the West Chapels 285
27 · The Bronze Doors 287
28 · The New Choir 290
29 · The Nave Between the Two Works 293
30 · The Ornaments 295
31 · The Golden Altar Frontal 296
32 · The Great Gold Cross 299
33 · The Main Altar and the Anagogical Way 304
34 · The Choir, Windows, and Vessels 316

DE CONSECRATIONE

1 · Why Suger Writes of the Consecration 329
2 · Dagobert's Church and Its Crowding 333
3 · Two Wonders of the Building 341
4 · The West Front Consecrated and the Choir Begun 346
5 · The Choir Built 354
6 · The Assembly for the Consecration 362
7 · The Translation of the Saints and the Altars 367

SUGER OF SAINT-DENIS

Vita Ludovici Grossi Regis

The Deeds of Louis the Fat

Prologus

PROLOGUE · TO BISHOP GOSLEN

Suger, abbot of Saint-Denis, sends Goslen, bishop of Soissons, the deeds of King Louis, a lord kind to them both, and submits them to the bishop's judgment: Suger will write, and Goslen correct. Friendship, he argues, does not offend charity, and so together they raise the king a monument more lasting than bronze, that neither his memory nor the Church's prayers for him may fail.

Domino et digne reverendo Suessionensi episcopo Gosleno,
to-the-lord and worthily to-be-revered of-Soissons bishop Goslen
Sugerius, Dei patientia beati ariopagitæ Dionysii abbas
Suger of-God by-patience of-blessed the-Areopagite Denis abbot
vocatus, Jesu Christi qualiscumque servus, episcopo
called of-Jesus Christ such-as-he-is servant with-the-bishop
episcoporum episcopaliter uniri.
of-bishops in-episcopal-manner to-be-united
Confert eorum deliberationi et judicio et nos et nostra
it-profits of-those to-the-deliberation and judgment both us and ours
subici, quorum universali judicio odibilis et amabilis diversa
to-be-subjected whose by-universal judgment hateful and lovable different
diversis promulgabitur censura, cum nobilis vir sedebit
on-different-ones shall-be-proclaimed censure when the-noble man shall-sit
in portis cum senatoribus terræ. Eapropter, virorum optime,
in the-gates with the-senators of-the-land wherefore of-men best
etiamsi cathedra non contulisset, cujus totus sum in eo cujus
even-if the-chair not had-conferred-it whose whole I-am in him whose
totus es tu (nec si plus quæris plus habeo), serenissimi
whole are you nor if more you-seek more do-I-have of-the-most-serene
regis Francorum Ludovici gesta approbatæ scientiæ vestræ
king of-the-Franks Louis the-deeds of-proven knowledge your

arbitrio delegamus, ut quia nobis communiter promovendis
to-the-judgment we-delegate that since to-us in-common to-be-promoted
et promotis benignissimus extitit dominus, ego scribendo, vos
and promoted most-kind was the-lord I by-writing you
corrigendo, quem pariter amabamus pariter et decantemus
by-correcting whom equally we-loved equally both may-sing-of
et deploremus. Neque enim caritati repugnat etiam beneficiis
and may-lament nor for to-charity is-repugnant even by-benefits
comparata amicitia, cum qui inimicos diligere præcipit,
acquired friendship since he-who enemies to-love commands
amicos non prohibeat. Duplici ergo et, licet dispari, non
friends not forbids by-a-twofold therefore and though unequal not
tamen opposito, beneficii et caritatis debito, excidamus ei
yet opposed of-benefit and of-charity debt let-us-carve for-him
monumentum ære perennius, cum et ejus circa cultum
a-monument than-bronze more-lasting since both his around the-worship
ecclesiarum Dei devotionem, et circa regni statum
of-the-churches of-God devotion and around of-the-kingdom the-state
mirabilem stylo tradiderimus strenuitatem; cujus nec
wonderful by-the-pen we-shall-have-handed-down vigor whose neither
aliqua temporum immutatione deleri valeat memoria,
by-any of-times change to-be-blotted-out may-be-able the-memory
nec a generatione in generationem suffragantis Ecclesiæ
nor from generation to generation of-the-praying Church
pro impensis beneficiis orationum desistat instantia. Valeat
for bestowed benefits of-prayers may-cease the-insistence may-be-able
celsitudo vestra inter cœli senatores feliciter episcopari.
highness your among of-heaven the-senators happily to-be-bishop

Quam strenuus in adolescentia fuerit, et quanta strenuitate fortissimum regem Anglorum Willelmum Rufum, paternum regnum turbantem, repulerit

1 · LOUIS'S YOUTH AND THE WAR WITH WILLIAM RUFUS

Louis, son of King Philip, is raised at Saint-Denis and grows into a handsome youth, the hope of churches and the poor. When King William of England, holding Normandy, attacks him and is rumored to covet the crown, Louis meets him from the Vexin with far fewer men, until after three fruitless years William dies by an arrow in the New Forest.

Gloriosus igitur et famosus rex Francorum Ludovicus, regis
glorious therefore and famous king of-the-Franks Louis of-king
magnifici Philippi filius, primævæ flore ætatis, fere adhuc
magnificent Philip son of-early in-the-flower of-age almost still
duodennis seu tredennis, elegans et formosus, tanta
twelve-years-old or thirteen-years-old elegant and handsome with-so-great
morum probabilium venerabili industria, tanta amœnissimi
of-ways approvable venerable diligence with-so-great of-most-lovely
corporis proceritate proficiebat, ut et sceptris futuris
body tallness be-advanced that both for-scepters future
reipsa amplificationem honorificam incunctanter promitteret,
in-fact enlargement honorable without-hesitation he-promised
et ecclesiarum et pauperum tuitioni spem votivam
and of-churches and of-the-poor for-the-protection hope longed-for
generaret. Altus puerulus, antiqua regum Caroli Magni et
he-produced raised the-little-boy by-the-old of-kings of-Charles the-Great and
aliorum excellentiorum, hoc ipsum testamentis imperialibus
of-other more-excellent-ones this very by-testaments imperial
testificantium, consuetudine, apud Sanctum Dionysium
attesting custom at Saint Denis

tanta et quasi nativa dulcedine ipsis sanctis martyribus
with-so-great and as-if native sweetness to-the-very holy martyrs
suisque adhæsit, usque adeo ut innatam a puero
and-their-men clung so much that the-inborn from boyhood
eorum ecclesiæ amicitiam toto tempore vitæ suæ
their for-the-church friendship through-the-whole time of-life his
multa liberalitate et honorificentia continuaret, et in fine,
with-much liberality and honor he-continued and in the-end
summe post Deum sperans ab eis, seipsum et corpore et
most after God hoping from them himself both in-body and
anima, ut si fieri posset, ibidem monachus efficeretur,
in-soul that if to-be-done it-could there a-monk he-might-be-made
devotissime deliberando contraderet. Sane, præfata ætate,
most-devoutly by-deliberating he-handed-over truly at-the-aforesaid age
animo juvenili vigere maturabat virtus augtiva, impatiens
with-mind youthful to-flourish was-ripening the-strength increasing impatient
venationum et ludicrorum puerilium, quibus ætas hujusmodi
of-hunts and of-games boyish in-which age of-this-kind
lascivire et arma dediscere consuescit. Dumque multorum
to-frolic and arms to-unlearn is-wont and-while of-many
regni optimatum et egregie magnanimi regis Anglorum
of-the-kingdom of-the-magnates and excellently of-the-great-souled king of-the-English
Guillelmi, magnanimioris Guillelmi regis filii, Anglorum
William of-the-greater-souled William king son of-the-English
domitoris, infestatione agitatur, robur probitatis vaporat,
the-tamer by-the-hostility he-is-harried the-strength of-prowess glows
exercitio virtus arridet, inertiam removet, prudentiæ oculum
by-exercise valor smiles idleness it-removes of-prudence the-eye
aperit, otium dissolvit, sollicitudinem accelerat. Guillelmus
it-opens ease it-dissolves care it-quickens William
siquidem rex Anglorum usui militiæ aptus, laudis avarus,
indeed king of-the-English to-the-use of-knighthood apt of-praise greedy

famæque petitor, cum, exhæredato majore natu Roberto
and-of-fame a-seeker when disinherited the-elder by-birth Robert
fratre suo, patri Guillelmo feliciter successisset, et post
brother his to-father William happily he-had-succeeded and after
ejusdem fratris sui Hierosolymam profectionem ducatum
of-the-same brother his to-Jerusalem the-departure the-duchy
Normanniæ obtinuisset, sicut ejusdem Normanniæ ducatus
of-Normandy had-obtained as of-the-same Normandy the-duchy
se porrigit marchiis regni collimitans, quibuscumque
itself stretches to-the-marches of-the-kingdom bordering by-whatever
poterat modis famosum juvenem nitebatur impugnare. Similiter
he-could means the-famous youth he-strove to-attack likewise
et dissimiliter inter eos certabatur: similiter, cum neuter
and unlike between them it-was-contended likewise since neither
cederet; dissimiliter, cum ille maturus, iste juvenculus; ille
yielded unlike since he mature this-one a-young-lad he
opulentus et Anglorum thesaurorum profusor, mirabilisque
wealthy and of-the-English treasures a-squanderer and-wonderful
militum mercator et solidator; iste peculii expers, patri, qui
of-knights a-buyer and paymaster this-one of-property without to-father who
beneficiis regni utebatur parcendo, sola bonæ indolis
the-benefits of-the-kingdom used by-sparing by-sole of-good natural-talent
industria militiam cogebat, audacter resistebat. Videres
diligence knighthood gathered boldly resisted you-would-see
juvenem celerrimum modo Bituricensium, modo Arvernorum,
the-youth swiftest now of-the-men-of-Bourges now of-the-Auvergnats
modo Burgundionum militari manu transvolare fines; nec
now of-the-Burgundians with-knightly hand to-fly-across the-borders nor
idcirco tardius, si ei innotescat, Vilcassinum regredi,
for-that-reason more-slowly if to-him it-become-known to-the-Vexin to-return
et cum trecentis aut quingentis militibus præfato regi
and with three-hundred or five-hundred knights to-aforesaid king

Guillelmo cum decem millibus fortissime refragari; et ut
William with ten thousand most-bravely to-resist and as
dubius se habet belli eventus, modo cedere, modo fugare.
doubtful itself holds of-war the-outcome now to-yield now to-put-to-flight
Talibus utrobique multi intercipiebantur congressionibus,
by-such on-both-sides many were-cut-off encounters
quorum famosus juvenis et sui, cum plures alios, tum
of-whom the-famous youth and his-men as-well many others as
comitem Simonem, nobilem virum, Gislebertum de Aquila
count Simon a-noble man Gilbert of Laigle
nobilem, et Angliæ et Normanniæ æque illustrem baronem,
noble both of-England and of-Normandy equally an-illustrious baron
Paganum de Gisortio, cui castrum idem primo munivit;
Payen of Gisors for-whom the-castle the-same first fortified
rex e contrario Angliæ strenuum et nobilem comitem
the-king on-the contrary of-England the-vigorous and noble count
Matthæum Bellimontensem, illustrem et magni nominis
Matthew of-Beaumont illustrious and of-great name
baronem, Simonem de Monte Forti, dominum Montis Gaii
baron Simon of Mont- -fort lord of-Mont- -jay
Paganum, captos tenuerunt. Verum Angliæ captos ad
Payen captured held but of-England the-captives to
redemptionem celerem militaris stipendii acceleravit anxietas,
ransom swift of-knightly pay hastened the-anxiety
Francorum vero longa diuturni carceris maceravit prolixitas:
of-the-Franks but the-long of-lasting prison wasted the-length
nec ullo modo evinculari potuerunt, donec, suscepta ejusdem
nor in-any way to-be-unchained could-they until taken-up of-the-same
regis Angliæ militia, hominio obligati, regnum et regem
king of-England the-knighthood by-homage bound the-kingdom and king
impugnare et turbare jurejurando firmaverunt. Dicebatur
to-attack and to-disturb by-oath they-confirmed it-was-said

equidem vulgo regem illum superbum et impetuosum
indeed commonly king that proud and impetuous
aspirare ad regnum Francorum, quia famosus juvenis unicus
to-aspire to the-kingdom of-the-Franks because the-famous youth only-son
patri erat de nobilissima conjuge, Roberti Flandrensis
to-his-father was from most-noble wife of-Robert of-Flanders
comitis sorore. Qui enim duo supererant, Philippus et
of-the-count the-sister who for two remained Philip and
Florus, de superducta Andegavensi comitissa Bertrada geniti
Florus from the-brought-in of-Anjou countess Bertrada born
erant, nec illorum apreciabatur successionem, si unicum
were nor their did-he-value the-succession if the-only
primum decedere quocumque infortunio contingeret. Verum,
first to-die by-whatever misfortune it-should-happen but
quia nec fas nec naturale est Francos Anglis, imo Anglos
because neither right nor natural it-is the-French to-the-English nay the-English
Francis subjici, spem repulsivam rei delusit eventus.
to-the-French to-be-subjected the-hope repulsed of-the-thing deluded the-outcome
Nam cum per triennium aut eo amplius hac insania se
for when for three-years or than-that more in-this madness himself
et suos exagitasset, nec per Anglos nec per Francos
and his-men he-had-harried nor through the-English nor through the-French
hominio obligatos proficiendo voluntati suæ satisfacere valeret,
by-homage bound by-advancing will his to-satisfy he-could
subsedit. Cumque in Angliam transfretasset, lasciviæ et
he-subsided and-when into England he-had-crossed to-wantonness and
animi desideriis deditus, cum quadam die in Nova Silva
of-mind to-desires given when on-a-certain day in the-New Forest
venationibus insisteret, subito inopinata sagitta percussus,
at-hunts he-was-intent suddenly by-an-unexpected arrow struck
interiit. Divinatum est virum divina ultione percussum,
he-perished divined it-was the-man by-divine vengeance struck

assumpto veritatis argumento, eo quod pauperum extiterat
taken-up of-truth the-proof by-this that of-the-poor he-had-been
intolerabilis oppressor, ecclesiarum crudelis exactor, et, si
an-intolerable oppressor of-churches a-cruel exactor and if
quando episcopi vel prælati decederent, irreverentissimus
ever bishops or prelates died most-irreverent
retentor et dissipator. Imponebatur a quibusdam cuidam
withholder and squanderer it-was-imputed by some to-a-certain
nobilissimo viro Galterio Tirello quod eum sagitta
most-noble man Walter Tirel that him with-an-arrow
perfoderat. Quem, cum nec timeret nec speraret, jurejurando
he-had-pierced whom when neither he-feared nor he-hoped on-oath
sæpius audivimus et quasi sacrosanctum asserere quod ea
more-often we-have-heard and as-if sacrosanct to-assert that on-that
die nec in eam partem silvæ, in qua rex venabatur,
day neither into that part of-the-forest in which the-king hunted
venerit, nec eum in silva omnino viderit. Unde constat
had-he-come nor him in the-forest at-all had-seen whence it-is-established
tantam tam subito tanti [viri] divina potentia in favillam
so-great so suddenly of-so-great a-man by-divine power into ashes
evanuisse insaniam: ut qui alios supervacanee inquietabat,
to-have-vanished the-madness that he-who others needlessly disturbed
gravius infinite inquietetur; et qui omnia appetebat,
more-heavily endlessly is-disturbed and he-who all-things craved
inglorius omnibus exuatur. Deo enim, qui baltheum regum
inglorious of-all is-stripped to-God for who the-belt of-kings
discingit, regna et regnorum jura subjiciuntur. Successit
ungirds kingdoms and of-kingdoms the-rights are-subjected succeeded
eidem Guillelmo quam celeriter in regno frater minor
to-the-same William as quickly in the-kingdom the-brother younger
natu (quoniam Robertus major in illa magna expeditione
by-birth since Robert the-elder in that great expedition

Sancti Sepulchri agebat), vir prudentissimus Henricus,
of-the-Holy Sepulcher was-engaged a-man most-prudent Henry
cujus tam admiranda quam prædicanda animi et corporis
whose as-much admirable as to-be-proclaimed of-mind and of-body
strenuitas et scientia gratam offerrent materiam. Sed nil
vigor and knowledge pleasing would-offer material but nothing
nostra refert, nisi si aliquid incidenter nostris convertibile
to-us it-matters except if anything incidentally to-ours convertible
aliquando nos oporteat, sicut et de regno Lotharingorum,
sometime us it-behoove as also about the-kingdom of-the-Lorrainers
summatim prælibare. Francorum enim, non Anglorum gesta,
summarily to-touch-on of-the-Franks for not of-the-English deeds
quædam scripto memoriæ mandare proposuimus.
certain by-writing to-memory to-commit we-have-proposed

Quod Burcardum Monmorenciacensem, virum nobilem, ab infestatione beati Dionysii cum omnibus complicibus sui compescuit

2 · BOUCHARD OF MONTMORENCY

A dispute over certain customs between Adam, abbot of Saint-Denis, and Bouchard of Montmorency breaks into open war. Summoned before King Philip at Poissy, Bouchard refuses the judgment, so Louis ravages his lands, besieges his castle with the Flemings of Robert, his uncle, and forces him to make satisfaction. He then attacks Bouchard's ally Drogo of Mouchy for his wrongs to the church of Beauvais, follows him in through his own gate, and burns the castle up to the tower.

Ludovicus itaque famosus juvenis, jocundus, gratus et
Louis and-so the-famous youth cheerful pleasing and
benivolus (quo etiam a quibusdam simplex reputabatur),
kindly by-which even by some simple he-was-reckoned
jam adultus, illuster et animosus regni paterni defensor,
now grown illustrious and spirited of-the-kingdom paternal defender
ecclesiarum utilitatibus providebat, oratorum, laboratorum
of-the-churches for-the-advantages provided of-those-who-pray of-those-who-work
et pauperum, quod diu insolitum fuerat, quieti studebat.
and of-the-poor what long unusual had-been the-quiet he-pursued
Quo siquidem tempore inter venerabilem beati Dionysii
at-which indeed time between the-venerable of-blessed Denis
Adam abbatem et Burchardum, nobilem virum, dominum
Adam abbot and Bouchard a-noble man lord
Monmorenciacensem accidit quasdam contentiones pro
of-Montmorency it-happened certain disputes about
quibusdam consuetudinibus emersisse, quæ in tantam
certain customs to-have-emerged which into such
ebullierunt irritationis molestiam, ut, rupto hominio inter
boiled of-irritation trouble that broken the-homage between

defœderatos, armis, bello, incendiis concertaretur. Quod cum
the-unallied with-arms war fires it-was-contended which when
auribus domini Ludovici insonuisset, indignatus ægre tulit.
in-the-ears of-lord Louis had-sounded indignant ill he-bore
Nec mora, quin præfatum Burchardum ante patrem castro
nor delay but-that the-aforesaid Bouchard before his-father at-the-castle
Pinciaco ad causas submonitum coegerit. Qui cum cadens a
of-Poissy to the-pleas summoned he-compelled who when falling from
causa justitiam judicio exequi noluerit, non tentus (neque
the-case justice by-judgment to-follow refused not held nor
enim Francorum mos est), sed recedens, quid incommodi, quid
for of-the-Franks custom it-is but withdrawing what of-harm what
calamitatis a regia majestate subditorum mereatur contumacia
of-calamity from royal majesty of-subjects earns the-contumacy
festinanter animadvertit. Movit namque famosus juvenis
speedily he-perceived moved for the-famous youth
illico arma in eum et in complices ejus confœderatos
at-once arms against him and against accomplices his allied
(quippe Matthæum Bellimontensem comitem et Drogonem
indeed Matthew of-Beaumont count and Drogo
Monciacensem, viros strenuos et bellicosos asciverat), terram
of-Mouchy men vigorous and warlike he-had-summoned the-land
ejusdem Burchardi depopulans, municipia et incurtes præter
of-the-same Bouchard ravaging the-strongholds and farmsteads except
castrum subvertens pessumdedit, incendio, fame, gladio
the-castle overturning he-ruined by-fire by-famine by-sword
contrivit. Cumque de castro resistere pariter inniterentur,
he-crushed and-when from the-castle to-resist equally they-strove
obsidione Francorum et Flandrensium Roberti avunculi
by-siege of-the-Franks and of-the-Flemings of-Robert his-uncle
et suorum castrum cinxit. His et aliis contritionum
and of-his-men the-castle he-surrounded by-these and other of-crushings

verberibus humiliatum, voluntati et beneplacito suo curvavit,
blows humbled to-will and good-pleasure his he-bent
et querelam, commotionis causam, cum satisfactione pacavit.
and the-quarrel of-the-commotion the-cause with satisfaction he-settled
Drogonem vero Monciacensem, pro his et aliis, et maxime
Drogo but of-Mouchy for these and other and most
ecclesiæ Belvacensi irrogatis injuriis, aggressus, cum ei
on-the-church of-Beauvais inflicted wrongs attacking when to-him
extra castrum haud procul, ut breviori, si confert, regrederetur
outside the-castle not far that by-shorter if it-helped he-might-return
fuga, cum magna militari sagittaria manu et balistaria
flight with great knightly archer band and crossbowmen
obviasset, irruens in eum, retrocedere, castrumque ingredi
he-had-met rushing upon him to-retreat and-the-castle to-enter
armorum oppressione absque se non permisit: sed irruens
of-arms by-the-pressure without himself not he-allowed but rushing
inter eos et cum eis per portam, ut erat fortissimus
among them and with them through the-gate as he-was a-most-strong
palæstrita et spectabilis gladiator, in medio castri et crebro
wrestler and notable swordsman in the-midst of-the-castle both often
percussus et crebro percutiens, nullam pati dignatus est
struck and often striking no to-suffer deigned he-has
repulsam nec recedere, donec cum supellectile totum castrum
repulse nor to-withdraw until with the-furnishing the-whole castle
usque ad turris procinctum incendio concremavit. Tanta
right-up to of-the-tower the-enclosure by-fire he-burned so-great
viri erat animositas, ut nec incendium declinare curaret,
of-the-man was the-spirit that not-even the-fire to-avoid he-cared
cum et ei et exercitui periculosum esset, et multo
though both to-him and to-the-army dangerous it-was and for-a-long
tempore maximam ei raucitatem generaret. Sic humiliatum
time a-very-great to-him hoarseness it-produced thus humbled

in brachio virtutis Dei, qui in causa erat, subjectum
in the-arm of-the-strength of-God who in the-cause was subjected
tanquam clinicum, voluntatis suæ ditioni subjugavit.
as-if a-bedridden-man of-will his to-the-sway he-subjugated

Quod comitem Bellimontensem Matthæum restituere castrum Lusarchias Claromontensi Hugoni coegit, cum ipse dominus Ludovicus idem castrum manu forti oppugnasset

3 · MATTHEW OF BEAUMONT AND LUZARCHES

Count Matthew of Beaumont seizes all of Luzarches from Hugh of Clermont, his father-in-law. At Hugh's tearful plea Louis summons him to court, and when he refuses, storms the castle and restores it to Hugh.

Interea Bellimontensis comes Matthæus contra Hugonem
meanwhile of-Beaumont the-count Matthew against Hugh
Claromontensem, virum nobilem, sed mobilem et simplicem,
of-Clermont a-man noble but changeable and simple
cujus filiam duxerat sponsam, longo animi rancore contendens,
whose daughter he-had-taken as-bride with-long of-mind rancor contending
castrum nomine Lusarchium, cujus medietatem causa
the-castle by-name Luzarches of-which the-half for-the-sake
conjugii susceperat, totum occupare, turrim sibi armis
of-the-marriage he-had-received whole to-occupy the-tower for-himself with-arms
et armatis satagit munire. Quid faceret Hugo, quam quod ad
and armed-men is-busy to-fortify what should-he-do Hugh but that to
regni defensorem festinans, pedibus ejus prostratus, obortis
of-the-kingdom defender hastening at-the-feet his prostrate with-risen
lacrymis, supplicat ut seni condescendat, gravissime
tears he-begs that to-the-old-man he-condescend most-heavily

gravato opem ferat? «Malo, inquit, carissime domine, te terram
burdened help he-bring I-prefer he-says dearest lord you land
meam totam habere, quia a te eam habeo, quam gener
my whole to-have because from you it I-hold than son-in-law
meus degener hanc habeat. Emori cupio, si eam auferat.»
my degenerate this should-have to-die I-wish if it he-take-away
Cujus lachrymabili calamitate animo compunctus, amicabiliter
whose at-tearful calamity in-mind pricked in-friendly-fashion
manum porrigit, suffragari promittit, spe exhilaratum
a-hand he-stretches-out to-support he-promises with-hope cheered
remittit: spes autem non confundit. Velociter siquidem
he-sends-back the-hope moreover not confounds swiftly indeed
de curia exeunt qui comitem conveniant, extraordinarie
from the-court go-out men-who the-count may-summon extraordinarily
expoliatum ordinarie vestiri ore defensoris præcipiant,
despoiled ordinarily to-be-clothed by-the-mouth of-the-defender they-command
de jure in curia ejus ratiocinando certa die decertent.
about right in court his by-reasoning on-a-fixed day they-may-contend
Quod cum refutasset, ulcisci festinans defensor, collecto
which when he-had-refused to-avenge hastening the-defender gathered
exercitu multo, in eum exiliit: præfatumque castrum
army much against him sprang and-the-aforesaid castle
aggrediens, modo armis, modo igne impugnans, multo
attacking now with-arms now with-fire assaulting with-much
congressu expugnavit, turrimque ipsam militari custodia
fighting stormed and-the-tower itself with-knightly guard
munivit, et munitam Hugoni, sicut spoponderat, restituit.
fortified and fortified to-Hugh as he-had-promised restored

Quod cum aliud castrum ejusdem Matthæi Canliacum
obsedisset, subita aeris intemperies exercitum
in fugam coegit, et nisi ipse Ludovicus
fortiter restiisset, pene exercitus deperisset;
et quod ipse Matthæus humiliter ei satisfecit

4 · THE SIEGE OF CHAMBLY

Louis besieges Matthew's other castle, Chambly, but a violent storm batters the camp by night, and at dawn a fire treacherously set in the tents sends the army into headlong flight. Louis covers the retreat with a few men, yet many are captured, Hugh of Clermont among them. As Louis gathers a larger army to avenge the shame, Matthew sues for peace and excuses the wrong as an accident, and Louis pardons him, frees the captives, and restores to Hugh his share of the seized castle.

Movet itidem exercitum ad aliud ejusdem comitis castrum
he-moves likewise the-army against another of-the-same count castle
nomine Canliacum, tentoria figit, machinas impugnatorias
by-name Chambly tents he-pitches machines of-assault
instrui præcepit. Verum multo aliter quam sperabat evenire
to-be-built he-ordered but much otherwise than he-hoped to-turn-out
contigit. Mutata quippe grata aeris temperie, ingrata
it-happened changed indeed the-pleasant of-the-air temper an-unpleasant
et turbulenta intemperies emersit, tantoque et tam
and turbulent intemperance arose and-with-so-great and so
horribili impluvio, tonitruorum coruscatione totam terram in
horrible a-downpour of-thunders with-lightning the-whole land in
nocte turbavit, exercitum affecit, equos cecidit, ut vix
the-night it-disturbed the-army afflicted the-horses killed so-that scarcely
vivere quidam eorum sperarent. Quo intolerabili horrore, cum
to-live some of-them hoped by-this intolerable horror when
quidam de exercitu in aurora fugam matutinam pararent,
some of the-army at dawn flight morning prepared

dormitante adhuc defensore in papilione, dolose tentoriis
sleeping still the-defender in the-pavilion guilefully to-the-tents
ignis est applicitus: ex quo, quia signum est recedendi,
fire was set from which since a-signal it-is of-withdrawing
subito exercitus tam incaute quam confuse exire festinant,
suddenly the-army as incautiously as confusedly to-go-out hasten
inopinatam recessionem formidantes, nec quid alii aliis
the-unexpected withdrawal dreading nor what some to-others
conferant attendentes. Quorum incursu præcipiti multoque
may-bring heeding whose at-rush headlong and-much
clamore dominus stupefactus, quærens quid esset, equo
shouting the-lord stupefied asking what it-was onto-horse
insiliit: post exercitum festinans, quia jam circumquaque
leapt after the-army hastening because already all-around
dispersi erant, reducere nullo modo valuit. Quid aliud
scattered they-were to-bring-back in-no way could-he what else
faceret famosus juvenis, quam ad arma currere, cum paucis
should-he-do the-famous youth than to arms to-run with the-few
quos potuit retrocedere, murum se pro præcedentibus
whom he-could to-fall-back as-a-wall himself for those-going-ahead
opponere, sæpe percuti et sæpe percutere? Verum etsi
to-set often to-be-struck and often to-strike but although
illi, quibus pereuntibus ipse murus erat, quiete et secure
those for-whom perishing he a-wall was quietly and securely
potuerunt fugere, tamen, quia multi gregatim et disperse
could to-flee yet because many in-crowds and scattered
procul ab eo fugiebant, multi ab hostibus capti sunt. Inter
far from him fled many by the-enemies captured were among
quos excellentior captus fuit ipse Hugo Claromontensis,
whom the-more-eminent captured was the-very Hugh of-Clermont
et Guido Silvanectensis, Herluinus Parisiensis, et obscuri
and Guy of-Senlis Herluin of-Paris and of-obscure

nominis quamplures gregarii et pedestris exercitus multi.
name very-many common-soldiers and of-the-foot army many
Hac igitur lacessitus injuria, quanto rudis et ignarus
by-this therefore provoked wrong as-much-as raw and ignorant
infortunii hujusmodi hactenus fuerat, tanto cum Parisius
of-misfortune of-this-kind hitherto he-had-been so-much when to-Paris
redisset moti animi insolentia intumescebat, et, ut ejus
he-had-returned of-stirred mind by-the-insolence he-swelled and as of-that
ætatis mos est, si tamen sit imitativa probitatis, movet
age the-custom is if yet it-be imitative of-prowess he-moves
et movetur: et ut cito injuriam ulciscatur exæstuans,
and is-moved and that quickly the-wrong he-may-avenge boiling
undecumque triplicato exercitu sagaciter æque ut prudenter,
from-everywhere with-tripled army shrewdly equally as prudently
crebro ingeminat suspirio, decentius mortem quam verecundiam
often he-repeats with-a-sigh more-fittingly death than shame
sustinere. Quod cum amicorum relatione comperisset comes
to-bear which when of-friends by-the-report had-learned count
Matthæus, ut erat elegans vir et facetus, impatiens
Matthew as he-was an-elegant man and witty impatient
verecundiæ accidentalis domini sui, multiplicato intercessore,
of-the-shame accidental of-lord his with-multiplied intercessor
viam pacis affectare summopere investigat. Multa dulcedine,
the-way of-peace to-aim-at earnestly he-seeks with-much sweetness
multis blandimentis animum juvenilem demulcere elaborat
with-many blandishments the-mind youthful to-soothe he-labors
satis convenienter: nulla hoc factum deliberatione, sed ex
enough fittingly by-no this deed deliberation but by
contingenti accidisse, injuriam excusat, seque pronum ad
chance to-have-happened the-wrong he-excuses and-himself bowed to
ejus nutum satisfactioni præsentat. In quo quidem, prece
his nod for-satisfaction he-presents in which indeed at-the-prayer

multorum, consilio familiarium, multo etiam patris rogatu,
of-many by-the-counsel of-intimates by-much also of-his-father the-request
licet sero, viri animus mollescit, resipiscenti parcit,
though late of-the-man the-mind softens to-the-repenting-one he-spares
injuriam condonat, recuperabilia perdita comite reddente
the-wrong he-forgives the-recoverable lost-things the-count returning
restaurat, captos liberat, Hugoni Claromontensi pacem et
he-restores the-captives he-frees to-Hugh of-Clermont peace and
quod castri præoccupati suum erat firma pace reformat.
what of-the-castle seized his was by-firm peace he-re-establishes

De Ebalo, comite Ruciacensi

5 · EBLES OF ROUCY

Ebles, baron of Roucy, plunders the church of Reims. After repeated complaints, Louis and seven hundred knights waste the lands of Ebles and his allies for two months, then exact a peace for the churches, sworn and secured by hostages.

Infestabatur nobilis ecclesia Remensis suorum et ecclesiarum
was-harassed the-noble church of-Reims of-its-own and of-the-churches
ad se pertinentium dilapidatione bonorum, tyrannide
to itself belonging by-the-squandering of-goods by-the-tyranny
fortissimi et tumultuosi baronis Ebali Ruciacensis et
of-the-most-strong and turbulent baron Ebles of-Roucy and
filii ejus Guischardi. Qui quanto militiæ agebatur
of-son his Guichard who the-more of-knighthood he-was-engaged
exercitio (erat enim tantæ magnanimitatis, ut aliquando
in-the-exercise he-was for of-such magnanimity that once
cum exercitu magno, quod solos reges deceret, in Hispaniam
with army great which alone kings would-befit into Spain

proficisceretur), tanto insanior et rapacior his explendis
he-set-out the-more insane and rapacious at-these to-be-sated
deprædationibus, rapinis et omni malitiæ insistebat. Tanti
plunderings robberies and every wickedness he-pressed of-so-great
ergo et tam facinorosi viri apud dominum regem Philippum
therefore and so villainous a-man before the-lord king Philip
centies, et modo apud filium bis aut ter lugubri
a-hundred-times and now before the-son twice or thrice mournful
querela deposita, filius invective exercitum mediocrem fere
complaint laid-down the-son with-vehemence an-army moderate of-almost
septingentorum militum de nobilioribus Franciæ optimatibus
seven-hundred knights from the-nobler of-France great-men
delectum cogit, Remis festinat, pene per duos menses multo
chosen he-gathers to-Reims he-hastens almost for two months with-much
conflictu præteritas punit ecclesiarum molestias, ejusdem
fighting the-past he-punishes of-the-churches troubles of-the-same
præfati tyranni et fautorum ejus depopulatur terras, incendio
aforesaid tyrant and of-supporters his he-ravages the-lands by-fire
solvit, rapinis exponit. Egregie factum, ut qui rapiebant
he-dissolves to-plunders he-exposes excellently done that those-who robbed
rapiantur et qui torquebant æque aut durius torqueantur.
are-robbed and those-who tortured equally or more-harshly are-tortured
Tanta siquidem erat domini et exercitus animositas, ut
so-great indeed was of-the-lord and of-the-army the-spirit that
quamdiu ibi fuerit, aut vix aut nunquam, præter feria
as-long-as there he-was either scarcely or never except on-the-day
sexta et die dominica, quieverint quin aut cum manuali
sixth and the-day Lord's they-rested but-that either with hand-to-hand
congressione lancearum ac gladiorum committerent, aut
encounter of-lances and swords they-engaged or
terrarum destructione illatas injurias vindicarent. Certabatur
of-lands by-destruction the-inflicted wrongs they-avenged it-was-fought

ibi non contra Ebalum tantum, sed contra omnes illarum
there not against Ebles only but against all of-those
partium barones, quibus etiam maximorum Lotharingorum
parts barons for-whom also of-the-greatest Lorrainers
affinitas multo agmine celebrem affectabat exercitum. Agitur
kinship with-a-large column a-celebrated aimed-at army it-is-treated
interea multis quæstionibus de pace, et quoniam diversæ
meanwhile with-many questions about peace and since diverse
curæ periculosaque negotia ad alias partes novi domini
cares and-dangerous affairs to other parts of-the-new lord
præsentiam votive devocabant, habito cum suis consilio,
the-presence longingly called-away held with his-men counsel
pacem a præfato tyranno ecclesiis et impetravit et
peace from the-aforesaid tyrant for-the-churches both he-obtained and
imperavit; et acceptis obsidibus, eam jurejurando firmari
he-commanded and received hostages it by-oath to-be-confirmed
fecit. Taliter salutatum et flagellatum dimisit. Hoc etiam
he-had so greeted and scourged he-dismissed-him this also
quod de Castro Novo repetebat in diem distulit.
which about Neuf- -châtel he-was-claiming to a-day he-put-off

De castro Maudunensi

6 · THE CASTLE OF MEUNG

Louis moves against Leo, the bishop of Orléans's man, who has seized most of Meung. He takes the castle and storms the church Leo holds, and Leo and sixty men fall from its burning tower onto spears.

Et nec minus celebrem Aurelianensi ecclesiæ suffragando tulit
and not less celebrated to-the-Orléans church by-supporting he-brought
opem militarem, cum et Leonium virum nobilem Mauduni
help military since both Leo a-man noble of-Meung
castri, episcopi Aurelianensis hominem, majorem ejusdem
castle of-the-bishop of-Orléans the-man the-greater of-the-same
castri partem et alterius dominium præfatæ ecclesiæ
castle part and of-the-other the-lordship from-the-aforesaid church
auferentem, manu forti compescuit, in eodem castro eum
taking-away with-hand strong he-checked in the-same castle him
cum multis inclusit; castroque recepto, cum in proxima domui
with many he-shut-in and-the-castle taken when in the-next to-house
suæ ecclesia, erectis propugnaculis, defensioni inniteretur, ut
his church raised bulwarks for-defense he-strove as
fortis fortiori subjicitur, armorum et flammarum ingestione
the-strong to-the-stronger is-subjected of-arms and of-flames by-the-heaping
intolerabiliter opprimitur. Nec solus diuturni anathematis
intolerably he-is-crushed nor alone of-long-lasting anathema
mulctam solvit, cum ipse et multi alii ferme sexaginta, flamma
the-penalty he-paid since he and many others almost sixty the-flame
prævalente, de turre corruentes, lancearum erectarum et
prevailing from the-tower falling of-lances raised and

occurrentium sagittarum cuspide perfossi, extremum spiritum
of-arrows meeting by-the-point pierced the-last breath
exhalantes, miseras animas cum dolore ad inferos transtulerunt.
breathing-out wretched souls with grief to those-below carried-over

De castro qui dicitur Mons Acutus

7 · THE CASTLE OF MONTAIGU

Thomas of Marle holds the strong castle of Montaigu in the Laonnois through a marriage, and the man called his father, Enguerrand of Boves, with Ebles of Roucy, besieges him there. Thomas slips out by night and wins Louis over by bribing his companions, and Louis comes with seven hundred knights, breaks up the siege-works, and provisions the castle. The barons follow him in arms, but a torrent keeps the lines apart, and they choose to submit and pledge him their service; soon after, Thomas loses castle and marriage, dissolved for incest.

Castrum quod dicitur Mons Acutus validissimum, in pago
the-castle which is-called Mont- -aigu most-strong in the-district
Laudunensi, occasione cujusdam matrimonii contigit Thomam
of-Laon on-the-occasion of-a-certain marriage it-happened Thomas
de Marna obtinuisse, hominem perditissimum, Deo et
of Marle to-have-obtained a-man most-depraved to-God and
hominibus infestum; cujus intolerabilem velut immanissimi
to-men hostile whose intolerable as-if of-a-most-savage
lupi rabiem inexpugnabilis castri audacia concrescentem
wolf rabidness of-the-impregnable castle by-the-boldness growing
cum omnes circumquaque compatriotæ et formidarent et
when all round-about the-countrymen both dreaded and
obhorrerent, ipse qui dicebatur pater ejus Engerrannus de
abhorred he who was-said father his Enguerrand of
Bova, vir venerabilis et honorificus, egregie et præter
Boves a-man venerable and honorable excellently and beyond

alios illum de castro ejicere ob ejus fautiosam
others him from the-castle to-cast-out on-account-of his factious
tyrannidem moliebatur. Communicatum est inter eos, ipsum
tyranny strove agreed it-was between them himself
videlicet Engerrannum et Ebalum Ruciacensem, cum omnibus
namely Enguerrand and Ebles of-Roucy with all
quos allicere sibi potuerunt, castrum et in castro
whom to-entice to-themselves they-could the-castle and in the-castle
eum obsidere, circumquaque eum et palo et vimine
him to-besiege round-about him both with-stake and with-wicker
circumcingere, eumque multa mora fame periclitantem ad
to-surround and-him by-much delay by-famine endangered to
deditionem cogere, castrumque, si posset fieri, subvertere,
surrender to-force and-the-castle if it-could to-be-done to-overturn
eumque perenni carcere condemnare. Quod videns vir
and-him to-perpetual prison to-condemn which seeing the-man
nequam, jam firmatis castellis, cum necdum vallo
worthless already strengthened the-forts since not-yet with-a-rampart
ab alio ad aliud clausum esset, nocte furtim exiliit, et
from one to another closed it-was by-night stealthily leapt-out and
festinans ad famosum juvenem, collaterales ejus muneribus
hastening to the-famous youth the-companions his with-gifts
et promissis corrupit, et ut ei militari suffragaretur
and promises corrupted and that him with-knightly he-should-support
subsidio citissime obtinuit. Flexibilis quippe et ætate et
help most-quickly he-obtained pliant indeed both in-age and
moribus, collecto septingentorum militum exercitu, ad partes
in-ways gathered of-seven-hundred knights an-army to parts
illas festinat accedere. Qui cum castello Acuti Montis
those he-hastens to-approach who when to-the-fort of-Mont- -aigu
appropinquaret, viri qui castrum circumcluserant nuntios ad
he-was-approaching the-men who the-castle had-surrounded messengers to

eum delegant tanquam designato domino, ne removendo eos
him send as to-the-designated lord lest by-removing them
ab obsidione vituperium inferat supplicant: opponentes
from the-siege reproach he-should-bring they-beseech setting-forth
ne pro perditissimo homine servitium tantorum amittat,
lest for a-most-depraved man the-service of-so-great-men he-should-lose
infaustum perniciosius sibi quam eis, si nequam tuto
ill-omened more-ruinous to-himself than to-them if the-worthless-one safely
remaneat, veraciter profitentes. At vero, cum nec blanditiis
should-remain truly declaring but indeed when neither by-blandishments
nec minis a proposito eum devocare valerent, veriti sunt
nor by-threats from the-purpose him to-call-away they-could feared they-have
in designatum dominum committere, et proponentes, cum
against the-designated lord to-engage and proposing when
ipse rediret ab obsidione, recidivo bello redire, cesserunt,
he should-return from the-siege by-renewed war to-return they-yielded
et quicquid facere vellet inviti sustinuerunt. Ipse vero in
and whatever to-do he-wished unwilling they-endured he but in
manu potenti, disruptis et defossis circumquaque omnibus
hand powerful broken and dug-up round-about all
municipiis, Acutum Montem emancipavit, et tam armis
the-strongholds Mont- -aigu he-freed and as-much with-arms
quam victualibus, eorum sophismata denodans, copiosum
as with-victuals of-them the-sophistries unknotting plentiful
reddidit. Eapropter optimates qui amore et timore ejus
made-it wherefore the-great-men who from-love and fear of-him
cesserant, quia in nullo pepercerat, succensentes dolent,
had-yielded because in nothing he-had-spared angry grieve
nec ulterius se ei deferre jurejurando minantur.
nor further themselves to-him to-defer on-oath they-threaten
Cumque eum egredi conspiciunt, castra movent, acies
and-when him to-go-out they-see camps they-move lines

bellatorum componunt, ipsumque, tanquam inituri cum
of-warriors they-compose and-him as-if about-to-engage with
eo, prosequuntur. Hoc unum mutuæ congressioni oberat,
him they-follow this one to-mutual encounter stood-in-the-way
quod inter acies utriusque partis torrens tarde transitum
that between the-lines of-each side a-torrent slowly crossing
porrigens convenire prohibebat. Sic utraque classica et pila
offering to-meet prevented thus each trumpets and javelins
minantia pilis prima et altera die se conspicantur,
threatening javelins the-first and the-second day each-other they-see
cum subito venit ad Francos quidam joculator probus miles
when suddenly came to the-Franks a-certain jester a-worthy knight
ab opposita parte, nuntians irrefragabiliter primo quo
from the-opposite side announcing irrefutably at-the-first that
inveniretur accessu eos committere, et illatam pro libertate
should-be-found approach them to-engage and the-inflicted for freedom
injuriam hastis et gladiis vindicare, seque ad naturalem
wrong with-spears and swords to-avenge and-himself to the-natural
dominum, ut pro eo et cum eo dimicet, eos dimisisse.
lord that for him and with him he-might-fight them to-have-left
Insonuit rumor per tentoria castrorum, et militum audacia
resounded the-rumor through the-tents of-the-camp and of-the-knights the-daring
tripudiat. Loricarum et galearum splendida pulchritudine
dances of-mail-coats and of-helmets with-splendid beauty
se exornant, animositatem exagitant, et, si forte transitus
themselves they-adorn spirit they-stir-up and if perhaps a-crossing
eis occurrat, torrentem transilire accelerant, dignum ducentes
to-them should-occur the-torrent to-leap-over they-hasten worthy deeming
magis ut hostes aggrediantur quam quod se defendant.
rather that the-enemies they-attack than that themselves they-defend
Quod videntes nobilissimi viri Engerrannus de Bova, Ebalus de
which seeing the-most-noble men Enguerrand of Boves Ebles of

Ruciaco, comes Andreas de Rameru, Hugo Albus de Firmitate,
Roucy count Andrew of Ramerupt Hugh the-White of La-Ferté
Robertus de Capiaco, et alii sapientes et discreti, audaciam
Robert of Cappy and others wise and discerning the-daring
designati domini admirantes, consulte ei deferre elegerunt;
of-the-designated lord admiring advisedly to-him to-defer chose
et pacifice ad eum venientes, pubertatem ejus amplexati sunt,
and peacefully to him coming youth his embraced have
dextrasque amicitiæ contendentes, se et suos ejus
and-right-hands of-friendship stretching themselves and their-men his
servitio spoponderunt. Nec multo post, ut divinæ ascribatur
to-the-service pledged nor much after that to-the-divine be-ascribed
voluntati impiorum subversio, et castrum et matrimonium,
will of-the-impious the-overthrow both the-castle and the-marriage
incestu consanguinitatis fœdatum, divortio amisit.
by-the-incest of-kinship defiled by-divorce he-lost

De Milone, quomodo intravit castrum Montis Leherii

8 · MILO AND MONTLHÉRY

Guy Troussel, home in disgrace from Antioch, gives his only daughter and Montlhéry to King Philip's son Philip, and Guy of Rochefort becomes the king's seneschal, his daughter betrothed to Louis. When Milo, viscount of Troyes and Troussel's brother, is welcomed into Montlhéry and its men attack the tower, the seneschal hastens there, wins the Garlandes over with an oath, and Milo flees in tears. Louis arrives and razes every fortification but the tower.

His et aliis virtutum provectibus designatus dominus
by-these and other of-virtues advances the-designated lord
conscendens, regni administrationi et reipublicæ,
rising of-the-kingdom to-the-administration and to-the-commonwealth
sicut se rei opportunitas offerebat, sagaciter providere,
as itself of-the-matter the-opportunity offered shrewdly to-provide
recalcitrantes perdomare, castella infestantia quibuscumque
the-recalcitrant to-subdue the-forts harassing by-whatever
modis aut occupare aut incurvare strenue satagebat. Unde
means either to-occupy or to-bend vigorously was-busy whence
cum Guido Trussellus, filius Milonis de Monte Leherii,
when Guy Troussel son of-Milo of Mont- -lhéry
viri tumultuosi et regni turbatoris, a via Sancti
a-man turbulent and of-the-kingdom a-disturber from the-way of-Saint
Sepulchri domum repedasset, fractus longi itineris anxietate,
Sepulcher home had-returned broken of-the-long journey by-the-anxiety
et diversarum pœnarum molestia, et quia extraordinarie
and of-diverse pains by-the-trouble and because extraordinarily
Antiochiam timore Corboranni per murum descendens, Deique
from-Antioch for-fear of-Kerbogha by the-wall descending and-of-God
exercitum intus obsessum relinquens, toto corpore destitutus
the-army within besieged leaving in-whole body bereft

defecit, timensque exhæredari unicam quam habebat filiam,
he-failed and-fearing to-be-disinherited only whom he-had the-daughter
domini regis Philippi et filii Ludovici voluntate et
of-the-lord king Philip and of-the-son Louis by-the-will and
persuasione (valde enim appetebant castrum), filio regis
persuasion greatly for they-coveted the-castle to-the-son of-the-king
Philippo, de superducta Andegavensi comitissa, nuptui
Philip of the-brought-in of-Anjou countess in-marriage
tradidit, et, ut in amorem suum frater major dominus
he-gave and that into love his the-brother elder lord
Ludovicus firmissime confœderaret, castrum Meduntense,
Louis most-firmly might-ally the-castle of-Mantes
prece patris, matrimonio confirmavit. Qua occasione
at-the-prayer of-his-father by-the-marriage he-confirmed by-which occasion
castro custodiæ suæ recepto, tanquam si oculo suo festucam
the-castle into-custody his received as-if if from-eye their a-mote
eruissent, aut circumsepti repagula dirupissent, exhilarescunt.
they-had-plucked or of-the-encircled the-bars they-had-burst they-rejoice
Testabatur quippe pater filio Ludovico, nobis audientibus, ejus
testified indeed the-father to-son Louis us hearing its
defatigatione acerbissime gravatum: «Age, inquiens, fili Ludovice,
by-the-weariness most-bitterly burdened come saying son Louis
serva excubans turrim, cujus devexatione pene consenui,
keep watching the-tower whose by-harassment almost I-have-grown-old
cujus dolo et fraudulenta nequitia nunquam pacem bonam
whose by-guile and fraudulent wickedness never peace good
et quietam habere potui.» Hujus infidelitas fideles infideles,
and quiet to-have could-I of-this the-faithlessness the-faithful faithless
infideles infidelissimos procreabat, perfidos cominus eminusque
the-faithless most-faithless begot the-perfidious near and-far
concopulabat, nec in toto regno quicquam mali absque
joined nor in the-whole kingdom anything of-evil without

consensu eorum aut opere fiebat. Cumque a fluvio Sequanæ
the-consent their or work was-done and-when by the-river Seine
Curbolio, medio viæ Monte Leherii, a dextera Castello
by-Corbeil in-the-middle of-the-way by-Mont- -lhéry on the-right by-Château-
Forti pagus Parisiacus circumcingeretur, inter Parisienses et
-fort the-district of-Paris was-encircled between the-Parisians and
Aurelianenses tantum confusionis chaos firmatum erat, ut neque
the-men-of-Orléans so-much of-confusion a-chaos established was that neither
hi ad illos neque illi ad istos, absque perfidorum arbitrio, nisi
these to those nor those to these without of-the-perfidious the-will except
in manu forti valerent transmeare. Verum præfati causa
in hand strong could to-cross but of-the-aforesaid for-the-sake
matrimonii sepem rupit, accessum jocundum utrisque reparavit.
marriage the-hedge he-broke an-access pleasant to-both he-restored
Huc accessit quod Guido comes de Rupe Forti, vir
hither was-added that Guy count of Roche- -fort a-man
peritus et miles emeritus, præfati Guidonis Trusselli
experienced and a-knight veteran of-the-aforesaid Guy Troussel
patruus, cum ab itinere Hierosolymitano famose copioseque
the-uncle when from the-journey to-Jerusalem famously and-richly
redisset, regi Philippo gratanter adhæsit. Et quia antiqua
he-had-returned to-king Philip gladly clung and because by-old
familiaritate jam et alia vice ejus dapifer extiterat, tam
familiarity already also at-another time his seneschal he-had-been both
ipse quam filius ejus dominus Ludovicus agendis
he as son his lord Louis to-the-affairs-to-be-done
reipublicæ dapiferum præfecerunt, ut et castrum
of-the-commonwealth as-seneschal set-him-over that both the-castle
prænominatum Montis Leherii deinceps quiete possiderent,
aforesaid of-Mont- -lhéry thereafter quietly they-might-possess
et de comitatu eorum collimitante, videlicet Rupe Forti
and from the-county their bordering namely Roche- -fort

et Castello Forti et aliis proximis castellis, et pacem et
and Château- -fort and other nearest forts both peace and
servitium, quod insolitum fuerat, vendicarent. Quorum mutua
service which unaccustomed had-been they-might-claim whose mutual
eo usque processit familiaritas, ut, patris persuasione,
to-that extent went familiarity that of-the-father by-persuasion
filius dominus Ludovicus filiam ejusdem Guidonis necdum
the-son lord Louis the-daughter of-the-same Guy not-yet
nubilem matrimonio solemni reciperet. Sed quam sponsam
marriageable in-marriage solemn received but whom as-betrothed
recepit, uxorem non habuit, cum ante thorum titulus
he-received as-wife not he-had since before the-bed the-title
consanguinitatis oppositus matrimonium post aliquot annos
of-kinship set-against the-marriage after some years
dissolverit. Sic eorum per triennium continuata est amicitia,
dissolved thus their for three-years continued was the-friendship
ut pater et filius se ei supreme crederent, et ipse
so-that the-father and the-son themselves to-him supremely entrusted and he
comes Guido, filiusque ejus Hugo Creciacensis, regni
count Guy and-son his Hugh of-Crécy of-the-kingdom
defensioni et honori totis viribus inniterentur. Verum quia
to-the-defense and honor with-all strength strove but because

Quo semel est imbuta recens servabit odorem
with-what once is imbued new shall-keep the-smell
Testa diu,
a-jar long

viri de Monte Leherii, consuetæ perfidiæ æmuli dolose
the-men of Mont- -lhéry of-accustomed faithlessness rivals guilefully
machinati sunt per Garlandenses fratres, qui tunc regis
contrived have through the-Garlande brothers who then of-the-king

et filii incurrerant inimicitias, quo modo vicecomes
and of-the-son had-incurred the-enmities in-what way the-viscount
Trecensis Milo, minor frater Guidonis Trusselli, cum matre
of-Troyes Milo younger brother of-Guy Troussel with mother
vicecomitissa et magna manu militum venit: castroque
the-viscountess and great band of-knights came and-into-the-castle
ab omnibus votivo receptus perjurio, beneficia patris
by all longed-for received by-perjury the-benefits of-his-father
sæpius lachrymando replicat, generosam et naturalem eorum
more-often weeping he-recounts the-generous and natural their
industriam repræsentat, fidem mirabilem prædicat, revocationis
diligence he-represents the-faith wonderful he-preaches of-recall
suæ gratiarum actiones reportat, et ut bene cœpta bene
his of-thanks the-givings he-returns and that well begun-things well
perficiant, genibus eorum provolutus, suppliciter exorat.
they-may-complete at-knees their thrown suppliantly he-entreats
Tali et tam lugubri genuflexione flexi, currunt ad arma,
by-such and so mournful a-kneeling bent they-run to arms
festinant ad turrim, committunt contra defensores turris
they-hasten to the-tower they-engage against the-defenders of-the-tower
gladiis, lanceis, igne, sudibus et saxis acerrime, ut et
with-swords lances fire stakes and stones most-fiercely so-that both
antemurale turris pluribus in locis perfoderent, et multos
the-outwork of-the-tower many in places they-dug-through and many
turrim defendentium ad mortem vulnerarent. Erat siquidem
the-tower of-those-defending to death wounded was indeed
in eadem turri uxor præfati Guidonis, et filia domino
in the-same tower the-wife of-aforesaid Guy and the-daughter to-lord
Ludovico desponsata. Quod cum auribus dapiferi Guidonis
Louis betrothed which when in-the-ears of-the-seneschal Guy
insonuisset, ut erat vir magnanimus, expedite exiliit,
had-sounded as he-was a-man great-souled promptly he-leapt-out

et cum quanta manu militum potuit castello audacter
and with as-great-a band of-knights he-could to-the-fort boldly
appropinquavit; sed et, ut se undecumque sequantur
approached but also that him from-everywhere they-might-follow
velociter, velocissimos nuntios misit. Qui autem turrim
swiftly the-swiftest messengers he-sent those-who moreover the-tower
impugnabant, a monte eum videntes, quia nondum turrim
were-attacking from the-hill him seeing because not-yet the-tower
vincere potuerant, adventum subitum domini Ludovici
to-overcome they-had-been-able the-arrival sudden of-lord Louis
tanquam jugulum formidantes, retrocesserunt, et an
as-if the-throat-cutting dreading fell-back and whether
starent, an fugam facerent, hærere cœperunt. Guido vero,
they-should-stand or flight should-make to-hesitate began Guy but
ut erat strenuus et in arto providus, Garlandenses consulte
as he-was vigorous and in a-strait provident the-Garlandes advisedly
a castro ascivit, pacem regis et domini Ludovici et
from the-castle summoned the-peace of-the-king and of-lord Louis and
gratiam jurejurando firmavit, et eos et eorum complices
the-favor by-oath confirmed and them and their accomplices
taliter ab incœpto removit: eorumque defectu et ipse
thus from the-undertaking removed and-their by-the-defection also he
Milo defecit, et celerem fugam, infecta fauctione,
Milo failed and swift flight with-unaccomplished faction
flens et ejulans arripuit. Quo audito, dominus Ludovicus
weeping and wailing seized which heard lord Louis
ad castrum celerrime acceleravit, compertaque veritate, quia
to the-castle most-quickly hastened and-found the-truth that
nihil perdiderat gaudebat, et quia factiosos non invenerat,
nothing he-had-lost rejoiced and because the-factious not he-had-found
ut eos patibulo affigeret, dolebat. Remanentibus vero, quia
that them to-the-gibbet he-might-fix grieved to-those-remaining but because

Guido jurejurando firmaverat, pacem dominus Ludovicus
Guy by-oath had-confirmed peace lord Louis
servavit. Sed ne quid simile deinceps molirentur, totam
kept-it but lest anything similar thereafter they-should-attempt the-whole
castri munitionem præter turrim dejecit.
of-the-castle fortification except the-tower he-threw-down

De Buamundo, principe Antiocheno

9 · BOHEMOND OF ANTIOCH

Bohemond, prince of Antioch, comes to France to marry Louis's sister Constance, and the legate Bruno preaches the crusade with him at a council at Poitiers. Pope Paschal then comes to France, visits Saint-Denis, and meets Emperor Henry's envoys at Châlons, where they demand investiture and the pope refuses before holding his council at Troyes. Henry later seizes the pope in Rome and wrings a privilege of investiture from him, which a council annuls; the Gallican Church excommunicates him, and Lothar succeeds.

Id circa temporis, illustrem Antiochenum principem
that about of-time the-illustrious of-Antioch prince
Boamundum, cui specialiter illa potenti obsidione ipsa
Bohemond to-whom especially in-that powerful siege the-very
ejusdem urbis, ob suî strenuitatem, reddita est
of-the-same city on-account-of his vigor surrendered was
munitio, contigit ad partes Gallorum descendisse, virum
the-stronghold it-happened to the-parts of-the-Gauls to-have-come-down a-man
inter Orientales egregium et famosum, cujus quoddam
among the-Easterners excellent and famous of-whom a-certain
generosum, et quod nunquam sine diva manu fieri posset,
noble and which never without divine hand to-be-done could
factum etiam inter ipsos prædicabatur Sarracenos. Cum enim
deed even among themselves was-proclaimed the-Saracens when for

cum patre suo Roberto Guischardo forte transmarinum
with father his Robert Guiscard by-chance the-overseas
obsedisset castrum Durachium, nec Thessalonicences gazæ,
he-had-besieged castle Durazzo nor of-Thessalonica the-riches
nec thesauri Constantinopolitani, nec ipsa Græcia tota eos
nor the-treasures of-Constantinople nor the-very Greece whole them
arcere valeret, subito post eos transfretantes domini papæ
to-hold-off could suddenly after them crossing of-the-lord pope
Alexandri legati, qui eos et charitate Dei et obligatione
Alexander legates who them both by-the-charity of-God and by-the-obligation
hominii adjurando submoneant, assistunt; ut ecclesiæ
of-homage adjuring summon stand-by that for-the-church
Romanæ et domino papæ in turre Crescentiani incluso
of-Rome and for-the-lord pope in the-tower of-Crescentius shut-in
ab imperatore eripiant, devotissime supplicant; naufragari
by the-emperor they-may-rescue most-devoutly they-beseech to-be-shipwrecked
urbem et ecclesiam, imo ipsum dominum papam, si non cito
the-city and church nay the-very lord pope if not quickly
subvenerint, jurejurando pronuntiant. Hærent principes, et quid
they-come-to-aid on-oath they-declare hesitate the-princes and what
eligant, an expeditionem tantam et tam sumptuosam
they-should-choose whether an-expedition so-great and so costly
irrecuperabiliter omittant, an dominum papam, urbem et
irrecoverably they-should-give-up or the-lord pope the-city and
ecclesiam ancillari, imo naufragari sustineant. Cumque hac
church to-be-enslaved nay to-be-shipwrecked they-should-endure and-when by-this
anxiarentur deliberatione, hoc excellentissimum eligunt: istud
they-were-tormented deliberation this most-excellent they-choose this
facere et illud non omittere deliberant. Relicto siquidem
to-do and that not to-omit they-decide left indeed
obsidioni Boamundo, pater in Apuliam transfretando
to-the-siege Bohemond the-father into Apulia by-crossing

regressus, undecumque potuit, de Sicilia, Apulia et Calabria
returning from-wherever he-could from Sicily Apulia and Calabria
atque Campania viros et arma collegit, et tam promptissime
and Campania men and arms gathered and as most-promptly
quam audacissime Romam acceleravit. Unde divina voluntate
as most-boldly to-Rome hastened whence by-divine will
et quasi portentum mirabile contigit, ut cum iste Romam,
and as-if a-portent wonderful it-happened that when this-one to-Rome
et imperator Constantinopolitanus, audita Roberti absentia,
and the-emperor of-Constantinople heard of-Robert the-absence
adunato Græcorum exercitu, ad expugnandum Boamundum,
united of-the-Greeks the-army for storming Bohemond
Durachium tam terra quam mari applicuisset, una et eadem
at-Durazzo as-much by-land as by-sea had-landed on-one and the-same
die pater Guischardus Romæ cum imperatore congrediens,
day the-father Guiscard at-Rome with the-emperor engaging
ille cum Græcorum imperatore strenue confligens, uterque
that-one with of-the-Greeks the-emperor vigorously clashing each
princeps de utroque imperatore (mirabile dictu) triumphavit.
prince over each emperor wonderful to-tell triumphed
Præfati igitur Boamundi ad partes istas adventus causa
of-the-aforesaid therefore Bohemond to parts these of-the-coming the-cause
fuit ut nobilissimam domini Ludovici designati sororem
was that the-most-noble of-lord Louis designated the-sister
Constantiam, moribus facetam, persona elegantem, facie
Constance in-ways witty in-person elegant in-face
pulcherrimam, matrimonio sibi copulari quibuscumque
most-beautiful in-marriage to-himself to-be-joined by-whatever
modis quæritaret. Tanta enim et regni Francorum
means he-might-seek so-great for both of-the-kingdom of-the-Franks
et domini Ludovici præconabatur strenuitas, ut ipsi
and of-lord Louis was-proclaimed the-vigor that the-very

etiam Sarraceni hujus terrore copulæ terrerentur. Vacabat
even Saracens of-this by-the-terror match should-be-terrified was-free
domina, comitem Trecensem Hugonem procum aspernata,
the-lady the-count of-Troyes Hugh as-suitor having-spurned
nec dedecentem sponsum iterata copula appetebat. Callebat
nor an-unbecoming bridegroom by-a-repeated match she-sought was-shrewd
princeps Antiochenus; et tam donis quam promissis copiosus,
the-prince of-Antioch and as-much in-gifts as in-promises rich
dominam illam celeberrime sibi copulari Carnoti, præsente
lady that most-celebratedly to-himself to-be-joined at-Chartres present
rege et domino Ludovico, multis astantibus archiepiscopis,
the-king and lord Louis many standing-by archbishops
episcopis et regni proceribus devote promeruit. Astitit
bishops and of-the-kingdom nobles devoutly he-won stood-by
etiam ibidem Romanæ sedis apostolicæ legatus, dominus
also there of-the-Roman see apostolic the-legate lord
Bruno, Signinus episcopus, a domino Paschali papa, ad
Bruno of-Segni bishop by lord Paschal the-pope for
invitandam et confortandam sancti sepulchri viam, dominum
inviting and strengthening of-the-holy sepulcher the-way lord
Boamundum comitatus. Unde plenum et celebre Pictavis tenuit
Bohemond accompanying whence a-full and celebrated at-Poitiers he-held
concilium, cui et nos interfuimus, quia recenter a studio
council at-which also we were-present because recently from study
redieramus: ubi de diversis synodalibus et præcipue de
we-had-returned where about various synodal-matters and chiefly about
Hierosolymitano itinere, ne tepescat agens, tam ipse quam
the-Jerusalem journey lest it-grow-lukewarm treating as-much he as
Boamundus multos ire animavit. Quorum freti comitatu
Bohemond many to-go roused whose relying-on company
multo multaque militia, tam ipse Boamundus quam domina
much and-much knighthood as-much he Bohemond as the-lady

Constantia, necnon et ipse legatus ad propria prospere et
Constance and-likewise also the-very legate to their-own prosperously and
gloriose remearunt. Quæ domina Constantia domino Boamundo
gloriously returned which lady Constance to-lord Bohemond
duos genuit filios, Johannem et Boamundum: sed Johannes
two bore sons John and Bohemond but John
ante annos militiæ in Apulia obiit. Boamundus vero
before the-years of-knighthood in Apulia died Bohemond but
decorus juvenis, militiæ aptus, princeps factus Antiochenus,
a-handsome youth for-knighthood apt prince made of-Antioch
cum Sarracenos instanter armis urgeret, nec eorum zelantes
when the-Saracens urgently with-arms he-pressed nor their zealous
impetus aliquid duceret, minus caute eos insecutus, insidiis
onslaughts anything he-reckoned less carefully them pursuing by-ambushes
eorum interceptus, cum centum militibus æquo animosior
their caught with a-hundred knights than-just bolder
infauste decapitatus, Antiochiam et cum Apulia vitam amisit.
unhappily beheaded Antioch and with Apulia life lost
Sequenti itaque præfati Boamundi repatriationis anno,
in-the-following and-so of-the-aforesaid Bohemond of-the-return-home year
venerandæ memoriæ universalis et summus pontifex Paschalis
of-venerable memory the-universal and highest pontiff Paschal
ad partes occidentales accessit cum multis et sapientissimis
to the-parts western came with many and most-wise
viris, episcopis et cardinalibus, et Romanorum nobilium
men bishops and cardinals and of-Roman nobles
comitatu, ut regem Francorum et filium regem designatum
a-company that the-king of-the-Franks and the-son king designated
Ludovicum et ecclesiam Gallicanam consuleret super
Louis and the-church of-Gaul he-might-consult about
quibusdam molestiis et novis investituræ ecclesiasticæ
certain troubles and new of-investiture ecclesiastical

querelis, quibus eum et infestabat et magis infestare
complaints with-which him both harassed and more to-harass
minabatur Henricus imperator, vir affectus paterni et totius
threatened Henry the-emperor a-man of-affection fatherly and of-all
humanitatis expers, qui et genitorem Henricum crudelissime
humanity devoid who both his-father Henry most-cruelly
persecutus exhæredavit, et, ut ferebatur, nequissima captione
persecuting disinherited and as was-reported in-most-wicked captivity
tenens, inimicorum verberibus et injuriis, ut insignia
holding of-enemies by-blows and wrongs that the-insignia
regalia, videlicet coronam, sceptrum et lanceam sancti
royal namely the-crown the-scepter and the-lance of-saint
Mauritii redderet, nec aliquid in toto regno proprium
Maurice he-should-surrender nor anything in the-whole kingdom his-own
retineret, impiissime coegit. Equidem deliberatum est
he-should-keep most-impiously forced indeed decided it-was
Romæ, propter Romanorum conductitiam perfidiam, de
at-Rome on-account-of of-the-Romans mercenary faithlessness about
præfatis, imo de omnibus quæstionibus, tutius regis
the-aforesaid nay about all questions more-safely of-the-king
et regis filii et ecclesiæ Gallicanæ in Francia quam
and of-the-king of-the-son and of-the-church of-Gaul in France than
in urbe disceptare suffragio. Venit itaque Cluniacum, a
in the-city to-debate with-the-support he-came and-so to-Cluny from
Cluniaco ad Charitatem, ubi celeberrimo archiepiscoporum
Cluny to La-Charité where in-a-most-celebrated of-archbishops
et episcoporum et monastici ordinis conventu eidem
and bishops and of-the-monastic order assembly on-the-same
nobili monasterio sacram dedicationis imposuit. Affuerunt
noble monastery the-sacred of-dedication he-laid were-present
et nobiliores regni proceres, inter quos et dapifer
also the-nobler of-the-kingdom nobles among whom also the-seneschal

regis Franciæ, nobilis comes de Rupe Forti, domino papæ
of-the-king of-France the-noble count of Roche- -fort to-the-lord pope
missus occurrit, ut ei tanquam patri spirituali per totum
sent came-to-meet that him as father spiritual through the-whole
regnum ejus beneplacito deserviret. Cui consecrationi
kingdom his at-the-good-pleasure he-might-serve at-which consecration
et nos ipsi interfuimus, et contra dominum episcopum
also we ourselves were-present and against the-lord bishop
Parisiensem Galonem, multis querimoniis ecclesiam beati
of-Paris Galo with-many complaints the-church of-blessed
Dionysii agitantem, in conspectu domini papæ viriliter
Denis harassing in the-sight of-the-lord pope manfully
stando, aperta ratione et canonico judicio satisfecimus.
standing by-open reason and by-canonical judgment we-satisfied
Cumque Turonis apud sanctum Martinum, ut mos est
and-when at-Tours at saint Martin as the-custom is
romanus, frigium ferens, Lætare Hierusalem celebrasset,
Roman the-Phrygian-cap wearing Rejoice Jerusalem he-had-celebrated
ad venerabilem beati Dionysii locum, tanquam ad propriam
to the-venerable of-blessed Denis place as-if to the-own
beati Petri sedem, benevolus et devotus devenit. Qui gloriose
of-blessed Peter see benevolent and devout he-came who gloriously
et satis episcopaliter receptus, hoc unum memorabile et
and quite episcopally received this one memorable and
Romanis insolitum et posteris reliquit exemplum, quod nec
to-the-Romans unaccustomed also to-posterity left example that neither
aurum, nec argentum, nec preciosas monasterii margaritas,
the-gold nor the-silver nor the-precious of-the-monastery pearls
quod multum timebatur, non tantum non affectabat,
which much was-feared not only not did-he-covet
sed nec respicere dignabatur. Sanctorum pignoribus
but not-even to-look-at deigned of-the-Saints at-the-pledges

humillime prostratus, lachrymas compunctionis offerebat,
most-humbly prostrate tears of-compunction he-offered
holocaustum seipsum Domino et sanctis ejus toto animo
as-a-burnt-offering himself to-the-Lord and to-saints his with-whole mind
inferebat, et ut de vestimentis episcopalibus beati Dionysii
he-brought and that of the-vestments episcopal of-blessed Denis
sanguine madefactis ad patrocinandum aliqua ei daretur
with-blood soaked for patronage some to-him might-be-given
portiuncula suppliciter exoravit: «Ne displiceat, inquiens,
small-portion suppliantly he-entreated let-it-not displease he-says
si de vestimentis ejus nobis vel parum reddideritis, qui
if of the-vestments his to-us even a-little you-give-back who
eum vobis apostolatu Galliæ insignitum absque murmure
him to-you with-the-apostolate of-Gaul marked without murmur
destinavimus.» Occurrit itaque ei ibidem rex Philippus et
sent came-to-meet and-so him there king Philip and
dominus Ludovicus filius ejus gratanter et votive, amore Dei
lord Louis son his gladly and longingly from-love of-God
majestatem regiam pedibus ejus incurvantes, quemadmodum
the-majesty royal at-the-feet his bending as
consueverunt ad sepulchrum piscatoris Petri reges submisso
they-have-been-wont at the-tomb of-the-fisherman Peter kings with-lowered
diademate inclinari. Quos dominus papa manu erigens,
diadem to-bow whom the-lord pope with-hand raising
tanquam devotissimos apostolorum filios, ante se residere
as most-devoted of-the-apostles sons before himself to-sit
fecit. Cum quibus de statu ecclesiæ, ut sapiens sapienter
made with whom about the-state of-the-church as a-wise-man wisely
agens, familiariter contulit: eosque blande demulcens, beato
dealing intimately he-conferred and-them gently soothing for-blessed
Petro sibique ejus vicario supplicat opem ferre, ecclesiam
Peter and-for-himself his vicar he-begs help to-bring the-church

manutenere, et, sicut antecessorum regum Francorum Caroli
to-uphold and as of-predecessor kings of-the-Franks of-Charles
Magni et aliorum mos inolevit, tyrannis et ecclesiæ
the-Great and of-others the-custom has-grown-up to-tyrants and of-the-church
hostibus, et potissimum Henrico imperatori audacter
to-the-enemies and chiefly to-Henry the-emperor boldly
resistere. Qui amicitiæ, auxilii et consilii dextras dederunt,
to-resist who of-friendship of-help and of-counsel right-hands gave
regnum exposuerunt, et qui cum eo Catalaunum imperatoris
the-kingdom they-laid-open and who with him to-Châlons of-the-emperor
legatis occurrere festinent, archiepiscopos et episcopos,
to-the-envoys to-meet might-hasten archbishops and bishops
et abbatem Sancti Dyonisii Adam, cum quo et nos
and the-abbot of-Saint Denis Adam with whom also we
fuimus, conjunxerunt. Ubi cum dominus papa aliquantisper
were they-joined where when the-lord pope for-a-while
demoraretur ex condicto, ipsi imperatoris Henrici legati,
stayed by agreement the-very of-the-emperor Henry the-envoys
non humiles, sed rigidi et contumaces, cum apud Sanctum
not humble but stiff and contumacious when at Saint
Memmium hospitia suscepissent, relicto inibi cancellario
Memmie lodgings they-had-taken left there the-chancellor
Alberto, cujus oris et cordis unanimitate ipse imperator
Albert whose of-mouth and of-heart by-the-unanimity he-himself the-emperor
agebat, cæteri ad curiam multo agmine, multo fastu,
acted the-rest to the-court with-a-great column with-great pomp
summe phalerati devenerunt. Hi siquidem erant archiepiscopus
highly caparisoned came these indeed were the-archbishop
Treverensis, episcopus Alvertatensis, episcopus Monasteriensis,
of-Trier the-bishop of-Halberstadt the-bishop of-Münster
comites quamplures, et cui gladius ubique præferebatur
counts very-many and before-whom a-sword everywhere was-carried

dux Welfo, vir corpulentus et tota superficie longi
duke Welf a-man corpulent and over-the-whole surface of-long
et lati admirabilis et clamosus: qui tumultuantes magis
and of-broad wonderful and loud who rioting rather
ad terrendum quam ad ratiocinandum missi viderentur.
for terrifying than for reasoning sent might-seem
Singulariter et solus Treverensis archiepiscopus, vir elegans
singularly and alone of-Trier the-archbishop a-man elegant
et jocundus, eloquentiæ et sapientiæ copiosus, gallicano
and pleasant of-eloquence and of-wisdom full in-the-Gallic
cothurno exercitatus, facete peroravit, domino papæ et
buskin practiced wittily spoke to-the-lord pope and
curiæ salutem et servitium ex parte domini imperatoris
to-the-court greeting and service from part of-the-lord emperor
deferens, salvo jure regni. Et prosequens de mandatis:
bearing saving the-right of-the-kingdom and proceeding about the-instructions
«Talis est, inquit, domini nostri imperatoris pro qua mittimur
such is he-says of-lord our the-emperor for which we-are-sent
causa. Temporibus antecessorum nostrorum, sanctorum et
the-cause in-the-times of-predecessors our holy and
apostolicorum virorum magni Gregorii et aliorum, hoc ad
apostolic men of-the-Great Gregory and of-others this to
jus imperii pertinere dignoscitur, ut in omni electione
the-right of-the-empire to-belong is-known that in every election
hic ordo servetur: antequam electio in palam proferatur,
this order be-kept before the-election in public be-brought-forth
ad aures domini imperatoris perferre, et, si personam deceat,
to the-ears of-the-lord emperor to-convey and if the-person befit
assensum ab eo ante factam electionem assumere; deinde
assent from him before the-made election to-take then
in conventu secundum canones, petitione populi, electione
in assembly according-to the-canons at-the-petition of-the-people by-the-election

cleri, assensu honoratoris proferre, consecratum libere
of-the-clergy with-the-assent of-the-honorer to-bring-forth the-consecrated freely
nec simoniace ad dominum imperatorem pro regalibus, ut
nor simoniacally to the-lord emperor for the-regalia that
annulo et virga investiatur, redire, fidelitatem et hominium
with-ring and staff he-be-invested to-return fealty and homage
facere. Nec mirum; civitates enim et castella, marchias,
to-do nor wonderful the-cities for and the-castles the-marches
thelonea, et quæque imperatoriæ dignitatis nullo modo
the-tolls and whatever of-imperial dignity in-no way
aliter debere occupare. Si hæc dominus papa sustineat,
otherwise ought to-occupy if these-things the-lord pope endure
prospere et bona pace regnum et ecclesiam ad honorem
prosperously and in-good peace the-kingdom and the-church for the-honor
Dei inhærere.» Super his igitur dominus papa consulte,
of-God to-cling upon these therefore the-lord pope advisedly
oratoris episcopi Placentini voce, respondit: «Ecclesiam,
of-the-spokesman the-bishop of-Piacenza by-the-voice answered the-church
precioso Jesu Christi sanguine redemptam et liberam
by-the-precious of-Jesus Christ blood redeemed and free
constitutam, nullo modo iterato ancillari oportere; si
established in-no way again to-be-enslaved ought if
ecclesia, eo inconsulto, prælatum eligere non possit, cassata
the-church him unconsulted a-prelate to-choose not can annulled
Christi morte, ei serviliter subjacere; si virga et annulo
of-Christ death to-him servilely to-lie-subject if by-staff and ring
investiatur, cum ad altaria ejusmodi pertineant, contra Deum
he-be-invested since to the-altars such-things belong against God
ipsum usurpare; si sacratas Dominico corpori et sanguini
himself to-usurp if consecrated to-the-Lord's body and blood
manus laici manibus gladio sanguinolentis obligando
the-hands of-a-layman to-the-hands by-sword bloody by-binding

supponant, ordini suo et sacræ unctioni derogare.» Cumque
they-subject to-order his and to-sacred anointing to-derogate and-when
hæc et his similia cervicosi audissent legati, teutonico
these-things and to-these like the-stiff-necked had-heard the-envoys with-Teutonic
impetu frendentes tumultuabant, et, si tuto auderent, convicia
impetus gnashing they-rioted and if safely they-dared insults
eructarent, injurias inferrent. «Non hic, inquiunt, sed
they-would-belch wrongs they-would-inflict not here they-say but
Romæ gladiis hæc terminabitur querela.» Verum papa
at-Rome with-swords this shall-be-ended the-quarrel but the-pope
quamplures viros approbatos et peritos ad cancellarium misit,
very-many men approved and skilled to the-chancellor sent
qui eum super his composite et placide convenirent,
who him about these-things calmly and peacefully should-meet
et audirentur et audirent, et ad pacem regni eum
and should-be-heard and should-hear and to the-peace of-the-kingdom him
operam dare obnixe exorarent. Quibus recedentibus, dominus
effort to-give earnestly should-entreat who withdrawing the-lord
papa Trecas venit, diu submonitum universale concilium
pope to-Troyes came long summoned the-universal council
honorifice celebravit, et cum amore Francorum, quia multum
honorably he-celebrated and with the-love of-the-Franks because much
servierant, et timore et odio Teutonicorum ad sancti Petri
they-had-served and with-fear and hatred of-the-Germans to of-saint Peter
sedem prospere remeavit.
the-see prosperously returned
Imperator vero, secundo fere recessionis ejus anno, collecto
the-emperor but in-the-second almost of-withdrawal his year gathered
mirabili triginta millium hoste,
a-wonderful of-thirty thousand host

Nullas nisi sanguine fuso
no except blood shed
Gaudet habere vias.
he-rejoices to-have roads

Romam tendit, inire callens pacem simulat, querelam
to-Rome he-goes to-enter cunning peace he-feigns the-quarrel
investiturarum deponit, multa et hæc et alia bona
of-investitures he-lays-aside many and these and other good-things
pollicetur, et ut urbem ingrediatur, quia aliter non
he-promises and that the-city he-may-enter because otherwise not
poterat, blanditur, nec fallere summum pontificem et totam
he-could he-flatters nor to-deceive the-highest pontiff and the-whole
ecclesiam, imo ipsum regem regum veretur. Unde, quia
church nay the-very king of-kings he-fears whence because
audiebant tantam et tam perniciosam Ecclesiæ Dei sopitam
they-heard so-great and so pernicious of-the-Church of-God laid-to-rest
quæstionem, æquo aut plus æquo romani quirites tripudiant,
the-question with-just or more than-just the-Roman warriors dance
clerus supreme exultat, et quomodo eum honorificentius
the-clergy supremely exults and how him more-honorably
et elegantissime recipiant exhilarati decertant. Cumque
and most-elegantly they-may-receive gladdened they-vie and-when
dominus papa episcoporum et cardinalium togata, cum
the-lord pope of-bishops and cardinals by-the-gowned with
opertis albis operturis equis, constipatus turma, subsequente
covered white coverings horses thronged troop following
populo Romano, occurrere acceleraret, præmissis qui tactis
the-people Roman to-meet was-hastening sent-ahead who touched
sacrosanctis Evangeliis ab eodem imperatore juramentum
the-sacrosanct Gospels from the-same emperor an-oath

pacis, investiturarum depositionem susciperent, in eo qui
of-peace of-the-investitures the-laying-aside should-receive at that which
dicitur Mons Gaudii loco, ubi primum adventantibus
is-called Mount of-Joy place where first to-those-arriving
limina apostolorum beatorum visa occurrunt, idipsum
the-thresholds of-the-apostles blessed seen appear the-very-same
iteratur. In porticu vero, mirabili et universali Romanorum
is-repeated in the-portico but at-a-wonderful and universal of-the-Romans
spectaculo, manu propria imperatoris et optimatum triplicatur
spectacle by-hand own of-the-emperor and of-the-magnates is-tripled
juramentum, exinde infinite nobilius quam si Africana
the-oath thence endlessly more-nobly than if by-African
victoria potito arcus triumphalis arrideret, cum hymnis
victory to-one-possessed arch triumphal smiled with hymns
et laudum multiplici triumpho, domini papæ manu
and of-praises manifold triumph of-the-lord pope by-the-hand
sacratissima diademate coronatur more Augustorum, ad
most-sacred with-the-diadem he-is-crowned in-the-manner of-the-Augusti to
sacratissimum apostolorum altare, præcinentium clericorum
the-most-sacred of-the-apostles altar of-the-chanting-before clerics
odis, et Alemannorum cantantium terribili clamore
with-the-odes and of-the-Germans singing with-terrible shout
cœlos penetrante, celeberrima et solemni devotione
the-heavens penetrating with-most-celebrated and solemn devotion
deducitur. Cum igitur dominus papa, missas gratiarum agens;
he-is-led when therefore the-lord pope the-masses of-thanks doing
corpus et sanguinem Jesu Christi confecisset, partitam
the-body and blood of-Jesus Christ had-consecrated the-divided
Eucharistiam, in amoris impartibilis confœderatione et
Eucharist in of-love indivisible the-alliance and
pacti conservatione, obsidem mirabilem ecclesiæ devovens,
of-the-pact the-keeping as-a-hostage wonderful of-the-church vowing

suscipiendo imperator communicavit. Necdum dominus papa
by-receiving the-emperor communicated not-yet the-lord pope
post missam episcopalia deposuerat indumenta, cum inopinata
after the-mass the-episcopal had-put-off garments when by-unexpected
nequitia, ficta litis occasione, furor Teutonicus frendens
wickedness feigned of-a-quarrel on-the-occasion the-fury Teutonic gnashing
debacchatur: exertis gladiis, velut pleni mania discurrentes,
rages with-drawn swords as-if full of-madness running-about
Romanos tali in loco jure inermes aggrediuntur, clamant
the-Romans such in a-place rightly unarmed they-attack they-shout
jurejurando ut clerus romanus, omnes tam episcopi quam
on-oath that the-clergy Roman all as-much bishops as
cardinales capiantur aut trucidentur: et quod ulla non potest
cardinals be-captured or be-slaughtered and what any not can
attingere insania, in dominum papam manus impias injicere
to-reach madness on the-lord pope hands impious to-lay
non verentur. Luctu inexplicabili et dolore præcordiali,
not they-fear with-grief inexpressible and with-pain heartfelt
tam nobilitas romana quam ipse populus luget: fauctionem
as-much the-nobility Roman as the-very people mourns the-faction
licet sero animadvertunt, alii ad arma currunt, alii sicut
although late they-perceive some to arms run others as
stupidi fugiunt; nec inopinato hostium bello, nisi cum
stupefied flee nor the-unexpected of-the-enemies war except when
trabes de porticu deponentes, eorum ruinam suam fecerunt
beams from the-portico taking-down their ruin their-own they-made
defensionem, evadere potuerunt. Præfatus autem imperator
defense to-escape could-they the-aforesaid moreover emperor
pessimæ conscientiæ et facinorosi facti perterritus cruciatu,
of-most-evil conscience and of-villainous deed terrified by-torment
urbem quantocius exivit, prædam a christiano christianis
the-city as-quickly-as-possible left booty by a-christian to-christians

inauditam, dominum videlicet papam et cunctos quos potuit
unheard-of the-lord namely pope and all whom he-could
cardinales et episcopos adducens, civitate Castellana, loco
cardinals and bishops leading at-the-city of-Castello a-place
natura et arte munitissimo, se recepit; cardinales, ipsos
by-nature and art most-fortified himself he-withdrew the-cardinals themselves
turpiter exuens inhoneste tractavit; et, quod dictu nefas est,
shamefully stripping dishonorably he-treated and what to-say a-crime is
ipsum etiam dominum papam, tam pluviali quam mytra,
the-very even lord pope as-much of-the-cope as of-the-miter
cum quæcumque deferret insignia apostolatus, non veritus
together-with whatever he-carried the-insignia of-the-apostolate not fearing
in Christum Domini mittere manum, superbe spoliavit:
upon the-Anointed of-the-Lord to-lay a-hand proudly he-despoiled
multasque inferens injurias, nec eum nec suos, multo
and-many inflicting wrongs neither him nor his-men with-much
dedecore affligens, dimisit, donec ad præfati pacti solutionem
disgrace afflicting he-released until to of-the-aforesaid pact the-dissolution
et exinde facti privilegii redditionem coegit. Aliud etiam
and thence of-the-made privilege the-return-up he-forced another also
de manu domini papæ, ut deinceps investiret, surreptitium
from the-hand of-the-lord pope that thereafter he-might-invest a-surreptitious
privilegium extorsit, quod idem dominus papa in magno
privilege he-wrung which the-same lord pope in a-great
concilio trecentorum et eo amplius episcoporum, judicio
council of-three-hundred and that more bishops by-the-judgment
ecclesiæ, nobis audientibus, conquassavit et perenni
of-the-church us hearing shattered and with-perpetual
anathemate in irritum reduxit. Verum si quærit quis, quare
anathema into nullity reduced but if asks anyone why
dominus [papa] ita tepide fecerit, noverit quia ecclesia,
the-lord pope so lukewarmly acted let-him-know that the-church

percusso pastore et collateralibus, languebat; et pene eam
struck the-shepherd and the-companions languished and almost it
tyrannus ancillans, quia non erat qui resisteret, tanquam
the-tyrant enslaving because not there-was who should-resist as
propriam occupabat. Cui certum facto dedit experimentum,
his-own occupied to-which a-sure by-deed he-gave proof
quod cum fratres ecclesiæ columnas, ad tuitionem et
that when the-brothers of-the-church the-columns for the-protection and
ecclesiæ reparationem, quomodocumque solvi fecisset,
of-the-church the-repair in-whatever-way to-be-loosed he-had-caused
pacemque ecclesiæ qualemcumque reformasset, ad heremum
and-peace of-the-church whatever-sort he-had-restored to the-hermitage
solitudinis confugit; moramque ibidem perpetuam fecisset,
of-solitude he-fled and-a-stay there perpetual would-have-made
si universalis ecclesiæ et Romanorum violentia coactum non
if of-the-universal church and of-the-Romans the-violence compelled not
reduxisset. Verum Dominus Jesus Christus, redemptor
had-brought-him-back but the-Lord Jesus Christ redeemer
et defensor ecclesiæ suæ, nec eam diutius conculcari, nec
and defender of-church his neither it longer to-be-trampled nor
imperatorem impune ferre sustinuit. Qui etenim nec
the-emperor with-impunity to-bear endured who for neither
tenti nec fide obligati fuerant, causam ecclesiæ fluctuantis
held nor by-faith bound had-been the-cause of-the-church tossing
suscipientes, domini designati Ludovici suffragio et consilio in
taking-up of-the-lord designated Louis by-the-support and counsel in
gallicana celebri concilio collecta ecclesia, imperatorem tyrannum
the-Gallican celebrated council gathered church the-emperor tyrant
anathemate innodantes, mucrone beati Petri perfoderunt.
with-anathema binding with-the-sword of-blessed Peter pierced
Deinde regno teutonico applicantes optimates, et partem
then to-the-kingdom Teutonic applying the-great-men and part

regni maximam adversus eum commoverunt, fautores ejus
of-the-kingdom greatest against him they-stirred supporters his
et Bucardum Rufum Monasteriensem episcopum deposuerunt,
and Burchard the-Red of-Münster bishop deposed
nec ab infestatione aut hæredatione usque in condignam
nor from harassment or disinheritance right-up to the-fitting
pessimæ vitæ et tyrannici principatus defavillationem,
of-most-evil life and of-tyrannical rule reduction-to-ashes
supersederunt. Cujus malo merito transplantatum est, Deo
they-desisted whose by-evil desert transplanted was God
ulciscente, imperium; cum, eo exterminato, dux Saxoniæ
avenging the-empire when him removed the-duke of-Saxony
Lotharius successit, vir bellicosus, reipublicæ defensor
Lothar succeeded a-man warlike of-the-commonwealth defender
invictus. Qui, cum recalcitrantem Italiam, Campaniam,
unconquered who when the-recalcitrant Italy Campania
Apuliam, usque ad mare Adriaticum, præsente Siculo rege
Apulia right-up to the-sea Adriatic present the-Sicilian king
Rogerio, eo quod se regem creasset, depopulando,
Roger by-this that himself king he-had-created by-ravaging
domino Innocentio papæ comitatus perdomuisset, cum
to-the-lord Innocent pope accompanying had-subdued with
nobilissimo triumpho repatrians, victor sepulturæ succubuit.
most-noble triumph returning-home a-victor to-burial succumbed
Hæc et alia hujusmodi eorum scriptores depingant: nos,
these and others of-this-kind their writers may-depict we
quia proposuimus, gestis Francorum stilum replicemus.
as we-have-proposed to-the-deeds of-the-Franks the-pen let-us-turn-back

De captione castri Gornaci

10 · THE TAKING OF GOURNAY

Guy of Rochefort nurses a grudge when Louis's marriage to his daughter is dissolved, and the Garlandes break the two men's friendship. When Hugh of Pomponne, castellan of Gournay on the Marne, seizes merchants' horses on the king's road, Louis besieges Gournay, takes its island by boat and by swimming, and, repulsed at the rampart, raises a three-story siege tower. Guy calls in Count Theobald to relieve the castle, but Louis routs his army, casts out the townsmen, and gives the castle to the Garlandes.

Præfatus itaque comes Wido de Rupe Forti, quoniam
the-aforesaid and-so count Guy of Roche- -fort since
æmulorum machinatione matrimonium quod contrahebatur
of-rivals by-the-scheming the-marriage which was-being-contracted
inter dominum designatum et filiam suam, consanguinitate
between the-lord designated and daughter his on-the-ground-of-kinship
impetitum, divortio solutum in præsentia domini papæ
challenged by-divorce dissolved in the-presence of-the-lord pope
fuerat, rancore animi concepto,
had-been rancor of-mind conceived

Scintillam tenuem commotos pavit in ignes.
a-spark slender stirred fed into fires

Nec minus dominus designatus in eum zelabatur, cum
nor less the-lord designated against him was-zealous when
subito Garlandenses se intermiscentes amicitiam solvunt,
suddenly the-Garlandes themselves mixing-in the-friendship dissolve
fœdus defœderant, inimicitias exaggerant. Nactus itaque
the-treaty un-ally the-enmities heap-up having-got and-so
occasionem bellandi designatus dominus, eo quod Hugo
an-occasion of-making-war the-designated lord by-this that Hugh

de Pompona, miles strenuus, castellanus de Gornaco, castro
of Pomponne a-knight vigorous castellan of Gournay castle
super fluvium Matronæ sito, mercatorum in regia strata
on the-river Marne situated of-merchants on the-royal road
equos ex insperato rapuit et Gornacum adduxit: ejus
the-horses from the-unexpected seized and to-Gournay brought of-his
contumelia præsumptionis pene extra se positus Ludovicus,
by-the-insult of-presumption almost beside himself placed Louis
exercitum colligit, castrum subita obsidione, ut victuali
an-army gathers the-castle by-sudden siege that of-victual
carerent opulentia, velocissime cingit. Hæret castello
they-might-lack abundance most-swiftly he-surrounds clings to-the-fort
insula grata amœnitate pabulorum, equis et pecoribus
an-island with-pleasant loveliness of-pastures for-horses and cattle
opima: quæ se aliquantisper latam, sed plus longam
rich which itself for-a-while broad but more long
producens, maximam oppidanis confert utilitatem, cum et
extending the-greatest to-the-townsmen brings advantage since both
spatiantibus decurrentium aquarum clarificam exhilarationem,
to-those-strolling running-down of-waters a-bright cheer
et modo florentium, modo virentium graminum obtutibus
and now of-flowering now greening grasses to-the-gazes
et formis exhilaratam offerat clarificationem, amnis etiam
and forms a-gladdened offers clarity of-the-stream also
circumclusione existentibus securitatem. Hanc igitur dominus
by-the-enclosure to-those-dwelling security this therefore lord
Ludovicus, classem præparans, aggredi maturat, quosdam
Louis a-fleet preparing to-attack hastens some
militum et multos peditum, ut expeditius ineant,
of-the-knights and many of-the-foot that more-readily they-may-go-in
et, si cadere contingat, citius resiliant, denudat;
and if to-fall it-happen more-quickly they-may-spring-up he-strips

alios vero natando, alios licet periculose aquarum profundo
others but by-swimming others though dangerously of-the-waters in-the-depth
utcumque equitando, ipsemet flumen ingrediens audaciter
somehow by-riding he-himself the-river entering boldly
insulam occupare imperat. Oppidani fortiter resistunt, et
the-island to-seize he-orders the-townsmen strongly resist and
ripa ardua altiores, fluctibus et classe inferiores,
from-the-bank steep higher than-the-waves and than-the-fleet lower
saxis, lanceis, sed et sudibus dure repellunt. Verum
with-stones lances but also with-stakes harshly they-repel but
repulsi, animi motu animositate resumpta, repellentes
the-repulsed of-mind by-the-impulse spirit regained the-repellers
repellere insistunt, balistarios et sagittarios jacere compellunt,
to-repel press-on crossbowmen and archers to-shoot they-compel
manualiter, prout attingere possunt, confligunt; loricati
hand-to-hand as to-reach they-can they-clash mailed
et galeati de classe, piratarum more, audacissime
and helmeted from the-fleet of-pirates in-the-manner most-boldly
committunt, repellentes repellunt, et, ut consuevit virtus
they-engage the-repellers they-repel and as is-wont valor
dedecoris impatiens, occupatam armis insulam recipiunt,
of-disgrace impatient seized by-arms the-island they-take-back
eosque se in castro coercitos recipere compellunt. Quos
and-them themselves into the-castle confined to-withdraw they-compel whom
cum aliquantisper arcto obsessos ad deditionem cogere non
when for-a-while in-a-narrow besieged to surrender to-force not
valeret, impatiens morarum, quadam die animositate rapitur,
he-could impatient of-delays on-a-certain day by-boldness he-is-seized
exercitum cogit, castrum munitissimum vallo arcto
the-army he-gathers the-castle most-fortified with-a-rampart tight
et rigido, superius glande, inferius torrentis profunditate
and stiff above with-a-palisade below of-the-torrent by-the-depth

pene inexpugnabili, aggreditur: per torrentem usque ad
almost impregnable he-attacks through the-torrent right-up to
balteum fossatum conscendens, ad glandem contendit,
the-belt the-ditch climbing to the-palisade he-strives
pugnare pugnando imperat, gravissime sed amarissime cum
to-fight by-fighting he-commands most-heavily but most-bitterly with
hoste decertat. Viri econtra defensores, audaciam vitæ
the-enemy he-contends the-men on-the-other-side defenders daring to-life
præferentes, ocius defensioni insistunt, nec etiam domino
preferring more-quickly to-defense press nor even the-lord
parcunt, arma movent, hostem rejiciunt, superiorem imo
they-spare arms they-move the-enemy they-throw-back the-higher-one nay
torrentis inferiorem præcipitando restituunt. Sic ea vice
of-the-torrent lower by-casting-headlong they-restore thus at-that turn
illi gloriam, isti repulsam, licet inviti, sustinuerunt. Parantur
they glory these repulse though unwilling endured are-prepared
deinceps castri eversioni bellica instrumenta; erigitur,
thereafter of-the-castle for-the-overthrow war instruments is-raised
tristegas tres pugnantibus porrigens, supereminens machina,
towers three to-fighters offering overtopping a-machine
quæ castro superlativa propugnatorii primi sagittariis et
which over-the-castle surpassing of-the-bulwark first to-the-archers and
balistariis ire aut per castellum apparere prohiberet. Unde,
crossbowmen to-go or through the-fort to-appear prevented whence
quia incessanter die ac nocte his coarctati, defensionibus
because ceaselessly by-day and by-night by-these hemmed-in defenses
suis assistere non valebant, terratis caveis defendentes
their to-man not they-could in-earthen pits defending
seipsos provide defensabant, suorumque ictibus sagittariorum
themselves providently they-defended and-of-their-own by-the-shots of-archers
insidiantes, primi propugnaculi superiores mortis periculo
lying-in-wait of-the-first bulwark upper-men with-the-danger of-death

anticipabant. Hærebat machinæ eminenti pons ligneus, qui
they-forestalled clung to-the-machine towering a-bridge wooden which
se excelsius porrigens, cum paulisper demitteretur super
itself loftier stretching when a-little it-was-let-down onto
glandem, facilem descendentibus pararet ingressum. Quod
the-palisade an-easy for-those-descending would-prepare entrance which
contra viri super his callentes lignea podia ex opposito
against the-men in these-things skilled wooden platforms from the-opposite
separatim præferebant, ut et pons et qui per pontem
separately set-forth so-that both the-bridge and those-who over the-bridge
ingrederentur utrique corruentes in subterraneas foveas
should-enter both collapsing into underground pits
acutis sudibus armatas, ne animadverterentur ficte paleis
with-sharp stakes armed lest they-be-noticed feignedly with-straw
opertas, vitæ periculum et mortis mulctam sustinerent.
covered of-life the-danger and of-death the-penalty should-sustain
Interea præfatus Guido, ut callens vir et strenuus, parentes
meanwhile the-aforesaid Guy as a-skilled man and vigorous kinsmen
et amicos exagitat, dominos supplicando sollicitat, obsessis
and friends he-stirs-up lords by-beseeching he-solicits for-the-besieged
suffragia accelerat. Agens igitur cum comite palatino
help he-hastens dealing therefore with count palatine
Theobaldo, elegantissimæ juventutis et militaris disciplinæ
Theobald of-most-elegant youth and of-military discipline
industria exercitato viro, quatinus die certa (deficiebant enim
in-diligence a-practiced man that on-a-day fixed were-failing for
obsessis victualia) præsidia ferret, castrum exobsessum
to-the-besieged the-victuals support he-should-bring the-castle unbesieged
manu forti deliberaret, ipse interim rapinis, incendio,
with-hand strong he-should-free he meanwhile with-plunders with-fire
ut obsidionem removeret, insudabat. Designata igitur die
that the-siege he-might-remove was-sweating designated therefore the-day

qua prædictus comes Theobaldus et præsidia ferret et
on-which the-aforesaid count Theobald both support should-bring and
obsidionem manu militari removeret, dominus designatus,
the-siege with-hand military remove the-lord designated
non eminus sed cominus, quem potuit collegit exercitum: et
not from-afar but from-near what he-could gathered army and
regiæ memor excellentiæ, mactæ virtutis, relictis tentoriis et
of-royal mindful excellence of-honored valor leaving the-tents and
eorum defensoribus, lætabundus occurrit; et præmisso qui
their defenders joyful ran-to-meet and sent-ahead one-who
eos venire aut eos velle dimicare renunciet, ipse barones
them to-come or them to-wish to-fight should-report he the-barons
asciscit, acies ordinat militarem et pedestrem, sagittarios et
summons lines he-orders knightly and foot archers and
lancearios suo loco sequestrat. Ut ergo se conspicantur,
lancers in-its place he-sets-apart when therefore each-other they-see
classica intonant, equitum et equorum animositas incitatur,
the-trumpets thunder of-riders and of-horses the-spirit is-roused
citissime committitur. Verum Franci, marte continuo exercitati,
most-quickly it-is-engaged but the-Franks in-war continual practiced
Brienses longa pace solutos aggressi, cædunt, lanceis et
the-men-of-Brie by-long peace slackened attacking they-cut-down with-lances and
gladiis præcipitant, victoriæ insistunt; nec eos impugnare
with-swords they-cast-headlong on-victory they-press nor them to-attack
viriliter tam militari quam pedestri manu desistunt, donec
manfully as-much with-knightly as with-foot hand they-cease until
terga vertentes fugæ præsidium arripuerunt. Ipse vero comes
backs turning of-flight the-protection they-seized he but the-count
malens primus quam extremus in fuga, ne caperetur, reperiri,
preferring first than last in flight lest he-be-taken to-be-found
relicto exercitu, repatriare contendit. Qua congressione
left the-army to-return-home strives in-which encounter

quidam interfecti, multi vulnerati, plures capti famosam
some killed many wounded more captured a-famous
ubique terrarum celeberrimam fecere victoriam. Potitus itaque
everywhere of-the-lands most-celebrated made victory having-won and-so
tanta et tam opportuna dominus Ludovicus victoria, tentoria
so-great and so timely lord Louis a-victory the-tents
repetit, oppidanos vana spe frustratos ejicit, castellum
seeks-again the-townsmen by-vain hope frustrated he-casts-out the-fort
sibi retinens Garlandensibus committit.
for-himself keeping to-the-Garlandes he-entrusts

De captione castri Sanctæ Severæ

11 · THE TAKING OF SAINTE-SÉVÈRE

Asked into Berry, Louis rides with his household knights against Humbaud of Sainte-Sévère, who refuses justice. At a barred stream Louis fells two men with one lance, the Franks rout the defenders, and Humbaud surrenders and is left captive at Étampes.

Sicut ergo nobiles ignobiles, gloriosos inglorios reddens,
as therefore the-noble ignoble the-glorious inglorious making
pigritia desidiam comitata imo deprimit; sic nobiles nobiliores,
sloth with-idleness accompanied nay presses-down so the-noble more-noble
gloriosos gloriosiores virtus animi, corporis exercitio agitata,
the-glorious more-glorious valor of-mind of-body by-exercise roused
superis attollit, et quibus oblectata strenuitas perfruatur,
to-the-heights lifts and with-which delighted vigor may-enjoy
præclara facinora undecumque terrarum viris offerendo reponit.
splendid deeds from-wherever of-the-lands to-men by-offering it-stores-up
Assistunt equidem qui magnificis exorent suppliciis,
are-present indeed men-who with-magnificent may-entreat supplications

multo etiam et sumptuoso servitio, ad partes Biturícensium
with-much also and costly service to the-parts of-the-men-of-Bourges
dominum Ludovicum transmeare, ea in parte qua confinia
lord Louis to-cross that in part where the-borders
Lemovicensium conterminant, ad castrum videlicet Sanctæ
of-the-Limousins adjoin to the-castle namely of-Sainte-
Severæ nobilissimum, et hæreditaria militiæ possessione
-Sévère most-noble and by-hereditary of-knighthood possession
famosum, pedite multo populosum, dominumque illius
famous with-foot-soldiers many populous and-the-lord of-it
virum nobilem Hunbaldum, aut ad exequendum justitiam
a-man noble Humbaud either to doing justice
cogere, aut jure pro injuria castrum lege Salica amittere.
to-compel or by-law for wrong the-castle by-law Salic to-lose
Rogatus vero, non cum hoste, sed domesticorum militari
asked but not with an-army but of-household-men with-knightly
manu fines illos ingressus, cum ad castrum festinaret,
hand those borders having-entered when to the-castle he-was-hastening
præfatus castellanus multa militia comitatus (erat enim
the-aforesaid castellan with-much knighthood accompanied he-was for
generosi sanguinis, bene liberalis et providus) ei occurrit;
of-noble blood well liberal and provident him met
rivumque quemdam repagulis et palis præponens (nulla enim
and-stream a-certain with-barriers and stakes setting-before no for
alia succedebat via), exercitui Francorum resistit. Cumque ibi
other was-available way to-the-army of-the-Franks he-resists and-when there
mediante rivo utrique hærerent, dominus Ludovicus, unum
between stream on-both-sides they-stuck lord Louis one
eorum audacius cæteris indignatus repagula exisse, equum
of-them more-boldly than-the-rest indignant the-barriers to-have-crossed the-horse
calcaribus urget: et ut erat vir præ cæteris cordatus,
with-spurs he-urges and as he-was a-man beyond the-rest courageous

insiliens in eum, lancea percussum, nec eum solum,
leaping upon him with-the-lance struck not-only him alone
sed per eum alium uno ictu prosternit, et, quod regem
but through him another with-one blow he-lays-low and what a-king
dedeceret, in eodem rivo copiosum usque ad galeam balneum
would-misbecome in the-same stream a-plentiful right-up to the-helmet bath
componit; successusque suos urgere non differens, quo ille
he-arranges and-successes his to-press not delaying where that-one
arcto exierat iste intravit, et pugili congressione hostes
a-narrow had-gone-out this-one went-in and in-boxer's encounter the-enemies
abigere non desistit. Quod Franci videntes, mirabiliter
to-drive-off not he-ceases which the-Franks seeing wonderfully
animati, repagula rumpunt, rivum transiliunt: hostesque
roused the-barriers break the-stream leap-across and-the-enemies
multa cæde persequentes, ad castrum usque coactos
with-much slaughter pursuing to the-castle right-up compelled
repellunt. Fama volat, oppidanos totamque viciniam percellit,
they-drive-back report flies the-townsmen and-the-whole neighborhood it-strikes
quod dominus Ludovicus et sui, ut fortissimi milites,
that lord Louis and his-men as most-strong knights
donec funditus subverterit castrum, et nobiliores castri
until utterly he-overturn the-castle and the-nobler of-the-castle
aut patibulo affigat aut oculos eruat, recedere dedignetur.
either to-the-gibbet fix or the-eyes put-out to-withdraw disdains
Eapropter consulte agitur ut et dominus castri se
wherefore advisedly it-is-done that both the-lord of-the-castle himself
dedere regiæ majestati non differat, castrumque et terram
to-surrender to-royal majesty not delay and-the-castle and land
ejus ditioni subjiciat. Rediens itaque dominus Ludovicus
his to-the-sway subject returning and-so lord Louis

prædam dominum castri fecit, et subito triumpho, eo
booty the-lord of-the-castle made and with-sudden triumph him
Stampis relicto, Parisius felici successu remeavit.
at-Étampes left to-Paris with-happy success returned

De morte regis Philippi

12 · THE DEATH OF KING PHILIP

King Philip, worn by his long union with the Angevin countess, dies at Melun, about sixty years old. Louis follows the bier on foot and on horseback, and the king is buried at Saint Benedict's on the Loire before the altar, as he had wished, rather than among his fathers at Saint-Denis.

Deinceps in diem proficiente filio, pater ejus rex Philippus in
thereafter by the-day advancing the-son the-father his king Philip by
diem deficiebat. Neque enim post superductam Andegavensem
the-day was-failing nor for after the-brought-in of-Anjou
comitissam quidquam regia majestate dignum agebat; sed,
countess anything of-royal majesty worthy did-he-do but
raptæ conjugis raptus concupiscentia, voluptati suæ
of-the-seized wife carried-away by-desire pleasure his
satisfacere operam dabat. Unde nec reipublicæ providebat,
to-satisfy effort he-gave whence neither for-the-commonwealth did-he-provide
nec proceri et elegantis corporis sanitati plus æquo
nor of-tall and elegant body the-health more than-was-fair
remissus parcebat. Hoc unum supererat quod, timore et
relaxed did-he-spare this one-thing remained that by-fear and
amore successoris filii, regni status vigebat. Cumque
love of-the-successor son of-the-kingdom the-condition flourished and-when
fere sexagenarius esset, regem exuens apud Milidunum
almost sixty-years-old he-was the-king putting-off at Melun

castrum super fluvium Sequanæ, præsente domino Ludovico,
the-castle on the-river of-the-Seine being-present lord Louis
extremum clausit diem. Cujus nobilibus exequiis interfuerunt
his-last he-closed day whose noble obsequies attended
viri venerabiles Walo Parisiensis episcopus, Silvanectensis,
men venerable Galo of-Paris bishop of-Senlis
Aurelianensis, et bonæ memoriæ Adam beati Dionysii abbas,
of-Orléans and of-good memory Adam of-blessed Denis abbot
et viri religiosi quamplures. Qui, nobile regiæ majestatis cadaver
and men religious very-many who the-noble of-royal majesty corpse
ad ecclesiam beatæ Mariæ perferentes, celebres ei exequias
to the-church of-blessed Mary carrying solemn for-him obsequies
pernoctaverunt. Sequente vero mane, lecticam, palliis
kept-through-the-night following but in-the-morning the-bier with-palls
seu quocumque funebri ornatu decenter ornatam, cervicibus
or whatever funeral adornment fittingly adorned on-the-necks
majorum suorum servorum imposuit filius; et filiali affectu,
of-the-greater of-his servants placed the-son and with-filial affection
quemadmodum decebat, modo pedes modo eques, cum
as was-fitting now on-foot now on-horseback with
quos habebat baronibus lecticam flendo adjutare studebat.
whom he-had the-barons the-bier by-weeping to-help strove
Hic etiam mirabilem ostendens animi generositatem, cum
here also wonderful showing of-mind nobility since
toto tempore vitæ suæ nec pro matris repudio, nec
in-the-whole time of-life his neither for of-his-mother the-repudiation nor
etiam pro superducta Andegavensi, ipsum in aliquo offendere,
even for the-brought-in of-Anjou him in anything to-offend
aut regni ejus dominationem defraudando in aliquo,
or of-the-kingdom his the-lordship by-defrauding in anything
sicut alii consueverunt juvenes, curaverit perturbare. Cum
as other are-accustomed young-men he-took-care to-disturb when

autem ad nobile monasterium beati Benedicti super Ligerim
moreover to the-noble monastery of-blessed Benedict on the-Loire
fluvium multo comitatu deportassent, quoniam ibidem
river with-great retinue they-had-carried-him since there
se devoverat (dicebant siquidem qui ab eo audierant
himself he-had-vowed they-said indeed (those)-who from him had-heard
quod a sepultura patrum suorum regum, quæ in ecclesia
that from the-burial of-the-fathers his kings which in the-church
beati Dionysii quasi jure naturali habetur, se absentari
of-blessed Denis as-if by-right natural is-held himself to-absent
desideraverat, eo quod minus bene erga ecclesiam se
he-had-desired by-this that less well toward the-church himself
habuerat, et quia inter tot nobiles reges non magni
he-had-conducted and because among so-many noble kings not of-great-account
duceretur ejus sepultura), in eodem monasterio ante altare
would-be-reckoned his burial in the-same monastery before the-altar
positum, prout decentius potuerunt, hymnis et prece animam
placed as more-fittingly they-could with-hymns and prayer the-soul
Domino commendantes, corpus solemnibus saxis exceperunt.
to-the-Lord commending the-body in-solemn stones received

De sublimatione ejus in regem

13 · LOUIS CROWNED KING

To forestall the schemes of the wicked, the bishops on Ivo of Chartres's advice crown Louis at Orléans on the feast of the Finding of Saint Stephen. Envoys from Reims arrive too late with letters forbidding the anointing, and go home with nothing.

Præfatus autem Ludovicus, quoniam in adolescentia ecclesiæ
the-aforesaid moreover Louis since in youth of-the-church
amicitiam liberali defensione promeruerat, pauperum et
the-friendship by-generous defense had-earned of-the-poor and
orphanorum causam sustentaverat, tyrannos potenti virtute
of-orphans the-cause had-upheld the-tyrants with-powerful valor
perdomuerat, Deo annuente, ad regni fastigia sicut
had-subdued God assenting to of-the-kingdom the-summit as
bonorum voto asciscitur, sic malorum et impiorum
of-the-good by-the-wish he-is-taken-up so of-the-wicked and of-the-impious
votiva machinatione, si fieri posset, excluderetur.
by-the-wishful scheming if to-be-done it-could he-would-be-shut-out
Consulte ergo agitur, et potissimum dictante venerabili
advisedly therefore it-is-done and chiefly at-the-dictation-of the-venerable
et sapientissimo viro Ivone Carnotensi episcopo, ut ad
and most-wise man Ivo of-Chartres bishop that for
refellendam impiorum machinationem citissime Aurelianis
refuting of-the-impious the-scheming very-quickly at-Orléans
conveniant, ejusque exaltationi operam dare mature festinent.
they-gather and-to-his exaltation effort to-give promptly hasten
Senonensis igitur archiepiscopus Daimbertus invitatus cum
of-Sens therefore the-archbishop Daimbert invited with
comprovincialibus, videlicet Galone Parisiensi episcopo,
his-comprovincials namely Galo of-Paris bishop

Manasse Meldensi, Johanne Aurelianensi, Ivone Carnotensi,
Manasses of-Meaux John of-Orléans Ivo of-Chartres
Hugone Nivernensi, Humbaldo Autissiodorensi, accessit.
Hugh of-Nevers Humbaud of-Auxerre came
Qui in die Inventionis sancti prothomartyris Stephani,
who on the-day of-the-Finding of-saint protomartyr Stephen
sacratissimo unctionis liquore delibutum, missas gratiarum
with-most-sacred of-anointing liquid anointed masses of-thanks
agens, abjectoque secularis militiæ gladio, ecclesiastico
performing and-cast-away of-secular knighthood the-sword with-the-ecclesiastical
ad vindictam malefactorum accingens, diademate regni
for the-punishment of-evildoers girding with-the-diadem of-the-kingdom
gratanter coronavit, necnon et sceptrum et virgam, et per
gladly crowned and-also both the-scepter and the-rod and through
hæc ecclesiarum et pauperum defensionem, et quæcumque
these of-the-churches and of-the-poor the-defense and whatever
regni insignia, approbante clero et populo, devotissime
of-the-kingdom insignia approving the-clergy and people most-devoutly
contradidit. Necdum post celebrationem divinorum festivas
handed-over not-yet after the-celebration of-the-divine-offices festive
deposuerat exuvias, cum subito mali nuncii bajulatores a
he-had-put-off robes when suddenly of-ill news the-bearers from
Remensi ecclesia assistunt, litteras contradictorias deferentes, et
the-Reims church stand-by letters of-objection bringing and
auctoritate apostolica, si tempestive venissent, ne regia fieret
by-authority apostolic if in-time they-had-come lest the-royal be-done
unctio interminantes. Dicebant siquidem primæ regis coronæ
anointing forbidding they-said indeed of-the-first of-the-king crown
primitias ad jus ecclesiæ Remensis spectare, et a primo
the-first-fruits to the-right of-the-church of-Reims to-belong and from the-first
Francorum rege, quem baptizavit beatus Remigius, Clodoveo,
of-the-Franks king whom baptized blessed Remigius Clovis

hanc prærogativam illibatam et inconvulsam obtinere: si quis
this prerogative unimpaired and unshaken to-hold if anyone
eam temerario ausu violare temptaverit, anathemati perpetuo
it with-rash daring to-violate should-attempt to-anathema perpetual
subjacere. Ea siquidem occasione, archiepiscopo suo, venerabili
to-be-subject by-that indeed occasion for-the-archbishop their venerable
et emerito viro Viridi Rodulfo, qui domini regis, eo quod
and well-deserving man the-Green Ralph who of-the-lord king by-this that
absque ejus assensu electus et inthronizatus fuerat sede
without his assent elected and enthroned had-been in-the-see
Remensi, gravissimas et periculosas incurrerat inimicitias,
of-Reims most-grievous and perilous had-incurred enmities
pacem impetrare, aut regem non coronari sperabant. Qui,
peace to-obtain or the-king not to-be-crowned they-hoped who
quia intempestive venerunt, ibi muti, ad propria loquaces
because out-of-season they-came there dumb to their-own talkative
redierunt: quicquid tamen dixerunt, nihil utile retulerunt.
returned whatever yet they-said nothing useful brought-back

De captione Firmitatis Balduini, et liberatione comitis Curboilensis et Anselmi Garlandensis

14 · LA FERTÉ-BAUDOUIN AND THE COUNT OF CORBEIL

Hugh of Crécy captures his own brother Odo, count of Corbeil, and chains him at La Ferté-Baudouin. A night entry fails and the king's seneschal, Anseau of Garlande, is caught inside; Louis besieges the castle, Hugh escapes the king's knights by his tricks, and the castle yields, freeing both prisoners.

Ludovicus igitur Dei gratia rex Francorum, quoniam in
Louis therefore of-God by-the-grace king of-the-Franks since in
adolescentia idipsum consueverat, dissuescere non potuit,
youth that-very-thing he-had-been-accustomed-to to-unlearn not could
videlicet ecclesias tueri, pauperes et egenos protegere, paci
namely the-churches to-guard the-poor and needy to-protect to-peace
et regni defensioni insistere. Præfatus itaque Guido
and of-the-kingdom to-the-defense to-apply-himself the-aforesaid and-so Guy
Rubeus, filiusque ejus Hugo Creciacensis, juvenis idoneus, armis
the-Red and-son his Hugh of-Crécy a-youth fit in-arms
strenuus, tam rapinis quam incendiis aptus, totiusque
vigorous as-much for-plunderings as for-burnings apt and-of-the-whole
regni turbator celerrimus, rancore animi cumulato pro amissi
kingdom disturber most-swift with-rancor of-mind heaped-up for of-the-lost
castri Gornaci erubescentia, a regiæ excellentiæ derogatione
castle of-Gournay the-shame from of-the-royal excellence disparagement
non cessabant. Eapropter nec etiam fratri Corboilensi Odoni,
not ceased therefore not even the-brother of-Corbeil Odo
quia ei nullam contra regem tulerat opem, parcere elegit;
because to-him no against the-king he-had-brought help to-spare he-chose
sed ejus insidians simplicitati, cum quadam die venatum
but his lying-in-wait-for simplicity when on-a-certain day hunting

iri penes se secure decrevisset, quid rei, quid spei
to-go with himself securely he-had-decided what of-thing what of-hope
corrupta invidia consanguinitas pariat, insipiens animadvertit.
corrupted by-envy kinship brings-forth the-foolish-one found-out
Raptus equidem ab eodem fratre Hugone, in castro qui
seized indeed by the-same brother Hugh in the-castle which
dicitur Firmitas Balduini compedibus et catenis impeditur:
is-called La-Ferté Baudouin with-fetters and chains he-is-bound
nec si facultas suppeteret, nisi cum regem impeteret bello,
nor if the-means were-at-hand unless when the-king he-attacked in-war
expediretur. Qua inusitata insania, oppidani Curboilenses
would-he-be-freed at-which unwonted madness the-townsmen of-Corbeil
multi (oppugnabat enim castellum veterana militum multorum
many assailed for the-castle the-veteran of-knights many
nobilitas) ad regiæ majestatis publicum confugiunt asylum:
nobility to of-royal majesty the-public flee asylum
genibus ejus provoluti, lachrymabili singultu captum comitem
at-the-knees his prostrate with-tearful sobbing the-captured count
et captionis causam denunciant, et ut eum potenter
and of-the-capture the-cause they-report and that him mightily
eripiat multiplici prece sollicitant. Spe autem ereptionis
he-may-rescue with-manifold prayer they-entreat the-hope moreover of-rescue
eo spondente suscepta, iram mitigant, dolorem alleviant,
him promising received their-anger they-soothe their-grief they-lighten
et qua arte, quibus valeant viribus, dominum recuperare
and by-what art with-what they-may-avail forces their-lord to-recover
decertant. Unde actum est ut quidam de Firmitate Balduini,
they-strive whence done it-was that some of La-Ferté Baudouin
quæ nec hæreditario, sed occasione cujusdam matrimonii
which not by-inheritance but by-occasion of-a-certain marriage
de comitissa Adelaide, quam retento castro spretam
of the-countess Adelaide whom with-the-retained castle spurned

repudiavit, ad eum spectabat, cum quibusdam Curboilensium
he-repudiated to him belonged with some of-the-Corbeil-men
conferentes, jurejurando in castro, caute tamen, eos
conferring by-oath into the-castle cautiously yet them
recipere firmaverunt. Quorum persuasione cum rex pauca
to-receive confirmed whose by-persuasion when the-king with-a-small
curialium manu, ne publicaretur, accelerasset, sero cum adhuc
of-courtiers band lest it-be-made-public had-hastened late while still
circa ignes confabularentur, qui præmissi fuerant, videlicet
around the-fires they-were-chatting those-who sent-ahead had-been namely
Ansellus de Garlanda dapifer, tanquam miles strenuus,
Anseau of Garlande the-seneschal as a-knight vigorous
porta qua determinatum erat pene cum quadraginta
by-the-gate by-which agreed it-had-been almost with forty
armatis receptus, viribus eam occupare contendit. Verum
armed-men received by-force it to-seize strove but
oppidani fremitum equorum, equitum murmur inopinatum
the-townsmen the-snorting of-horses of-horsemen the-murmur unexpected
admirantes, econtra prosiliunt; et quia via ostiis oppositis
wondering-at in-turn leap-out and because the-way by-doors set-opposite
arctabatur, et ingressis ad nutum aut ire aut redire
was-narrowed and to-those-entered at will either to-go or to-return
prohibebat, indigenæ pro foribus audaciores expeditius eos
prevented the-natives before the-doors bolder more-readily them
cædebant. Qui et noctis tenebrarum opacitate et loci
cut-down who both of-night of-the-darkness by-the-thickness and of-the-place
coarctati infortunio, cum sustinere diutius non valentes
narrowed by-the-misfortune when to-hold-out longer not able
portam repetissent, Ansellus, ut erat animosus, retrocedens
the-gate had-made-for-again Anseau as he-was spirited falling-back
et cæsus, quia portam hoste anticipatus non potuit,
and struck because the-gate by-the-enemy forestalled not he-could

interceptus, turrim castri ejusdem, non ut dominus, sed
intercepted the-tower of-the-castle same not as lord but
captivus, cum comite Corboilensi occupavit. Et pari dolore,
captive with the-count of-Corbeil occupied and with-equal grief
dispari timore, cum alius mortem, alius exhæredationem
with-unequal fear since one death the-other disinheritance
tantum timeret, versus ille eis aptari poterat:
only feared the-verse that to-them to-be-applied could

Solatia fati
solace of-fate
Chartago Mariusque tulit.
Carthage and-Marius bore

Quod cum clamore refugorum accelerantis regis auribus
which when with-the-outcry of-the-fugitives of-the-hastening king in-the-ears
insonuisset, deviando densæ noctis molestia se
had-sounded by-straying of-the-dense night through-the-trouble himself
demoratum dedignans, celerrimo insiliit equo; et innitens
delayed scorning on-a-most-swift leapt horse and striving
irrumpendo portam præsidia suis audacter deferre, porta
by-bursting-in the-gate aid to-his-men boldly to-bring the-gate
serata, telorum et lancearum et saxorum grandine cessit
barred of-missiles and of-lances and of-stones by-the-hail he-gave-way
repulsus. Quo consternati dolore, fratres et consanguinei
driven-back by-which dismayed grief the-brothers and kinsmen
capti dapiferi, pedibus regis provoluti: «Miserere,
of-the-captured seneschal at-the-feet of-the-king prostrate have-mercy
inquiunt, gloriose rex, strenue agens; quoniam si nefandus
they-say glorious king vigorously acting since if the-unspeakable
ille Hugo Creciacensis, homo perditissimus, humani sanguinis
that Hugh of-Crécy a-man most-abandoned of-human blood

sitibundus, vel huc veniens, vel illuc abducens fratrem
thirsty either hither coming or thither leading-off brother
nostrum tangere quoquo modo potuerit, jugulo ejus
our to-touch in-any way he-can on-the-throat his
citissime insistet, nec quæ eum pœna maneat, si ferocior
most-quickly he-shall-press nor what him punishment awaits if more-ferocious
ferocissimo subita morte eum interficiat, curabit.» Hoc
than-the-most-ferocious by-sudden death him he-should-kill shall-be-care by-this
igitur timore rex citissime castrum cingit, portarum
therefore fear the-king most-quickly the-castle surrounds of-the-gates
vias obtrudit, municipiis quatuor aut quinque castrum
the-ways blocks with-strongholds four or five the-castle
concludit, et ad captorum et castelli receptionem et
he-shuts-in and to of-the-captives and of-the-castle the-recovery both
regni et personæ operam impendit. Præfatus autem
of-the-kingdom and of-his-person the-effort devotes the-aforesaid moreover
Hugo, quorum captione primo exhilaratus, horum ereptione
Hugh whose by-capture at-first gladdened of-these by-rescue
et castri omissione valde perterritus, anxiatur, laborat;
and of-the-castle the-loss greatly terrified is-anxious toils
et quomodo castrum ingredi posset, modo, eques, modo
and how the-castle to-enter he-could now on-horseback now
pedes multiformi joculatoris et meretricis mentito simulacro,
on-foot in-the-manifold of-a-jester and of-a-harlot feigned likeness
machinatur. Unde cum quadam die id circa tota ejus
contrives whence when on-a-certain day this about whole his
intentio versaretur, de castris animadversus; insilientium
intent was-turning from the-camp noticed of-those-leaping-out
peremptorios impetus sustinere non valens, fugam apponit
the-deadly onsets to-withstand not able flight he-applies
saluti: cum subito inter alios et ante alios, animi
to-his-safety when suddenly among the-others and before the-others of-mind

et equi velocitate, Guillelmus, frater capti dapiferi,
and of-horse by-the-swiftness William the-brother of-the-captured seneschal
miles facetus et armis strenuus, eum gravissime insectans,
a-knight polished and in-arms vigorous him most-hotly pursuing
impedire conatur. Quem cum ipse Hugo ipsa sui
to-hinder tries whom when himself Hugh by-the-very of-his
velocitate singularem conspiceret, vibrato fraxino sæpe
swiftness alone saw with-brandished ash often
in eum intendebat: sed quia, timore consequentium, moram
at him he-aimed but because for-fear of-those-following delay
facere non audebat, reciprocam fugam capiebat. Hoc mire
to-make not he-dared returning flight he-took in-this wonderfully
et egregie callens quod, si cum eo solo solus mora
and excellently skilled that if with him alone alone with-delay
aliqua inire posset, animi audaciam aut duelli trophæo
some to-engage he-could of-mind the-daring either of-the-duel by-the-trophy
aut mortis periculo mirabili fama declararet. Crebro etiam
or of-death by-the-peril with-wonderful fame he-would-declare often also
contigit ut villas in via sitas et occurrentium hostium
it-happened that the-villages on the-way situated and of-meeting enemies
indeclinabiles impetus nullo modo evadere valeret, nisi cum
the-unavoidable onsets in-no way to-escape could-he unless when
simulata fraude seipsum Garlandensem Guillelmum fallendo,
with-feigned fraud himself the-Garlande William by-deceiving
Guillelmum autem Hugonem se sequentem conclamaret,
William moreover Hugh himself following he-cried-out
et ex parte regis, ut eum tanquam hostem impedirent,
and on-the behalf of-the-king that him as an-enemy they-should-hinder
invitaret. His et aliis hujusmodi, tam linguæ cautela
he-urged by-these and other such-things as-much of-tongue by-the-wariness
quam animi strenuitate, fuga lapsus, multos unus derisit.
as of-mind by-the-vigor in-flight slipped-away many alone he-mocked

Rex autem, nec hac nec alia occasione ab incœpto
the-king moreover neither by-this nor by-another occasion from the-undertaking
obsidionis desistens, castellum coarctat, oppidanos terebrat, nec
of-the-siege desisting the-castle presses the-townsmen bores nor
eos impugnare desistit, donec expugnatis clam militibus,
them to-assail ceases until overcome unbeknown-to the-knights
quorumdam tamen oppidanorum machinatione, potenti virtute
of-some yet of-the-townsmen by-the-contrivance by-powerful valor
ad deditionem coegit. Quo tumultu milites, ad arcem
to surrender he-compelled in-which tumult the-knights to the-keep
fugientes, vitæ, non captioni consuluerunt. Nam ibidem
fleeing for-life not for-capture provided for there
inclusi, nec se plene protegere, nec arcem exire quoquo
shut-in neither themselves fully to-protect nor the-keep to-leave in-any
modo valuerunt; donec quidam cæsi, plures sauciati, regiæ
way were-able until some slain more wounded of-the-royal
majestatis arbitrio succumbentes, tam se quam
majesty to-the-judgment yielding as-much themselves as
arcem, non inconsulto domino suo, exposuerunt. Sic uno
the-keep not unconsulted lord their surrendered thus by-one
facto pius et sceleratus eodem, dapiferum sibi, fratribus
deed pious and wicked by-the-same the-seneschal to-himself to-the-brothers
fratrem, Corboilensibus comitem, tam prudenter quam
the-brother to-the-Corbeil-men the-count as prudently as
clementer restituit. De castello militum quosdam, eorum
mercifully he-restored of the-castle of-the-knights some their
bona depopulans, exhæredavit, quosdam diuturni carceris
goods plundering he-disinherited some of-long prison
maceratione, ut terreret consimiles, affligens, durissime
by-the-wasting that he-might-terrify the-like afflicting most-harshly

puniri instituit. Talique victoria coronæ primitias contra
to-be-punished he-ordained and-by-such victory of-the-crown the-first-fruits against
æmulorum opinionem egregie, Deo donante, nobilitavit.
of-the-rivals the-expectation splendidly God granting he-ennobled

De colloquio inter regem Ludovicum et regem Anglorum Henricum, habito apud Plancas Nimpheoli

15 · THE PARLEY AT LES PLANCHES DE NEAUFLES

Henry of England, whose reign is read here as fulfilling Merlin's prophecy, takes Gisors and will neither raze nor surrender it as the treaty requires. At the parley at Les Planches de Neaufles Louis challenges him to raze the castle or answer him in single combat, and Henry refuses. The war runs nearly two years until Henry's son does homage and Louis grants him Gisors as a fief.

Ea tempestate, ad partes Normannorum contigit devenisse
at-that time to the-parts of-the-Normans it-happened to-have-come
regem Anglorum Henricum, virum fortissimum, pace et
the-king of-the-English Henry a-man most-strong in-peace and
bello clarum. Cujus admirabilem et pene per universum
war famous whose admirable and almost through the-whole
orbem declaratam excellentiam ille etiam agrestis vates,
world declared excellence that also rustic seer
Anglorum sempiterni eventus mirabilis spectator et relator,
of-the-English of-everlasting events wonderful beholder and reporter
Merlinus, tam eleganter quam veraciter summo præconio
Merlin as elegantly as truthfully with-the-highest proclamation
commendat, ac in ejus laude voce prophetica erumpens
commends and in his praise with-voice prophetic bursting-out
ex abrupto, ut vatum mos inolevit: «Succedet, inquit,
of a-sudden as of-seers the-custom has-grown there-shall-succeed he-says

leo justitiæ, ad cujus rugitum gallicanæ turres et insulani
the-lion of-justice at whose roar the-Gallic towers and the-island
dracones tremebunt. In diebus ejus, aurum ex lilio et
dragons shall-tremble in the-days his gold from the-lily and
urtica extorquebitur, et argentum ex ungulis mugientium
the-nettle shall-be-wrung and silver from the-hoofs of-the-lowing-ones
manabit. Calamistrati varia vellera vestibunt, quia exterior
shall-flow the-curled varied fleeces shall-wear because the-outer
habitus interiora signabit; pedes latrantium truncabuntur,
dress the-inner-things shall-signify the-feet of-the-barking-ones shall-be-cut-off
pacem habebunt feræ, humanitas supplicium dolebit,
peace shall-have the-wild-beasts humanity punishment shall-grieve-at
findetur forma commercii, dimidium rotundum erit, peribit
shall-be-split the-form of-commerce the-half round shall-be shall-perish
milvorum rapacitas, et dentes luporum hebetabuntur. Catuli
of-the-kites the-greed and the-teeth of-wolves shall-be-blunted the-whelps
leonis in æquoreos pisces transformabuntur, et aquila ejus
of-the-lion into of-the-sea fishes shall-be-transformed and the-eagle his
super montes Aravium nidificabit.» Quæ rota tanti et
upon the-mountains Aravian shall-nest which wheel of-so-great and
tam decrepiti vaticinii usque adeo et personæ ejus strenuitati
so aged prophecy so far both of-the-person his to-the-vigor
et regni administrationi adaptatur, ut nec unum iota,
and of-the-kingdom to-the-administration is-fitted that not one iota
nec unum verbum ab ejus convenientia dissentire valeat: cum
nor one word from its fitness to-disagree can since
ex hoc etiam quod in fine de catulis ejus dicitur, manifeste
from this also that at the-end of the-whelps his is-said manifestly
appareat filios ejus et filiam naufragatos, et a maritimis
it-appears the-sons his and daughter shipwrecked and by sea
piscibus devoratos, et convertibiliter physice transformatos,
fishes devoured and convertibly physically transformed

illius vaticinium pro certo verificasse. Præfatus itaque
of-that-one the-prophecy for certain to-have-verified the-aforesaid and-so
rex Henricus, Guillelmo fratri feliciter succedens, cum
king Henry William his-brother happily succeeding when
consilio peritorum et proborum virorum regno Angliæ,
with-the-counsel of-skilled and upright men the-kingdom of-England
lege antiquorum regum, gratanter disposuisset, ipsasque
by-the-law of-the-ancient kings gladly he-had-ordered and-the-very
regni antiquas consuetudines ad captandam eorum
of-the-kingdom ancient customs for winning their
benivolentiam jurejurando firmasset, applicuit ad portum
goodwill by-oath he-had-confirmed he-put-in at the-port
ducatus Normannici; fretusque domini regis Francorum
of-the-duchy Norman and-relying of-the-lord king of-the-Franks
auxilio, terram componit, leges recolit, pacem coactis
on-the-aid the-land he-settles the-laws restores peace on-the-compelled
imponit, nihil minus quam eruitionem oculorum et
imposes nothing less than the-putting-out of-eyes and
celsitudinem furcarum, si rapiant, promittens. His igitur
the-height of-gallows if they-plunder promising by-these therefore
et hujusmodi promissionibus, et crebris promissionum
and such promises and frequent of-promises
redditionibus percussis, quia pollicitis dives quilibet esse
fulfillments struck because in-promises rich anyone to-be
potest, silet terra in conspectu ejus; pacem servant inviti,
can is-silent the-land in the-sight his peace keep unwilling
feroci Danorum propagatione pacis expertes Normanni,
from-the-fierce of-the-Danes stock of-peace without the-Normans
et in hoc ipso vatis agrestis oracula verificantes. Perit enim
and in this very of-the-seer rustic the-oracles verifying perishes for
milvorum rapacitas, et dentes luporum hebetantur, cum nec
of-the-kites the-greed and the-teeth of-wolves are-blunted since neither

nobiles nec ignobiles deprædari aut rapere quacumque audacia
nobles nor commoners to-pillage or to-plunder with-any daring
præsumunt. Quod autem dicit, «ad rugitum leonis justitiæ
presume what moreover he-says at the-roar of-the-lion of-justice
gallicanæ turres et insulani dracones tremebunt,» huc accedit
the-Gallic towers and the-island dragons shall-tremble to-this it-comes
quod fere omnes turres et quæcumque fortissima castra
that almost all the-towers and whatever strongest castles
Normanniæ, quæ pars est Galliæ, aut eversum iri fecit,
of-Normandy which part is of-Gaul either overturned to-be he-caused
aut suos intrudens et de proprio ærario procurans,
or his-own-men thrusting-in and from his-own treasury providing
aut si dirutæ essent, propriæ voluntati subjugavit. Insulani
or if destroyed they-had-been to-his-own will he-subjected the-island
dracones tremuerunt, cum quicumque Angliæ proceres, nec
dragons trembled since whatever of-England nobles not
etiam mutire tota ejus administratione præsumpserunt.
even to-mutter in-the-whole his administration presumed
In diebus ejus, aurum ex lilio, quod est ex religiosis boni
in the-days his gold from the-lily which is from the-religious of-good
odoris, et ex urtica, quod est ex sæcularibus pungentibus,
odor and from the-nettle which is from the-secular stinging
ab eo extorquebatur: hoc intendens ut, sicut omnibus
by him was-wrung this intending that as to-all
proficiebat, ab omnibus ei serviretur. Tutius est enim
he-was-of-use by all him it-should-be-served safer it-is for
unum, ut omnes defendat, ab omnibus habere, quam non
one that all he-may-defend from all to-have than not
habendo per unum omnes deperire. Argentum ex ungulis
by-having through one all to-perish silver from the-hoofs
mugientium manabat, cum ruris securitas horreorum
of-the-lowing-ones flowed when of-the-countryside the-security of-barns

plenitudinem, horreorum plenitudo argenti copiam plenis
the-fullness of-barns the-fullness of-silver plenty to-full
scriniis ministrabat. Qua occasione et castrum Gisortium,
coffers supplied on-which occasion also the-castle Gisors
tam blanditiis quam minis, a Pagano de Gisortio eum
as-much by-blandishments as by-threats from Payen of Gisors him
extorquere contigit; castrum munitissimum, situ loci
to-wring it-happened a-castle most-fortified by-the-site of-the-place
compendiosum, quod ad utrumque terminum Francorum
advantageous which at each boundary of-the-Franks
et Normannorum, fluvio gratæ piscium fœcunditatis,
and of-the-Normans with-the-river of-pleasing of-fish fertility
qui dicitur Etta, interfluente, antiquo fune geometricali
which is-called Epte flowing-between by-the-ancient line geometrical
Francorum et Danorum concorditer metito, collimitat, ad
of-the-Franks and Danes by-agreement measured borders for
irruendum in Franciam gratum Normannis præbens accessum,
rushing into France a-pleasing to-the-Normans offering access
Francis prohibens. Quod si facultas habendi suppeteret, nec
to-the-Franks forbidding which if the-means of-having were-at-hand not
minus rex Francorum rege Anglorum, ipsa loci
less the-king of-the-Franks than-the-king of-the-English for-the-very of-the-place
et immunitatis opportunitate, jure regni appetere
and of-security advantage by-right of-the-kingdom to-seek
debuisset. Hujus itaque repetitio castri inter utrumque
ought-to-have of-this and-so the-reclaiming castle between each
regem subitum odii fomitem ministravit. Unde rex
king sudden of-hatred kindling supplied whence the-king
Francorum, cum ad eum pro redditione aut pro castri
of-the-Franks when to him for the-surrender or for of-the-castle

subversione misisset, nec profecisset, notam rupti fœderis
the-overturning had-sent nor had-succeeded the-mark of-the-broken treaty
opponens, diem agendi statuit, locum assignat.
setting-against a-day for-pleading he-appoints a-place assigns
Accumulantur interim, ut in talibus fieri solet, æmulorum
are-heaped-up meanwhile as in such-things to-happen is-wont of-rivals
maledictis excitata odia regum, nec dum licet
by-the-curses roused the-hatreds of-the-kings nor while it-is-allowed
pacantur: quomodo ad colloquium superbe et exose sibi
are-they-appeased how to the-parley proudly and hatefully each-other
occurrant, vires militares exaggerant. Collectis igitur magna
they-may-meet forces military they-heap-up gathered therefore great
ex parte Francorum regni proceribus, videlicet Roberto
in part of-the-Franks of-the-kingdom the-nobles namely Robert
Flandrensi comite, cum quatuor ferme millibus militum, comite
of-Flanders count with four nearly thousand of-knights count
Theobaldo palatino, comite Nivernense, duce Burgundionum,
Theobald palatine the-count of-Nevers the-duke of-the-Burgundians
cum aliis quamplurimis, multis etiam archiepiscopis et
with others very-many many also archbishops and
episcopis, per terram Melluntensis comitis, quia adhærebat
bishops through the-land of-Meulan of-the-count because he-adhered
regi Angliæ, transeundo, depopulans et incendiis exponens,
to-the-king of-England in-passing laying-waste and to-burnings exposing
talibus beneficiis futuro adulabatur colloquio. At ubi, utrobique
with-such kindnesses the-coming he-flattered parley but when on-both-sides
maximo collecto exercitu, ventum est ad locum vulgo
a-very-great gathered army come it-was to the-place commonly
nominatum Plancas Ninfeoli, ad castellum loco infortunatum,
named Les-Planches of-Neaufles by the-castle a-place ill-omened
cui perhibet accolarum antiquitas aut vix aut nunquam
of-which reports of-the-neighbors the-antiquity either scarcely or never

convenientes pacificari, super ripam intercurrentis et
those-meeting to-be-reconciled upon the-bank of-the-running-between and
communem transitum prohibentis amnis consedit exercitus.
common passage forbidding river settled the-army
Consulte vero nobiliores et sapientiores electi Franci per
advisedly but the-nobler and wiser chosen Franks over
pontem tremulum, et singulis et pluribus subitum minantem
the-bridge shaky and to-single-men and to-several sudden threatening
præcipitium ipsa sui vetustate, transeuntes, Anglico regi
collapse by-the-very its-own age crossing to-the-English king
diriguntur. Quorum qui referendam susceperat actionis
are-directed of-whom (he)-who to-be-reported had-undertaken of-the-action
causam, peritus orator, insalutato rege, ore comitum
the-case a-skilled orator ungreeted the-king with-the-mouth of-the-counts
sic peroravit: «Cum, generosa domini regis Francorum
thus pleaded since by-the-generous of-the-lord king of-the-Franks
liberalitate, ducatum Normanniæ tanquam proprium feodum
liberality the-duchy of-Normandy as its-own fief
ab ejusdem munifica dextra vestra recepisset industria,
from of-the-same bountiful right-hand your had-received diligence
inter alia et præter alia hoc specialiter jurejurando
among other-things and beyond other-things this especially by-oath
firmatum constat de Gisortio et Braio, ut quocumque
confirmed it-is-agreed concerning Gisors and Bray that by-whatever
contractu uter vestrum obtinere posset, neuter haberet, cum
contract whichever of-you to-obtain could neither should-have but
infra quadraginta receptionis dies possessor, pacti obnoxius,
within forty of-receipt days the-possessor of-the-pact liable
ipsa castella funditus subverteret. Quod quia non fecistis,
the-very castles utterly should-overturn which because not you-did
præcipit rex et ut adhuc faciatis, et non factum lege
commands the-king both that still you-do-it and not done by-law

competenti emendetis. Dedecet enim regem transgredi legem,
fitting you-amend it-misbecomes for a-king to-transgress the-law
cum rex et lex eandem imperandi excipiant majestatem.
since king and law the-same of-commanding receive majesty
Quod si quid horum vestrates aut dedixerint aut dicere
that if anything of-these your-people either should-deny or to-say
dissimulando noluerint, pleno duorum aut trium testimonio
by-dissembling should-refuse by-full of-two or three the-testimony
baronum, lege duelli, parati sumus approbare.» Necdum
of-barons by-law of-duel ready we-are to-prove not-yet
his expletis ad regem Franci redierant, cum Normanni
these completed to the-king the-Franks had-returned when the-Normans
eos consequentes regi assistunt, quicquid causam lædere
them following the-king stand-by whatever the-case to-harm
poterat inverecunde diffitentes, judiciario ordine querelam
could shamelessly denying in-judicial order the-complaint
agitare postulantes; cum nihil aliud præcipue attenderent,
to-pursue demanding since nothing else chiefly they-aimed-at
quam quod infecto paratæ actionis negotio, quacumque
than that undone of-the-prepared action the-business by-whatever
dilatione, tantorum regni optimatum discretioni
delay of-so-great of-the-kingdom of-the-magnates to-the-discernment
rei veritas non pateret. Remittuntur cum eis primis
of-the-matter the-truth not be-open are-sent-back with them than-the-first
potiores, qui etiam per comitem Flandrensem Robertum
weightier-men who also through the-count of-Flanders Robert
Hierosolymitanum, palæstritam egregium, rem verificare
the-Jerusalemite a-wrestler excellent the-matter to-prove
audacter offerant, et lege duelli verborum exaggerationem
boldly offer and by-law of-duel of-the-words the-heaping
refutando, cui justitia cedere debeat confligendo, aperiant.
refuting to-whom justice to-yield ought by-fighting may-disclose

Quod cum nec approbassent nec convenienter reprobassent,
which when neither they-had-approved nor fittingly had-rejected
rex Ludovicus, ut erat magnanimus et animo et corpore
king Louis as he-was great-souled both in-mind and in-body
procerus, citissime dirigit qui regi hoc disjungant,
lofty most-quickly sends (men)-who to-the-king this should-put-as-a-choice
aut castrum subvertere, aut de fractæ fidei perfidia
either the-castle to-overturn or concerning of-broken faith the-perfidy
contra se personaliter defendere: «Age, inquiens, ejus debet
against himself in-person to-defend come-on saying his ought
congressionis esse pœna, cujus veri et victoriæ debet esse
of-the-encounter to-be the-pain whose of-truth and of-victory ought to-be
et gloria.» Arbitratus etiam de loco quicquid decentius
also the-glory having-decided also about the-place whatever more-fittingly
potuit: «Succedat, inquit, eorum exercitus a ripa fluminis,
he-could let-withdraw he-says their army from the-bank of-the-river
dum transvadari possimus, ut tutior ei locus majorem
while to-ford we-may-be-able that a-safer to-him place greater
offerat securitatem; vel, si magis placet, nobiliores totius
may-offer security or if more it-pleases the-nobler of-the-whole
exercitus habeat singulariter concertandi obsides, dummodo
army let-him-have singly of-contending as-hostages provided-that
ad nos, remoto agmine nostro, transire concedat. Neque enim
to us removed column our to-cross he-allow nor for
aliter transvadari poterit.» Quidam vero, ridiculosa jactantia,
otherwise to-ford he-shall-be-able some but with-ridiculous boasting
super præfatum tremulum pontem, cum statim corrueret,
upon the-aforesaid shaky bridge though at-once it-would-collapse
reges dimicare acclamabant. Quod rex Ludovicus tam
the-kings to-fight shouted which king Louis as-much
levitate quam audacia appetebat. Rex vero Anglorum
from-lightness as from-daring sought the-king but of-the-English

inquit: «Non est mihi tibia tanti, ut pro his et
said not is to-me the-shin of-such-worth that for these and
hujusmodi famosum et perutile mihi castrum supervacanee
such-things a-famous and very-useful to-me castle needlessly
amittam.» Et hæc et alia invectiva refutans: «Cum videro,
I-should-lose and these and other invectives refuting when I-see
inquit, dominum regem ubi me defendere debeam, non
he-said the-lord king where myself to-defend I-ought not
vitabo;» cum quod offerebat loci impotentia abnegaret.
I-shall-shun since what he-offered of-the-place the-impossibility refused
Quo ridiculoso responso moti Franci, tanquam fortuna
by-which ridiculous answer moved the-Franks as-if fortune
locorum bella gerat, currunt ad arma: similiter et Normanni.
of-places wars wages run to arms likewise also the-Normans
Et dum utrique ad flumen accelerant, maximæ stragis et
and while both to the-river hasten of-very-great slaughter and
calamitatis detrimentum, sola accessus removit impossibilitas.
of-calamity the-loss alone of-access removed the-impossibility
Quia vero sermone diem detinuerant, nocte instante, illi
because but with-talk the-day they-had-held night pressing they
Gisortium, nostri Calvum Montem remearunt. At ubi prima
to-Gisors ours to-Chau- -mont went-back but when the-first
polo stellas aurora fugavit, Franci hesternæ memores
from-the-sky stars dawn put-to-flight the-Franks of-yesterday's mindful
injuriæ, militiæ insuper fervore matutini, velocissimis
injury of-knighthood moreover with-the-ardor of-morning on-swiftest
equis viam præripiendo, prope Gisortium congredi irruentes,
horses the-way by-seizing-first near Gisors to-engage rushing
miro fastu, mira concertant audacia; et quantum
with-wonderful pride with-wonderful contend daring and how-much
præstent multo marte exercitati longa pace solutis,
excel by-much war trained over-(those)-by-long peace slackened

cum Normannos per portam fatigatos intrudunt, edocere
while the-Normans through the-gate wearied they-thrust to-show
laborant. His et hujusmodi primordiis initiata guerra, per
they-labor by-these and such beginnings begun the-war for
biennium pene continuata, gravius regem Angliæ lædebat,
two-years almost continued more-heavily the-king of-England hurt
cum universam pene Normanniæ marchiam, sicut se ducatus
since the-whole almost of-Normandy march as itself the-duchy
extendit, multa militia et sumptuosis stipendiis ad terræ
extends with-much knighthood and costly pay for of-the-land
defensionem circumcingebat. Rex vero Francorum antiquis
the-defense he-girded-round the-king but of-the-Franks with-ancient
et naturalibus castris et municipiis, gratuita Flandrensium,
and natural castles and strongholds by-the-free of-the-Flemings
Pontivorum, Vilcassinorum, et aliorum collimitantium
of-the-men-of-Ponthieu of-the-men-of-the-Vexin and of-others bordering
strenua impugnatione, terram incendiis, depopulatione agitare
vigorous assault the-land with-burnings with-devastation to-harry
non desinebat. Cum autem Guillelmus regis Anglici filius
not ceased when moreover William of-the-king English the-son
regi Ludovico hominium suum fecisset, gratia peculiari
to-the-king Louis homage his had-done by-a-favor special
et peculii præfato castro feodum ejus augmentavit,
and of-private-property with-the-aforesaid castle the-fief his he-increased
et hac eum occasione in pristinam gratiam reduxit. Quod
and by-this him occasion into former favor brought-back which
antequam fieret, mirabilis ejusdem contentionis occasione,
before it-happened wonderful of-the-same contention on-the-occasion
et execrabilis hominum perditio mirabili punita est ultione.
also the-execrable of-men destruction by-wonderful punished was vengeance

De proditione facta in rupe Guidonis a Guillelmo, sororio ejus, et de morte Guidonis, et cita ultione in eundem Guillelmum

16 · THE MURDER AT LA ROCHE-GUYON

William, a Norman bound to Guy of La Roche-Guyon by marriage, murders Guy at the church door, hacks down his wife, and dashes his children against the rock. The men of the Vexin besiege the castle; William yields it for safe conduct, but once inside they kill him and his accomplices and send the bodies down the Seine on hurdles.

Supersistitur promontorio ardui littoris magni fluminis
there-stands-upon a-promontory of-the-steep bank of-the-great river
Sequanæ horridum et ignobile castrum, quod dicitur Rupes
Seine a-rough and ignoble castle which is-called La-Roche
Guidonis, in superficie suî invisibile, rupe sublimi
Guyon on the-surface its-own invisible in-the-rock lofty
incaveatum, cui manus æmula artificis, in devexo montis
hollowed-out for-which the-hand emulous of-a-craftsman in the-slope of-the-hill
raro et misero ostio, maximæ domus amplitudinem
with-a-rare and wretched entrance of-a-very-great house the-breadth
rupe cæsa extendit; antrum, ut putatur, fatidicum, in quo
the-rock being-cut extended a-cave as is-thought prophetic in which
Apollinis oracula sumantur, aut de quo dicit Lucanus:
of-Apollo the-oracles may-be-taken or of which says Lucan

Nam, quamvis Thessala vates
for although the-Thessalian seer
Vim faciat fatis, dubium est quid traxerit illuc,
force may-do to-the-fates doubtful it-is what drew-her thither
Aspiciat Stygias, an quod descenderit umbras.
whether-she-sees the-Stygian or that she-has-descended-to shades

Hinc forsitan itur ad manes. Cujus fautiosi, Diis
hence perhaps one-goes to the-shades of-which factious to-the-Gods
et hominibus exosi oppidi possessor Guido, bonæ indolis
and to-men hateful town the-possessor Guy of-good nature
adolescens, antecessorum nequitiæ, rupta propagine, alienus,
a-youth of-his-forebears from-the-wickedness broken the-line a-stranger
cum honeste et absque miseræ rapacitatis ingluvie vitam degere
when honorably and without of-wretched greed the-gluttony his-life to-spend
instituisset, infausti loci interceptus calamitate, soceri
he-had-resolved of-the-ill-starred place caught by-the-calamity of-father-in-law
sui nequitioris nequissimi proditione detruncatus, et locum
his more-wicked than-the-most-wicked by-the-treachery cut-down both the-place
et personam morte inopinata amisit. Guillelmus siquidem
and his-person by-death unexpected lost William indeed
gener ejus, genere Normannus, proditor incomparabilis,
the-son-in-law his by-race a-Norman a-traitor incomparable
ut putabatur, familiaris et amicissimus ejus, cum concepisset
as was-thought intimate and most-friendly his when he-had-conceived
dolorem et peperisset iniquitatem, crepusculo cujusdam
sorrow and had-brought-forth iniquity at-the-twilight of-a-certain
dominici diei, nactus proditionis opportunitatem, cum his qui
of-the-Lord's day having-got of-treachery the-opportunity with those who
devotiores primi ad ecclesiam, domui Guidonis partita rupe
more-devout first to the-church to-the-house of-Guy by-the-divided rock

contiguam, conveniebant, et ipse sed dissimiliter, loricatus
adjoining were-assembling also he-himself but unlike mailed
sed cappatus, cum proditorum manipulo convenit: et dum
but cloaked with of-traitors a-handful assembled and while
alii orationi, ipse aliquando orare fingens, quo intraret
others to-prayer he-himself for-a-while to-pray feigning by-what he-might-enter
ad Guidonem ingressu speculatus, eo quo Guido ostio
to Guy entrance having-spied by-that by-which Guy door
intrare ecclesiam maturabat, irrupit; exertoque gladio, cum
to-enter the-church was-hastening burst-in and-drawn the-sword with
nequissimis, sociis, propria iniquitate debacchatus furit,
most-wicked companions with-his-own iniquity raging rages
imprudentem, et, si non sentiret gladium, arridentem percutit,
the-unwary-man even if not he-felt the-sword smiling strikes
mactat et perdit. Quod nobilis ipsius conjunx videns, stupida
slays and destroys which the-noble his wife seeing stunned
genas et capillos muliebri ultione dilacerans, ad maritum
her-cheeks and hair with-womanly vengeance tearing to her-husband
currit, mortem non curans, seipsa super eum corruens
runs death not caring herself upon him falling
operit: «Me, inquiens, me miseram, et sic mori meritam
covers me saying me wretched and thus to-die deserving
potius, vilissimi carnifices, detruncate.» Ictusque et vulnera
rather most-vile butchers cut-down and-the-blows and wounds
gladiatorum, marito superposita, excipiens: «Quid in
of-the-swordsmen on-her-husband laid-over receiving what against
istos, carissime, deliquisti, sponse? Nonne et gener et
these dearest have-you-offended husband not both son-in-law and
socer amici indissolubiles eratis? Quænam est insania? Pleni
father-in-law friends indissoluble were-you what is the-madness full
estis mania.» Quam cum per capillos retorquentes digladiatam,
you-are of-mania whom when by the-hair twisting hacked

punctam, et pene toto corpore cæsam avulsissent,
stabbed and almost in-the-whole body cut they-had-torn-away
virum morte turpissima peremerunt, infantes quos invenerunt,
the-man by-death most-foul they-destroyed the-infants whom they-found
Herodiana nequitia, rupe allisos extinxerunt. Cumque
with-Herodian wickedness against-the-rock dashed they-killed and-when
hac et illac frendentes debaccharentur, supina
this-way and that-way gnashing they-raged lying-on-her-back
mulier, levans miserum caput, truncum maritum recognoscit;
the-woman lifting wretched head the-mangled husband recognizes
amore rapta, qua potuit impotentia, serpens more
by-love carried-away with-what she-could weakness crawling in-the-manner
serpentis, se totam sanguineam contrectans, ad cadaver
of-a-serpent herself all bloody dragging to the-corpse
exanime devenit, et quæcumque poterat, ac si vivo,
lifeless she-came and whatever she-could as if to-a-living-man
oscula gratissima porrigebat; et lugubri erumpens cantilena,
kisses most-welcome she-offered and in-a-mournful breaking-out chant
qua poterat lugubres persolvens inferias, clamat:
with-what she-could mournful paying offerings-to-the-dead cries
«Quid reliqui mihi facis, carissime sponse? Nunquid
what of-remainder to-me do-you-make dearest husband did
hoc meruit juxta me tua prædicabilis continentia? Nunquid
this deserve beside me your praiseworthy continence did
hoc comparavit patris, avi et atavi deposita
this purchase of-father of-grandfather and of-great-grandfather the-laid-aside
nequitia? Nunquid vicinorum et pauperum, domi penuriam
wickedness did of-the-neighbors and of-the-poor at-home the-want
reponens, neglecta rapacitas?»
relieving the-neglected greed

Hæc ait, et lasso jacuit deserta furore.
these-things she-said and by-her-weary lay forsaken frenzy

Nec erat qui totum mortuum et semivivam, uno
nor was-there (one)-who the-wholly dead-man and the-half-living-woman in-one
sanguine involutos, sequestraret. Tandem vero, cum sceleratus
blood wrapped might-separate at-length but when the-wicked
Guillelmus eos sicut porcos exposuisset, saturatus humano
William them like pigs had-cast-out sated with-human
sanguine, more belluino, subsedit; rupis fortitudinem plus
blood in-manner bestial he-settled-down of-the-rock the-strength more
solito admiratus approbat; quomodo potenter circumquaque
than-usual admiring he-approves how mightily round-about
rapiat, quomodo Francis et Normannis pro velle
he-may-plunder how into-the-Franks and Normans at will
timorem incutiat, sero tamen deliberat. Deinde caput insanum
fear he-may-strike late yet he-deliberates then his-head insane
per fenestram exponens, vocat nativos terræ accolas, expers
through the-window putting-out calls the-native of-the-land inhabitants devoid
boni bona promittit si ei adhæreant; quorum nec unus
of-good good-things promises if to-him they-adhere of-whom not one
intravit. Mane vero, tanti et tam scelerati facti fama
entered in-the-morning but of-so-great and so wicked deed the-report
volans, non solum viciniam, sed et remotos sollicitat. Quo
flying not only the-neighborhood but also the-distant stirs at-which
Vilcassinenses, viri strenui et armis fortissimi, gravissime exciti,
the-men-of-the-Vexin men vigorous and in-arms most-strong most-grievously roused
circumquaque et militum et peditum singuli pro toto
round-about both of-knights and of-foot-soldiers each for the-whole
posse vires colligentes, quoniam timebant potentissimum
their-power forces gathering since they-feared the-most-powerful

regem Anglorum Henricum præsidia proditoribus ferre, ad
king of-the-English Henry aid to-the-traitors to-bring to
rupem festinant; declivo rupis multos militum et peditum,
the-rock hasten on-the-slope of-the-rock many of-knights and of-foot-soldiers
ne quis intret aut exeat, opponunt; viam ex parte
lest anyone enter or go-out they-set-against the-way on-the side
Normannorum locando exercitum, ne præsidia ferant, obtrudunt.
of-the-Normans by-placing an-army lest aid they-bring they-block
Interim ad regem mittunt Ludovicum, fauctionem significant,
meanwhile to the-king they-send Louis the-faction they-report
et quid super his præcipiat consulunt. Qui regiæ
and what about these he-may-command they-ask who of-royal
majestatis imperio morte exquisita et turpissima præcipit
majesty by-the-command by-death exquisite and most-foul orders
puniri; mandat, si oporteat, suffragari. Cumque per aliquot
to-be-punished he-bids if it-be-needful to-assist and-when for some
dies exercitus consedisset, nefandus ille, augmentato de die
days the-army had-sat-down unspeakable that-man increased from day
in diem exercitu, timere cœpit. Cumque quid suadente
to day the-army to-fear began and-when what at-the-persuasion-of
diabolo fecisset, eo docente, animadverteret, accitis quibusdam
the-devil he-had-done him teaching he-noticed summoned certain
Vilcassini nobilioribus, quomodo pace in rupe remaneat,
of-the-Vexin nobler-men how in-peace in the-rock he-may-remain
eis confœderetur, regi Francorum optime serviat,
with-them he-may-be-allied to-the-king of-the-Franks best may-serve
promissionibus multis elaborat. Qui rejicientes, et proditionis
with-promises many he-labors who rejecting and of-the-treachery
ultionem improperantes, in hoc jam ipsum remissum
the-vengeance reproaching to this now him slackened
impulerunt, ut si terram quandam sibi adjurari facerent,
drove that if a-land certain to-himself to-be-sworn they-would-cause

et securitatem eundi darent, occupatam dimitteret eis
and security of-going give the-seized he-would-give-up to-them
munitionem. Quo jurejurando firmato, Francorum plures
fortress which by-oath confirmed of-the-Franks several
recepti sunt. Procrastinato autem eorum exitu, occasione
received were being-put-off moreover their departure on-the-occasion
præfata, cum in mane præter juratos aliqui intrarent, et
aforesaid when in the-morning beyond the-sworn some entered and
alii alios sequerentur, invaluit clamor exteriorum, et ut
others others followed grew-strong the-outcry of-those-outside and that
proditores exponant horribiliter vociferantur: aut faciant, aut
the-traitors they-cast-out horribly they-shout either let-them-do-it or
similem proditorum pœnam, tanquam consentientes, sortiantur.
the-like of-the-traitors punishment as consenting let-them-receive
Qua audacia et timore renitentibus juratoribus, qui
by-which daring and fear resisting the-swearers those-who
non juraverant in eos prævalendo, insilientes gladiis eos
not had-sworn upon them prevailing leaping with-swords them
aggrediuntur, impios pie trucidant, membris emutilant, alios
attack the-impious piously they-slaughter of-limbs they-maim others
dulcissime eviscerant, et quicquid crudelius mitius reputantes
most-sweetly they-disembowel and whatever more-cruel milder reckoning
in eos exaggerant. Nec discredendum est divinam manum tam
upon them heap-up nor to-be-disbelieved is the-divine hand so
celerem maturasse ultionem, cum et per fenestras vivi aut
swift to-have-hastened vengeance when both through the-windows living or
mortui projiciuntur, et innumeris sagittis hericiorum more
dead they-are-thrown and with-countless arrows of-hedgehogs in-the-manner
hispidi, cuspidibus lancearum in aere vacantes, ac si eos terra
bristling on-the-points of-lances in the-air hanging as if them the-earth
rejiciat, vibrantur. Hanc autem inusitato facto inusitatam
rejected they-are-brandished this moreover for-the-unwonted deed unwonted

reperiunt ultionem, quod quia vecors vivus fuerat, mortuus
they-find vengeance that because heartless living he-had-been dead
est excordatus. Cor siquidem extis ereptum, fraude
he-was un-hearted the-heart indeed from-the-entrails torn-out with-fraud
et iniquitate turgidum palo imponunt, ad repræsentandam
and iniquity swollen on-a-stake they-place for showing
iniquitatis vindictam, multis diebus certo in loco infigunt.
of-the-iniquity the-punishment for-many days a-certain in place they-fix
Cadavera vero tam illius quam quorumdam sociorum,
the-corpses but as-much of-him as of-some companions
compositis cleiis, rastris et funibus superligata, per fluvium
on-built hurdles with-rakes and ropes bound-on down the-river
Sequanæ demittunt, ut si forte usque Rotomagum fluctuare
Seine they-send that if perhaps as-far-as Rouen to-float
non impediantur, proditionis ultionem ostentent, et qui
not they-be-hindered of-the-treachery the-vengeance they-may-display and who
Franciam momentaneo fœtore fœdaverant, mortui Normanniam
France with-momentary stench had-befouled dead Normandy
deinceps, tanquam natale solum, fœdare non desistant.
thereafter as native soil to-befoul not may-cease

De eo quod fratri Philippo repugnanti castrum Meduntense et Montem Leherii abstulit

17 · MANTES AND MONTLHÉRY TAKEN FROM PHILIP

Louis's half-brother Philip, the countess of Anjou's son, holds Mantes and Montlhéry and refuses the king's court. Louis takes Mantes by siege, and when Philip's kin give Montlhéry to Hugh of Crécy, Louis restores it to Milo of Bray and the townsmen drive Hugh out.

Raritas fidei facit ut sæpius mala pro bonis quam bona
the-rarity of-faith makes that more-often evils for goods than goods
reddantur pro malis. Alterum divinum; alterum nec divinum
are-rendered for evils the-one divine the-other neither divine
nec humanum: fit tamen. Qua nequitiæ nota, cum
nor human happens nevertheless with-which of-wickedness the-brand since
regis Ludovici Philippus frater de superducta Andegavense,
of-the-king Louis Philip the-brother of the-brought-in of-Anjou
tam patris persuasione, cui nunquam restitit, quam
as-much of-his-father by-the-persuasion whom never he-resisted as
blandis nobilissimæ et bene morigeratæ novercæ illecebris,
by-the-coaxing of-the-most-noble and well mannered stepmother allurements
honorem Montis Leherii et Meduntensis castri in ipsis
the-honor of-Mont- -lhéry and of-Mantes castle in the-very
regni visceribus ab eodem obtinuisset, Philippus, tantis
of-the-kingdom bowels from the-same had-obtained Philip for-so-great
ingratus beneficiis, recalcitrare nobilissimi generis fiducia
ungrateful benefits to-kick-back of-most-noble lineage in-confidence
præsumpsit. Erat enim Amalricus de Monte Forti egregius
presumed was for Amaury of Mont- -fort an-excellent
miles, baro potentissimus, avunculus ejus; Fulco comes
knight a-baron most-powerful the-uncle his Fulk count

Andegavensis, postea rex Hierosolymitanus, frater ejus.
of-Anjou afterward king of-Jerusalem the-brother his
Mater etiam his omnibus potentior, viragoque faceta
the-mother also than-these all more-powerful and-a-virago clever
et eruditissima illius admirandi muliebris artificii, quo
and most-learned in-that admirable womanly artifice by-which
consueverunt audaces suis etiam lacessitos injuriis maritos
are-accustomed bold-women by-their-own even provoked injuries husbands
suppeditare, Andegavensem priorem maritum, licet thoro
to-tread-under the-Angevin former husband though from-the-bed
omnino repudiatum, ita mollificaverat, ut eam tanquam
wholly repudiated so she-had-softened that her as
dominam veneraretur, et scabello pedum ejus sæpius
mistress he-revered and on-the-footstool of-the-feet her more-often
residens, ac si præstigio fieret, voluntati ejus omnino
sitting as if by-a-spell it-were-done to-the-will her wholly
obsequeretur. Hoc etiam unum et matrem et filios et
he-complied this also one-thing both the-mother and the-sons and
totam efferebat progeniem, ut si de regis ruina quacumque
the-whole lifted-up offspring that if of of-the-king the-ruin by-whatever
occasione contingeret, alter fratrum succederet, et sic
occasion it-happened the-other of-the-brothers would-succeed and so
tota consanguinitatis linea ad solium regni, honoris et
the-whole of-kinship line to the-throne of-the-kingdom of-the-honor and
dominii participatione, cervicem gratantissime erigeret. Cum
of-the-lordship by-sharing its-neck most-gladly would-raise when
igitur præfatus Philippus, crebro submonitus, auditionem
therefore the-aforesaid Philip often summoned the-hearing
et judicium curiæ superbe refutasset, deprædationibus
and the-judgment of-the-court proudly had-refused by-the-plunderings
pauperum, contritione ecclesiarum, totius etiam pagi
of-the-poor by-the-crushing of-the-churches of-the-whole also district

dissolutione rex lacessitus, illuc licet invitus properavit: et
by-the-breaking-up the-king provoked thither though unwilling hastened and
cum sæpius tam frater quam sui fortissima militum
though more-often as-much the-brother as his-men with-a-very-strong of-knights
manu, multa jactantia, repulsam promisissent, seipsos etiam
band with-much boasting repulse had-promised themselves even
a castro timidi absentaverunt. Quo rex expedite irruens,
from the-castle timid absented to-which the-king readily rushing
loricatus per medium castri ad turrim festinans, obsidione
mailed through the-middle of-the-castle to the-tower hastening with-siege
cinxit; dumque machinas impugnatorias, mangunnella, et
girded and-while engines of-assault mangonels and
fundibularia inchoat instrumenta, non statim, sed post multos
slinging he-begins instruments not at-once but after many
dies, cum de vita desperarent, eos ad deditionem coegit.
days when of life they-despaired them to surrender he-compelled
Interim vero mater et avunculus Amalricus de Monte
meanwhile but the-mother and the-uncle Amaury of Mont-
Forti, alterius honoris, videlicet Montis Leherii, formidantes
-fort of-the-other honor namely of-Mont- -lhéry dreading
amissionem, eundem honorem Hugoni Creciacensi, filiam
the-loss the-same honor to-Hugh of-Crécy the-daughter
Amalrici matrimonio copulantes, contulerunt. Hoc regi
of-Amaury in-marriage joining conferred this to-the-king
unum peremptorium impedimentum opponere sperantes, ut
one deadly hindrance to-set-against hoping that
[ei], tam ipsius honoris castris quam Guidonis de
to-him as-much of-that-very honor by-the-castles as of-Guy of
Rupe Forti fratris sui, ipsius quoque Amalrici usque in
Roche- -fort brother his of-the-very also Amaury right into
Normanniam potestate sine interpolatione extensa, via
Normandy by-the-power without interruption extended the-way

impediretur; et præter alias quas possent omni die inferre
would-be-blocked and besides other which they-could every day to-inflict
usque Parisium injurias, etiam Drocas ire ei nullo
right-up-to Paris injuries even to-Dreux to-go to-him in-no
modo permitteretur. Cum enim Hugo, inito matrimonio,
way would-it-be-permitted when for Hugh the-entered marriage
illuc velociter curreret, velocius eum rex subsecutus est;
thither swiftly ran more-swiftly him the-king followed has
cum eadem hora, eodem momento, ut comperit, Castras,
since in-the-same hour in-the-same moment as he-learned Châtres
præfati honoris oppidum, audacissime acceleravit. Unde
of-the-aforesaid honor the-town most-boldly he-hastened-to whence
meliores terræ spe liberalitatis suæ et approbatæ
the-better-men of-the-land by-the-hope of-liberality his and of-approved
mansuetudinis sibi alliciens, nota tyrannidis et
gentleness to-himself attracting from-the-known of-tyranny and
crudelitatis formidine eripit. Cumque ibi per aliquot dies
cruelty dread he-snatches and-when there for some days
alternatim Hugo ut haberet, rex ut non haberet,
by-turns Hugh that he-might-have the-king that not he-might-have
concertantes demorarentur, quoniam alia fallacia aliam trudit,
contending tarried since one deceit another thrusts-out
hac Hugo deluditur cautela, quoniam consulte assistit Milo de
by-this Hugh is-deluded caution since advisedly stands-by Milo of
Braio, filius magni Milonis: qui jure hæreditario honorem
Bray the-son of-the-great Milo who by-right hereditary the-honor
repetens, provolutus regis pedibus, flens et ejulans, multis
reclaiming prostrate of-the-king at-the-feet weeping and wailing with-many
precibus pulsat regem, pulsat consiliarios, rogat suppliciter
prayers he-knocks-at the-king knocks-at the-counselors asks suppliantly
ut regia munificentia honorem reddat, paternam hæreditatem
that by-royal munificence the-honor he-render the-paternal inheritance

restituat, tanquam servum aut inquilinum deinceps habeat,
restore as a-slave or tenant thereafter have-him
pro voluntate utatur. Cujus lugubri postulationi rex
at will make-use-of-him whose to-mournful request the-king
condescendens, accitis oppidanis, jam etiam Milonem dominum
condescending summoned the-townsmen now even Milo as-lord
offerens, ita eos ab omni illata retro molestia pacatos
offering so them from every inflicted formerly trouble pacified
exhilaravit, ac si lunam et stellas eis cœlitus demisisset.
he-gladdened as if the-moon and stars to-them from-heaven he-had-sent-down
Nec mora, cum subito Hugonem exire præcipiunt; si
nor delay when suddenly Hugh to-go-out they-order if
non citissime exeat, citissimum exitium promittunt; contra
not most-quickly he-go-out most-quick ruin they-promise against
naturalem dominum nec fidem nec sacramentum, sed
a-natural lord neither faith nor oath but
potentiam aut impotentiam valere minantur. Quo stupefactus
power or powerlessness to-avail they-threaten at-which stupefied
Hugo fugam rapit; et se evasisse, non sua amisisse
Hugh flight seizes and himself to-have-escaped not his-things to-have-lost
reputans, pro momentaneo gaudio conjugii longum repudii
reckoning for momentary joy of-marriage long of-repudiation
dedecus, nec sine magno incommodo equorum et supellectilis
disgrace nor without great inconvenience of-horses and of-furniture
amissione, absportavit; et quid cum hostibus contra dominum
by-the-loss carried-off and what with enemies against one's-lord
inire conferat, turpiter expulsus, animadvertit.
to-enter-into may-bring shamefully expelled he-perceived

Quomodo castrum Puteolense, capto Hugone, subvertit

18 · THE DESTRUCTION OF LE PUISET

Hugh of Le Puiset plunders the churches of the Beauce and Count Theobald's lands, and the clergy appeal to the king at Melun; Suger fortifies Toury for him. Louis storms Le Puiset with Theobald, a bald priest leading the way through the palisade, captures Hugh, and razes the castle. Theobald, backed by Henry of England, then turns on the king and lures away his barons, though Louis routs his men at Meaux and Pomponne.

Sicut bene fructificantis arboris gratissimus fructus, aut
as of-a-well fruit-bearing tree the-most-pleasing fruit either
stipitis transplantatione aut ramorum insertione odoriferum
of-the-stock by-transplanting or of-branches by-grafting fragrant
saporem restaurat; sic et iniquitatis et nequitiæ extirpanda
flavor restores so both of-iniquity and of-wickedness to-be-uprooted
propagatio de traduce multorum nequam in uno conglutinata,
the-propagation from the-layer of-many wicked in one glued-together
tanquam anguis angui inter anguillas stimulans, nativa
as a-snake to-a-snake among eels stinging with-native
amaritudine tanquam absynthio potat. Cujus instar Hugo
bitterness as with-wormwood gives-to-drink whose likeness Hugh
Puteolensis, vir nequam, et propria et antecessorum
of-Le-Puiset a-man wicked both by-his-own and of-his-forebears
tyrannide sola opulentus, cum successisset in honore Puteoli
tyranny alone wealthy when he-had-succeeded in the-honor of-Le-Puiset
avunculo Guidoni (pater enim ejus miræ superbiæ in
to-his-uncle Guy the-father for his of-wondrous pride in
primordio Hierosolymitanæ viæ arma assumpserat), omni
the-beginning of-the-Jerusalem way arms had-taken-up in-all
malitia patrissare semen nequam non desistebat;
malice to-take-after-his-father the-seed wicked not ceased

sed quos pater flagellis, patre nequior scorpionibus
but whom the-father with-whips than-the-father more-wicked with-scorpions
cædebat. Intumescens quippe quod impune pauperes
he-beat swelling indeed because with-impunity the-poor
ecclesias, monasteria crudelissime oppresserat, eo usque
churches monasteries most-cruelly he-had-oppressed to-that-point right
pedem movit, unde ceciderunt qui operantur iniquitatem;
his-foot he-moved whence fell those-who work iniquity
expulsi sunt, nec potuerunt stare. Cum igitur nec
driven-out they-were nor they-could to-stand since therefore neither
regem omnium, nec regem Francorum magni duceret,
the-king of-all nor the-king of-the-Franks of-great-account he-held
nobilissimam Carnotensem comitissam, cum filio Theobaldo,
the-most-noble of-Chartres countess with her-son Theobald
pulcherrimo juvene et armis strenuo, aggressus, terram
a-most-handsome youth and in-arms vigorous attacking the-land
eorum usque Carnotum depopulans, rapinis et incendiis
their right-up-to Chartres laying-waste to-plunderings and burnings
exponebat. Nobilis vero comitissa cum filio aliquando,
he-exposed the-noble but countess with her-son sometimes
licet tarde et insufficienter, prout poterat, ulcisci nitebatur:
though late and insufficiently as she-could to-avenge strove
nunquam tamen aut vix Puteolo a milliaribus octo
never yet or scarcely to-Le-Puiset from miles eight
seu decem appropinquabant. Tanta erat Hugonis audacia,
or ten they-came-near so-great was of-Hugh the-daring
tanta potestativæ superbiæ suppetebat facultas, ut cum
so-great of-powerful pride was-at-hand the-means that though
pauci diligerent, multi servirent; cum multi ad defensionem,
few loved-him many served though many to the-defense
quamplures ipsi etiam ad destructionem anhelarent. Magis
very-many to-him also to destruction panted more

enim timebatur quam amabatur. Cum autem comes præfatus
for he-was-feared than he-was-loved when moreover count the-aforesaid
Theobaldus per se parum, per regem multum proficere
Theobald by himself little by the-king much to-avail
in Hugonem perpenderet, cum nobilissima matre, quæ
against Hugh weighed with his-most-noble mother who
semper nobiliter regi servire consueverat, ad eum accelerat,
always nobly the-king to-serve had-been-accustomed to him he-hastens
ut opituletur multis precibus pulsat, multo servitio ejus
that he-may-help with-many prayers he-knocks by-much service his
opem meruisse repræsentat. Hugonis quædam, patris,
help to-have-earned he-represents of-Hugh certain of-the-father
avi, et atavorum opprobria reportat: «Memorare,
of-the-grandfather and of-the-ancestors outrages he-reports remember
inquiens, domine rex, sicut decet regiam majestatem,
saying lord king as befits the-royal majesty
opprobrii et dedecoris, quod avus Hugonis patri
the-outrage and disgrace which the-grandfather of-Hugh to-the-father
tuo Philippo fœdus perjurio intulit, cum eum, multas illatas
your Philip foul with-perjury inflicted when him many inflicted
injurias ulcisci innitentem, a Puteolo turpiter repulit,
injuries to-avenge striving from Le-Puiset shamefully he-drove-back
fastu nequissimæ consanguinitatis, factiosæ conspirationis,
with-the-pride of-most-wicked kinship of-factious conspiracy
exercitum ejus usque Aurelianum fugavit, captum comitem
the-army his right-up-to Orléans put-to-flight captured the-count
Nivernensem, Lancelinum Baugenciacensem, milites pene
of-Nevers Lancelin of-Beaugency knights nearly
centum, et quod hactenus inauditum erat, episcopos quosdam
a-hundred and what hitherto unheard-of was bishops certain
carcere suo dehonestavit.» Addebat etiam improperando
with-prison his dishonored he-added also by-reproaching

qua causa, qua origine, in medio terræ Sanctorum
for-what cause from-what origin in the-middle of-the-land of-the-Saints
constructum ad tuitionem ejus a venerabili regina Constantia
built for the-protection its by the-venerable queen Constance
castrum non ab antiquo fuerat; quomodo etiam post,
the-castle not from antiquity had-been how also after
totum sibi, nihil regi reliquum præter injurias fecerat;
all to-itself nothing for-the-king left except injuries it-had-made
modo, si placeret, quia Carnotensis, Blesensis, et Dunensis
now if it-pleased because of-Chartres of-Blois and of-Châteaudun
exercitus copia, qua fretus resistere consueverat, non
the-army the-abundance on-which relying to-resist it-had-been-accustomed not
solum deficeret, sed et ei officeret, castri subversione
only would-fail but also to-it would-be-hostile of-the-castle by-the-overturning
et Hugonis exhæredatione et paternas et suas ulcisci facile
and of-Hugh by-the-disinheritance both paternal and his-own to-avenge easily
posset injurias. Quod si nec suas nec bene meritorum
he-could injuries that if neither his-own nor of-the-well deserving
punire vellet injurias, ecclesiarum oppressiones, pauperum
to-punish he-wished injuries of-the-churches the-oppressions of-the-poor
deprædationes, viduarum et pupillorum impiissimas vexationes,
the-plunderings of-widows and of-orphans most-impious harassments
quibus et terram Sanctorum et terræ accolas dilapidabat,
by-which both the-land of-the-Saints and of-the-land the-dwellers he-wasted
aut suas faceret aut removeret. Cum igitur talibus
either his-own let-him-make-them or let-him-remove-them when therefore by-such
et pluribus pulsatus rex his consulendis diem dedisset,
and more importuned the-king for-these to-be-deliberated a-day had-given
Milidunum convenimus. Ubi multi archiepiscopi, episcopi,
to-Melun we-gathered where many archbishops bishops
clerici et monachi confluentes, quia eorum terras lupo
clerics and monks flocking because their lands than-a-wolf

rapacior devorabat, clamabant; pedibus ejus, etiam nolentis,
more-rapacious he-devoured cried at-the-feet his even unwilling
accubabant, ut rapacissimum prædonem Hugonem compesceret;
they-lay that the-most-rapacious robber Hugh he-restrain
præbendas suas, munificentia regum in Belsa, quæ ferax est
the-prebends their by-the-munificence of-kings in the-Beauce which fertile is
frumenti, servitoribus Dei constitutas, de fauce draconis
of-grain for-the-servants of-God established from the-jaw of-the-dragon
eripiat; terras sacerdotum, non minus sub sævitia Pharaonis
he-snatch the-lands of-priests not less under the-cruelty of-Pharaoh
solas emancipatas, emancipare satagat; partem Dei, cujus
alone set-free to-set-free he-busy-himself the-portion of-God whose
ad vivificandum portat rex imaginem, vicarius ejus liberam
for giving-life bears the-king the-image as-vicar his free
restituat, suppliciter implorant. Quorum prece bono animo
restore suppliantly they-implore whose prayer with-good mind
suscepta, nihil inconvenienter suscipiens, recedentibus prælatis
received nothing unfittingly undertaking withdrawing the-prelates
ecclesiæ, archiepiscopo Senonensi, episcopo Aurelianensi,
of-the-church the-archbishop of-Sens the-bishop of-Orléans
Carnotensi venerabili Ivone, qui tentus fuerat carcere, quem
of-Chartres the-venerable Ivo who held had-been in-the-prison which
coactus fecerat pingi in eodem castello multis diebus,
compelled he-had-made to-be-painted in the-same castle for-many days
consensu bonæ memoriæ abbatis Adæ antecessoris nostri,
with-the-consent of-good memory of-abbot Adam predecessor our
remisit me Tauriacum, cui præeram in Belsa, villam
he-sent-back me to-Toury over-which I-presided in the-Beauce a-village
beati Dionysii utilem et annonæ fertilem, sed nullo modo
of-blessed Denis useful and in-grain fertile but in-no way
munitam; præcipiens ut, dum ipse eum adhuc ad causam
fortified directing that while he-himself him still to trial

super his vocaret, villæ providerem, hominum suorum
about these summoned for-the-village I-should-provide of-men his
et nostrorum manu militari pro posse fulcitam, ne eam
and ours with-a-band military as-far-as possible propped lest it
incendio dissolveret, operam darem: eam enim muniret,
by-fire he-destroy effort I-should-give it for he-would-fortify
et, sicut pater fecerat, castrum inde impugnaret. Quod cum
and as his-father had-done the-castle thence assail which when
nos, Deo auxiliante, militum et peditum copia bene
we God helping of-knights and of-foot-soldiers with-a-supply well
aliquantisper temporis compleremus, consummato Hugonis
for-some of-time we-were-completing being-completed of-Hugh
per absentationem suî judicio, rex ad nos
through the-absence of-himself by-the-judgment the-king to us
Tauriacum magno cum exercitu devenit, castrum abjudicatum
at-Toury great with army came the-castle adjudged-away
ab illo Hugone repetiit. Nec mora, cum exire recusaret,
from that Hugh he-reclaimed nor delay when to-go-out he-refused
rex maturat aggredi castrum, tam militarem quam
the-king hastens to-attack the-castle as-much the-mounted as
pedestrem ei applicat exercitum, balistam multiplicem, arcum,
the-foot to-it he-applies army the-crossbow the-manifold bow
scutum, et gladium, et bellum: ut videres et valeres
shield and sword and war that you-might-see and you-could
mirari vicissim sagittarum imbrem, galearum fulgorantium
to-wonder-at by-turns of-arrows the-shower of-helmets flashing
superius scintillare multis ictibus ignem, scutorum subitam
above to-sparkle by-many blows the-fire of-the-shields the-sudden
et mirabilem confractionem et perforationem, et, ut impulsi
and wonderful shattering and piercing and as driven
sunt per portam in castrum, ab intus super nostros de
they-were through the-gate into the-castle from within upon ours from

propugnaculis et glande mirabilem et pene intolerabilem
the-ramparts and the-stockade a-wonderful and almost unbearable
etiam audacissimis dejici grandinem, trabium depositione
even to-the-most-daring to-be-hurled hail of-beams by-the-dropping
et sudium immissione, incipere et non perficere repulsionem.
and of-stakes by-the-sending-in to-begin and not to-complete the-repulse
Regales econtra, fortissimo animi et corporis robore
the-royal-men in-turn with-the-strongest of-mind and of-body strength
acerrime dimicantes, scutis confractis, ascellas, ostia, et
most-fiercely fighting the-shields broken planks doors and
quæque lignea sibi præponentes, portæ insistunt;
whatever wooden before-themselves setting the-gate they-press
carros etiam, quos multa congerie siccorum lignorum adipis
carts also which with-much heap of-dry wood of-fat
et sagiminis cito fomento flammis accendendis onerari
and of-lard quick tinder for-flames to-be-kindled to-be-loaded
feceramus (erant enim excommunicati et omnino diabolici),
we-had-caused they-were for excommunicate and wholly devilish
porta in manu forti opponunt, ut et ipsis carris
to-the-gate with hand strong they-set-against that both to-the-very carts
incendium inextinguibile propinent, et seipsos opposito
fire unquenchable they-might-serve and themselves by-the-set-against
lignorum aggere tueantur. Cumque alii accendere, alii
of-wood heap they-might-protect and-while some to-kindle others
extinguere periculose concertant, comes Theobaldus aliunde,
to-quench perilously contend count Theobald from-elsewhere
ea scilicet parte qua respicit Carnotum, magno et
by-that namely side which faces Chartres with-a-great both
militari et pedestri exercitu castrum assiliens, invadere memor
mounted and foot army the-castle assailing to-invade mindful
injuriarum festinat: et dum suos arduo valli declivo
of-injuries hastens and while his-men the-steep of-the-rampart slope

ascendere concitat, citius descendere, immo corruere
to-climb he-urges more-quickly to-descend nay to-fall-headlong
dolet; quos caute quasi pronos serpere sursum cogit,
he-grieves whom cautiously as-if face-down to-crawl upward he-forces
deorsum supinos incaute præcipitari respicit, et utrum,
downward on-their-backs heedlessly to-be-hurled he-sees and whether
insequentibus molis, spiritum exhalent, cognoscere satagit.
by-the-following masses breath they-breathe-out to-learn is-busy
Qui enim milites velocissimis equis castri defensionem
those for knights on-swiftest horses of-the-castle the-defense
circuibant, manualiter glandi innitentes, inopinate dum
went-round by-hand on-the-stockade leaning unexpectedly while
supervenirent cædebant, detruncabant, et ab alto fossati
they-came-upon they-cut-down they-hewed and from the-height of-the-ditch
imo graviter dejiciebant. Jamque manus dissolutæ et
to-the-bottom heavily cast-down and-now hands loosened and
debilitata genua assultum sopitum pene fecerant; cum valida,
weakened knees the-assault lulled almost had-made when the-strong
immo omnipotens omnipotentis Dei manus, tantæ et tam
nay almighty of-the-almighty God hand of-so-great and so
justæ ultionis causam sibi omnino adscribi volens, cum
just vengeance the-cause to-itself wholly to-be-ascribed wishing since
communitates patriæ parrochiarum adessent, cujusdam
the-communes of-the-country of-the-parishes were-present of-a-certain
calvi presbyteri suscitavit fortitudinis robustum spiritum,
bald priest roused of-fortitude a-robust spirit
cui contra opinionem humanam datum est possibile
to-whom against opinion human given it-was possible
quod armato comiti et suis contingebat impossibile.
what to-the-armed count and his-men befell impossible
Velociter siquidem vilissimam ascellam sibi præferens,
swiftly indeed a-most-worthless plank before-himself carrying

fronte nudo ascendens, ad sepem usque pervenit; et
with-forehead bare climbing to the-fence right-up he-came and
latendo sub his quæ sepi erant aptatæ operturis, eas
by-hiding under those which to-the-fence were fitted coverings them
paulatim deponebat. Quod cum libere se facere gauderet,
little-by-little took-down which when freely himself to-do he-rejoiced
innuit hæsitantibus et vacantibus in campo, ut opem
he-beckoned to-the-hesitating and idle in the-field that help
ferrent. Qui, videntes presbyterum inermem fortiter clausuram
they-bring who seeing the-priest unarmed boldly the-enclosure
dejicere, armati insiliunt; secures et quæque instrumenta
to-throw-down armed leap axes and whatever instruments
ferrea clausuris apponentes, secant, disrumpunt, et quod
iron to-the-enclosures applying they-cut they-break-apart and what
mirabile cœlestis arbitrii signum fuit, ac si alterius muri
wonderful of-heavenly judgment a-sign was as if of-another the-walls
Jericho cecidissent, eadem hora et regis et comitis
Jericho had-fallen in-the-same hour both of-the-king and of-the-count
exercitus, ruptis claustris, intraverunt. Unde quamplures
the-armies the-broken barriers entered whence very-many
eorum, cum in neutram partem incursus hostium, hinc et
of-them since in neither side the-onrush of-the-enemies hence and
inde convolantium, vitare non possent, interceptos citissime
thence flying-together to-avoid not they-could intercepted most-quickly
graviter affligi contigit. Reliqui vero, nec non et ipse
heavily to-be-struck it-happened the-rest but and likewise also himself
Hugo, cum intus castellum muro cinctum tuto non
Hugh since within the-castle with-a-wall girded safe not
sufficeret præsidio, in mota, scilicet turre lignea superiori,
sufficed for-protection in the-motte namely in-the-tower wooden upper
se recipit. Nec mora, cum se insequentis exercitus
himself withdraws nor delay when himself of-the-pursuing army

pila minantia abhorreret, percussus deditioni cessit, et
the-javelins threatening he-shrank-from struck to-surrender he-yielded and
captivatus in propria domo cum suis, quantam superbia
captured in his-own house with his-men how-great pride
pariat ruinam, miserrime compeditus animadvertit. Cum vero
bears ruin most-wretchedly fettered he-perceived when but
rex potitus victoria nobiles captos, prædam regiæ majestati
the-king having-won the-victory the-noble captives as-prey for-royal majesty
idoneam, eduxisset, cunctam castri supellectilem et omnes
fit had-led-out all of-the-castle the-furniture and all
divitias publicari, castrumque incendio conflari imperavit.
riches to-be-confiscated and-the-castle by-fire to-be-consumed ordered
Turrim tantum incendere paucis diebus distulit, ea de
the-tower only to-burn for-a-few days he-put-off that for
causa, quod comes Theobaldus, immemor beneficii tanti
reason that count Theobald unmindful of-the-benefit of-so-great
facti, quod nunquam per se adipisci valeret, machinabatur
a-deed which never by himself to-obtain could was-contriving
marchiam suam amplificare, castrum erigendo in potestate
march his to-enlarge a-castle by-raising in the-power
Puteoli quod de feodo regis fuerat, apud villam quæ
of-Le-Puiset which of the-fief of-the-king had-been at the-village which
dicitur Alona. Quod cum rex omnino recusaret, comes
is-called Allonnes which when the-king wholly refused the-count
pactum hoc offerebat per Andræam de Baldamento, terræ
agreed this offered through Andrew of Baudement of-land
suæ procuratorem, ratiocinare: rex vero et ratione et lege
his the-steward to-argue the-king but both by-reason and by-law
duelli nunquam se pepigisse, per Ansellum dapiferum
of-duel never himself to-have-agreed through Anseau seneschal

suum, ubicumque secure vellent, defendere. Qui viri strenui
his wherever securely they-wished to-defend which men vigorous
multas huic prælio postulantes curias, nullam invenerunt.
many for-this combat demanding courts none found
Subverso igitur omnino præfato castro, nec non et Hugone
overturned therefore wholly the-aforesaid castle and likewise also Hugh
in turre Castri Landulfi incluso, Theobaldus comes, fretus
in the-tower of-Château- -Landon shut-in Theobald count relying
avunculi sui regis Anglici inclyti Henrici auxilio, regi
of-uncle his the-king English renowned Henry on-the-aid against-king
Ludovico cum complicibus suis guerram movet, terram turbat,
Louis with accomplices his war moves the-land disturbs
barones suos pollicitis et donis subtrahit, et quicquid deterius
the-barons his with-promises and gifts draws-away and whatever worse
reipublicæ invisus machinatur. Rex autem, ut erat vir
for-the-commonwealth hated contrives the-king moreover as he-was a-man
militiæ aptus, ulcisci in eum frequentabat: et cum
for-knighthood apt to-take-vengeance on him repeatedly-went and with
multis aliis baronibus, tum avunculo suo comite Flandrense
many other barons especially uncle his count of-Flanders
Roberto accito, viro mirabili, christianis et Sarracenis a
Robert summoned a-man wonderful to-Christians and Saracens from
primordio Hierosolymitanæ viæ armis famosissimo, terram ejus
the-beginning of-the-Jerusalem way in-arms most-famous the-land his
exponebat. Unde, cum quadam die Meldensi civitati exercitum
he-exposed whence when on-a-certain day to-the-Meaux city the-army
induxisset contra comitem, viso eo, frendens in eum et suos
he-had-led against the-count seen him gnashing upon him and his-men
insiliit: nec fugitivos veritus per pontem insequi, prosternit,
leapt nor the-fugitives fearing over the-bridge to-pursue lays-low
et cum comite Roberto et cæteris regni optimatibus
and with count Robert and the-other of-the-kingdom magnates

gladiis, ponte decidente, fluctibus involvit. Virum expeditum
with-swords the-bridge falling in-the-waves wraps the-man unencumbered
Hectoreos videres movere lacertos, super pontem tremulum
Hectorean you-might-see to-move arms upon the-bridge shaky
giganteos impetus actitare, ingressu periculoso niti, permultis
giant onsets to-drive in-entry perilous to-strive very-many
renitentibus villam occupare, quod nec interpositus magnus
resisting the-town to-seize which not set-between the-great
Maternæ fluvius prohiberet, si trans flumen porta clausa non
of-the-Marne river would-prevent if across the-river the-gate shut not
restitisset. Nec minus præclaro facinore strenuitatis famam
had-resisted nor less by-a-brilliant deed of-vigor the-fame
nobilitavit, cum Latiniaco exercitum movens, obvianti
he-ennobled when from-Lagny the-army moving against-the-meeting
militiæ, in grata pratorum planitie juxta Pomponam, arma
knighthood in the-pleasing of-meadows plain near Pomponne arms
convertit, fugam celerem crebris affectare cogit colaphis.
he-turned flight swift with-frequent to-seek compels blows
Qui cum pontis proximi artum formidarent introitum,
who since of-the-bridge nearest the-narrow they-dreaded entry
alii se influctuare gravissimo mortis periculo
some themselves to-throw-into-the-waves with-most-grievous of-death peril
timide consulentes vitæ non timuerunt: alii, seipsos pontem
timidly providing for-life not feared others themselves the-bridge
præripiendo calcantes, arma rejiciunt, et hostibus sibi
by-seizing-first trampling arms throw-away and than-the-enemies to-themselves
hostiliores, dum insimul omnes volunt, vix unus pontem
more-hostile while together all wish scarcely one the-bridge
ingreditur. Dumque tumultuosus eos confundit impetus,
enters and-while tumultuous them confounds the-rush
quanto festinant, tanto plures demorantur, et fit
the-more they-hasten so-much the-more are-delayed and it-comes-about

exinde ut et primi novissimi et novissimi fiant primi. Quia
thence that both the-first last and the-last become first because
tamen pontis ingressus fossato cingebatur, præsidio eis
yet of-the-bridge the-entry by-a-ditch was-girded a-protection to-them
erat; quia regii quirites, nisi unus post alium, eos insequi
it-was because the-royal warriors unless one after another them to-pursue
non valebant, nec sic etiam sine magno suî dispendio,
not were-able nor thus even without great of-themselves loss
cum multi niterentur, pauci pontem prendere poterant. Qui
since many strove few the-bridge to-take could who
autem quocumque modo intrabant, sæpius aut suorum
moreover in-whatever way entered more-often either of-their-own
aut nostrorum turba turbata, inviti genu flectebant, et
or of-ours by-the-crowd disturbed unwilling the-knee bent and
resilientes alios idem facere cogebant. Insecutus autem eos
springing-back others the-same to-do compelled having-pursued moreover them
rex cum suis, multa strage urgebat, quos offendebat
the-king with his-men with-much slaughter pressed whom he-struck
conterebat, quos conterebat, tam gladii impressione quam
he-crushed whom he-crushed as-much of-the-sword by-the-thrust as
fortissimi equi impulsione, Maternæ fluvio ingurgitabat.
of-the-strongest horse by-the-impact of-the-Marne in-the-river he-engulfed
Verum sicut inermes levitate fluctuabant suî, sic et
but as the-unarmed by-the-lightness floated of-themselves so also
loricati pondere suo graves semel mersi, ante trinam
the-mailed by-the-weight their-own heavy once sunk before the-threefold
demersionem comitum suffragio retrahuntur, rebaptizatorum
immersion of-companions by-the-help are-drawn-back of-the-rebaptized
opprobrium, si talis esset occasio, referentes.
the-reproach if such were the-occasion bringing-back

His autem et hujusmodi rex comitem angarians molestiis,
with-these moreover and such the-king the-count harassing troubles
terras ejus ubi ubi tam in Briensi quam in Carnotensi pago
the-lands his where- -ever as-much in the-Brie as in the-Chartres district
demolitur, nec ejus præsentiam plus absentia, nec absentiam
demolishes nor his presence more than-absence nor absence
plus præsentia appretiatur. Cumque comes insufficientiam et
more than-presence he-values and-when the-count the-insufficiency and
inertiam suorum formidaret, regi barones suos surripere
sloth of-his-own-men feared from-the-king the-barons his to-filch
callet, donis et promissis eos alliciens, et diversarum
he-is-skilled with-gifts and promises them enticing and of-various
querimoniarum spem restitutionis, antequam cum rege
complaints the-hope of-restitution before with the-king
faciat pacem repromittens. Inter quos Lancelinum Bulensem
he-make peace promising among whom Lancelin of-Bulles
Domni Martini dominum, Paganum de Monte Gaio, quorum
of-Dam- -martin lord Payen of Mont- -jay whose
terra quasi in bivio posita, securum agitandi Parisium
land as-if at a-crossroads placed a-secure for-harrying Paris
porrigeret accessum, obligavit. Hac eadem causa Radulfum
offered access he-bound for-this same cause Ralph
de Balgentiaco, cum conjugem germanam cognatam regis,
of Beaugency since as-wife a-full cousin of-the-king
Hugonis magni filiam, haberet, illexit; et utile præponens
of-Hugh the-great daughter he-had he-enticed and the-useful preferring
honesto (ut proverbialiter dici solet, stimulus anum
to-the-honorable as proverbially to-be-said is-wont the-goad the-old-woman
accelerat), multa stimulatus anxietate, nobilem sororem [suam]
hastens by-much goaded anxiety the-noble sister his
incestuoso matrimonio Miloni de Monte Leherii, cui supra
in-incestuous marriage to-Milo of Mont- -lhéry to-whom above

memoravimus regem castrum reddidisse, irreverenter copulavit.
we-have-recorded the-king the-castle to-have-restored irreverently he-joined
Quo facto et commeantium interrupit opportunitatem, et
which done both of-travelers he-broke the-convenience and
tanquam in ipso medio Franciæ conclavi, procellarum et
as-if in the-very middle of-France chamber of-storms and
guerrarum locavit antiquam importunitatem. Et dum cum
wars he-placed the-ancient trouble and while with
eo cognatos, Hugonem de Castello Forti Creciacensem, et
him the-kinsmen Hugh of Château- -fort of-Crécy and
Guidonem de Rupe Forti surripit, pagum Parisiensem et
Guy of Roche- -fort he-filches the-district of-Paris and
Stampensen, si militia non prohibeatur, guerris exponit. Et
of-Étampes if by-knighthood not it-be-prevented to-wars he-exposes and
dum comiti Theobaldo et Briensibus, et Trecensi patruo
while to-count Theobald and to-the-men-of-Brie and to-the-Troyes uncle
Hugoni et Trecensibus, contra Parisienses et Silvanectenses
Hugh and to-the-men-of-Troyes against the-Parisians and the-men-of-Senlis
citra Sequanam, Miloni ultra patulus aperitur accessus,
this-side-of the-Seine to-Milo beyond wide is-opened access
subripitur patriæ ab alio aliis suffragari: similiter
it-is-taken-away from-the-country from one to-others to-give-aid likewise
et Aurelianensibus, cum Carnotenses, Dunenses et
also from-the-men-of-Orléans since the-men-of-Chartres men-of-Châteaudun and
Brienses, suffragio Radulfi Balgenciacensis nullo opposito,
men-of-Brie by-the-support of-Ralph of-Beaugency no-one opposing
arcebantur. Rex vero sæpius supra dorsum eorum fabricabat:
were-kept-off the-king but more-often upon the-back their was-forging
cui nec Angliæ nec Normaniæ opum profusio parcebat,
whom neither of-England nor of-Normandy of-wealth the-outpouring spared

cum inclytus rex Henricus toto nisu, tota opera, terram
since the-renowned king Henry with-all striving all effort the-land
ejus impugnabat; qui tantum his percellebatur, quantum
his assailed who as-much by-these was-struck as

Si flumina cuncta minentur
if the-rivers all should-threaten
pelago subducere fontes.
from-the-sea to-withdraw their-springs

De liberatione ejusdem

19 · HUGH RELEASED

On the death of Odo of Corbeil, Theobald works through Milo and Hugh to win Corbeil, and the king can secure it only by releasing Hugh of Le Puiset. At Moissy Hugh abjures Corbeil and his exactions on the churches and swears never to fortify Le Puiset without the king's leave.

Interea contigit decedere Curboilensem comitem Odonem,
meanwhile it-happened to-die the-Corbeil count Odo
hominem non hominem, quia non rationalem, sed pecoralem,
a-man not a-man because not rational but cattle-like
filium Buchardi superbissimi comitis. Qui tumultuosus
the-son of-Bouchard the-most-proud count who turbulent
miræ magnanimitatis, caput sceleratorum, cum ad regnum
of-wondrous high-spirit the-head of-the-wicked when to the-kingdom
aspirans quadam die arma contra regem assumeret, gladium
aspiring on-a-certain day arms against the-king he-took-up the-sword
de manu porrigentis recipere refutavit, astanti conjugi
from the-hand of-the-one-offering to-receive refused to-the-standing-by wife

comitissæ invective sic dicens: «Præbe, nobilis comitissa,
the-countess abusively thus saying offer noble countess
nobili comiti splendidum ensem lætabunda, quia qui
to-the-noble count the-splendid sword joyful because (he)-who
comes a te recipit, rex hodie tibi reddet.» Verum e
count from you receives king today to-you shall-give-back but on-the
contrario, Deo disponente, contigit ut nec quod erat, nec
contrary God disposing it-happened that neither what he-was nor
quod esse volebat, diem excederet; cum eadem die lancea
what to-be he-wished the-day he-should-outlast since on-the-same day by-the-lance
percussus comitis Stephani, ex parte regis dimicantis,
struck of-count Stephen on the-side of-the-king fighting
regno pacem firmaverit, et se et suam guerram ad
for-the-kingdom peace he-confirmed and himself and his war to
inferni novissima infinite debellando transtulerit. Mortuo itaque
of-hell the-uttermost endlessly by-warring-out transferred dead and-so
filio Odone comite, comes Theobaldus cum matre, et per
the-son Odo the-count count Theobald with his-mother both through
Milonem et per Hugonem, quibuscumque poterant donis
Milo and through Hugh by-whatever they-could gifts
et datis et pollicitis, omnimodam dabant operam ut, si hoc
and grants and promises every-kind-of they-gave effort that if this
cum collateralibus castrum obtinere possent, regem omnino
with the-adjoining castle to-obtain they-could the-king wholly
eviscerarent. Econtra rex et sui eos refellendo,
they-would-disembowel on-the-other-hand the-king and his-men them by-refuting
cum multo et sumptuoso labore ad obtinendum insudasset,
with much and costly labor for obtaining had-sweated
absque præfati Hugonis deliberatione, quia comitis
without of-the-aforesaid Hugh the-release because of-the-count
nepos erat, minime potuit. Data igitur his explendis
the-nephew he-was by-no-means could given therefore for-these to-be-fulfilled

die et loco, patenter malorum præsago, scilicet apud villam
a-day and a-place openly of-evils foreboding namely at the-village
episcopi Parisiensis Moussiacum cum convenissemus, et in
of-the-bishop of-Paris Moissy when we-had-assembled and in
parte nociva et in parte juvativa foret ejus deliberatio,
part harmful and in part helpful would-be his release
quoniam non potuimus quod voluimus, voluimus quod
since not we-could what we-wished we-wished what
potuimus. Abjurato siquidem ab eo Curboilo castro, cujus
we-could abjured indeed by him Corbeil the-castle whose
se hæredem jactabat, abjuravit nobis omnibus omnes
himself heir he-boasted he-abjured to-us all all
angarias, omnes tallias, omnes vexationes omnium ecclesiarum
exactions all tallages all harassments of-all churches
et monasteriorum possessionum; et datis obsidibus pro his
and of-monasteries possessions and given hostages for these
omnibus, et quod Puteolum nunquam absque domini regis
all and that Le-Puiset never without of-the-lord king
firmaret voluntate, perfidia, non arte delusi, redivimus.
would-be-fortify the-will by-perfidy not by-art deluded we-returned

De impugnatione Tauriaci et restitutione Puteoli

20 · TOURY BESIEGED AND LE PUISET RESTORED

Hugh breaks his oath and, allied with Theobald and Henry of England, rebuilds Le Puiset and attacks Toury, which Suger reaches at dusk and slips into with a few men. The king's first attack is routed, but he raises a fort on the old motte beside Le Puiset and beats off Theobald at Janville until the count withdraws, and the castle is razed.

Nec mora, cum necdum congelatum, sed liquidum et recens
nor delay when not-yet frozen but liquid and fresh
adhuc sacramentum floccifieret, Hugo, longa exasperatus
still the-oath held-of-no-account Hugh by-long exasperated
captione, instar canis diu catenati, qui, concepta et retenta
captivity like a-dog long chained which the-conceived and kept
longo tempore in vinculis insania, solutus intolerabiliter
for-long time in chains madness loosed unbearably
desævit, excatenatus mordet et discerpit, haud secus
rages unchained bites and tears not otherwise
Hugo congelatam liquefaciens nequitiam, stimulat, movet, ad
Hugh the-frozen melting wickedness goads moves to
fraudem accelerat. Confœderatus igitur regni defœderatis,
fraud hastens allied therefore of-the-kingdom to-the-unallied
videlicet Palatino comiti Theobaldo et egregio regi
namely to-the-Palatine count Theobald and to-the-excellent king
Anglorum Henrico, cum dominum regem Ludovicum in
of-the-English Henry when the-lord king Louis into
Flandriam pro regni negotiis profecturum accepisset,
Flanders for of-the-kingdom business about-to-set-out he-had-learned
collecto quantocumque equitum et peditum potuit exercitu,
gathered as-great-as of-horsemen and foot he-could an-army

Puteolum castrum restituere deliberat, adjacentem pagum
Le-Puiset the-castle to-restore he-resolves the-adjoining district
aut eversum iri aut sibi subjicere maturat. Transiens
either overturned to-be or to-himself to-subject he-hastens passing
igitur quodam sabbato per eversum castrum, ubi tamen
therefore on-a-certain sabbath through the-overturned castle where yet
publicum regis permissione patebat forum, mirabili fraude
a-public of-the-king by-permission lay-open market with-wondrous fraud
hic securitatem, præcone vociferante, jurejurando spondebat,
here security the-crier shouting by-oath he-pledged
ibidem quos ditiores addiscere poterat inopinato carceri
there whom richer to-find-out he-could to-unexpected prison
detrudebat; et ut bellua frendens, et quicquid occurrebat
he-thrust and like a-beast gnashing and whatever met-him
discerpens, Tauriacum villam beati Dionysii munitam
tearing Toury the-village of-blessed Denis fortified
cum comite Theobaldo subvertere funditus festinat. Qui
with count Theobald to-overturn utterly he-hastens who
pridie nos conveniens, doli et nequitiæ gnarus, multa
the-day-before us meeting of-guile and wickedness knowing with-much
prece ut pro eo ad dominum regem intercedere eadem
prayer that for him to the-lord king to-intercede on-the-same
die transiremus obtinuerat, absentia nostrî villam absque
day we-should-cross had-obtained in-the-absence of-us the-village without
difficultate arbitratus ingredi, aut, si ei resistitur, omnino
difficulty thinking to-enter or if to-him it-is-resisted wholly
delere. Verum qui in parte Dei et beati Dionysii
to-destroy but those-who on the-side of-God and of-blessed Denis
munitionem intrabant, et Dei auxilio et loci præsidio
the-fortress were-entering both of-God by-the-help and of-the-place by-the-protection
munitis propugnaculis, tam viriliter quam audacissime
with-fortified ramparts as manfully as most-boldly

resistebant. Nos autem citra Curboilum venientes, cum
resisted we moreover this-side-of Corbeil coming when
domino regi, qui jam rei veritatem a Normannia
the-lord king who already of-the-matter the-truth from Normandy
acceperat, occurreremus, citissime inquisita adventus nostri
had-received we-met most-quickly asked of-the-coming our
causa, simplicitatem nostram derisit, et cum multa
the-cause simplicity our he-laughed-at and with much
indignatione Hugonis fraudem aperiens, ad suffragandum
indignation of-Hugh the-fraud disclosing for aiding
villæ velocissime remisit. Et dum ipse Stampensi via
the-village most-swiftly sent-us-back and while he-himself by-the-Étampes road
exercitum colligens, nos rectiori et breviori Tauriacum
the-army gathering we by-a-straighter and shorter to-Toury
dirigimur; hoc unum, multo et frequenti intuitu, a
are-directed this one-thing with-much and frequent gazing from
longe assumentes necdum occupatæ munitionis argumentum,
afar taking not-yet occupied of-the-fortress as-proof
quod tristega turris in eadem munitione longa planitie
that the-three-storied tower in the-same fortress over-the-long plain
supereminens apparebat, quæ capta munitione illico igne
towering appeared which captured the-fortress at-once by-fire
[ab] hoste solveretur. Et quia hostes totam viciniam
by the-enemy would-be-destroyed and because the-enemies the-whole neighborhood
rapiendo, devastando occupabant, neminem occurrentium,
by-plundering by-devastating occupied no-one of-those-meeting-us
donis etiam aut promissis, nobiscum ducere poteramus. Unde
with-gifts even or promises with-us to-lead could-we whence
quanto pauciores, tanto securiores, jam sole in vesperum
by-how-much fewer by-so-much safer already the-sun to evening
declinante, cum, quia hostes nostros tota die impugnantes
declining when because the-enemies ours the-whole day assailing

expugnare non valerent, fatigati parum substitissent, nos ac
to-overcome not could wearied a-little had-halted we as
si de eorum essemus consortio, speculata opportunitate, non
if of their we-were company spied-out the-opportunity not
sine magno periculo per medium villæ irruentes, quia
without great peril through the-middle of-the-village rushing because
quibus innueramus in propugnaculis nostrates portam
(those)-to-whom we-had-beckoned on the-ramparts our-people the-gate
paraverant, citissime Deo annuente intravimus. Qui, nostra
had-readied most-quickly God assenting we-entered who by-our
exhilarati præsentia, sabbata hostium deridebant, multisque
gladdened presence the-sabbaths of-the-enemies mocked and-with-many
conviciis et opprobriis lacessientes, ad reciprocum assultum,
insults and reproaches provoking to a-return assault
me invito et prohibente, revocabant. Verum ut me absente,
me unwilling and forbidding called-back but as me absent
sic et præsente, et defensores et defensionem divina manus
so also present both the-defenders and the-defense the-divine hand
protexit. Cumque nostrorum pauci de paucis, eorum multi
protected and-when of-ours few from few of-theirs many
de multis vulnerati deficerent, alii multiplici suorum lectica
from many wounded were-failing some on-the-manifold of-their-own litter
deportantur, alii, raro vilissimo terræ aggere retrusi, cras
are-carried-off others with-thin most-worthless of-earth mound thrust-under tomorrow
aut post cras morsibus luporum exponendi reponuntur.
or after tomorrow to-the-bites of-wolves to-be-exposed are-laid-away
Necdum Puteolum repulsi redierant, cum Guillelmus
not-yet to-Le-Puiset the-repulsed had-returned when William
Garlandensis, et de familia regis quamplures promptiores
of-Garlande and of the-household of-the-king very-many readier
et validiores armati villæ suffragari accelerant, eos circa
and stronger armed the-village to-aid hasten them round-about

invenire ad ostendendam regiæ militiæ audaciam toto
to-find for showing of-royal knighthood the-daring with-whole
animo præoptant. Quos ipse dominus rex statim in aurora
mind they-desire whom himself the-lord king at-once at dawn
subsecutus, cum eos per burgum hospitatos audisset,
having-followed when them through the-borough lodged he-had-heard
votivam in hostes parabat ultionem; tanto hilaris, tanto
the-wished-for on the-enemies he-prepared vengeance so-much cheerful so-much
lætabundus, quanto eos subita strage, inopinata ultione
joyful as-much-as them by-sudden slaughter by-unexpected vengeance
inopinatam injuriam strenue ulcisci contingeret. Verum
the-unexpected injury vigorously to-avenge it-should-befall but
hostes, cognito ejus adventu, mirabantur fauctionem adeo
the-enemies learned his arrival wondered the-faction so
celatam ei innotuisse, iter Flandrense subito
hidden to-him to-have-become-known the-journey Flemish suddenly
postposuisse, ad suffragandum non tam celeriter venisse
to-have-put-off for aiding not so swiftly to-have-come
quam evolasse. Cumque nihil aliud audentes castri
as to-have-flown and-when nothing else daring of-the-castle
restitutioni insistunt, rex propinquum pro facultate
to-the-restoration they-apply-themselves the-king a-nearby according-to his-means
colligit exercitum. Multis enim eum in locis guerra urgebat.
gathers army in-many for him in places war pressed
Cumque instante die Martis exercitum eduxisset, acies
and-when coming-on the-day of-Mars the-army he-had-led-out the-lines
componit, duces præponit, sagittarios et balistarios loco suo
he-arranges leaders sets-over archers and crossbowmen in-place their
opponit, et pedetentim castro adhuc imperfecto appropinquans,
sets-against and step-by-step the-castle still unfinished approaching
quoniam audierat comitem Theobaldum se jactitasse
since he-had-heard count Theobald himself to-have-boasted

contra eum in campo dimicare, consueta magnanimitate
against him in the-field to-fight with-wonted high-spirit
pedes armatus inter armatos descendit, equos removeri
on-foot armed among the-armed he-dismounted the-horses to-be-removed
jubet, quos descendere secum fecerat ad audaciam
bids whom to-dismount with-himself he-had-made to daring
invitat, ne flectantur sollicitat, ut fortissime dimicent clamat.
he-invites lest they-be-turned he-urges that most-bravely they-fight he-shouts
Quem cum adeo strenue venientem hostes et viderent
whom when so vigorously coming the-enemies both saw
et formidarent, veriti castri procinctum exire, timide sed
and dreaded fearing of-the-castle the-enclosure to-go-out timidly but
caute elegerunt infra quendam fossatum antiquum diruti
cautiously they-chose within a-certain ditch ancient of-the-destroyed
castri acies componere, ibique expectare: in hoc callentes, ut
castle the-lines to-arrange and-there to-wait in this skilled that
cum regis exercitus fossatum inniteretur conscendere, illic
when of-the-king the-army the-ditch should-strive to-climb there
resistere, acies ordinatæ exordinarentur, exordinate vacillarent.
to-resist the-lines ordered might-be-disordered disordered might-waver
Quod magna de parte contingere contigit. Primo enim
which great in part to-happen happened in-the-first for
congressionis impetu, cum regii quirites multa cæde,
of-the-encounter onset when the-royal warriors with-much slaughter
mira audacia, a fossato eos sicut victos propulissent,
with-wondrous daring from the-ditch them as defeated had-driven-forth
exordinatis aciebus, eos indifferenter insequentes agitabant.
with-disordered lines them indiscriminately pursuing they-harried
Interea Radulfus Baugenciacensis, vir magnæ sagacitatis
meanwhile Ralph of-Beaugency a-man of-great shrewdness
et strenuitatis, idipsum quod contigit prius formidans,
and vigor that-very-thing which happened beforehand dreading

exercitum celaverat in parte castri, altitudine cujusdam
an-army had-hidden in a-part of-the-castle by-the-height of-a-certain
ecclesiæ et opacitate vicinarum domorum incognitum: qui
church and by-the-shade of-neighboring houses unknown who
cum fugitivos suos jam per portam exire videret,
when the-fugitives his already through the-gate to-go-out saw
pausatum exercitum lassatis regiis militibus apponit,
the-rested army to-the-wearied royal knights he-sets
gravissime impetit. Qui autem gregatim fugabant, loricarum
most-heavily he-attacks those-who moreover in-a-flock were-routing of-mail-coats
et armorum gravitate pedes gravati, ordinatam equitum
and of-arms by-the-weight on-foot weighed-down the-ordered of-horsemen
aciem vix sustinere valentes, per occupatum fossatum cum
line scarcely to-withstand able through the-seized ditch with
pedite rege, post innumeros ictus, post longam alternatim
the-foot-going king after countless blows after long alternating
dimicationem, retrocesserunt: quantum sapientia præstet
fighting fell-back how-much wisdom surpasses
audaciæ, licet sero, animadvertentes, cum si eos ordinati in
daring though late perceiving since if them in-order in
campo expectarent, voluntati suæ eos omnino subjugarent.
the-field they-had-awaited to-the-will their them wholly they-would-have-subdued
Verum cum acierum confusione soluti nec equos suos
but since of-the-lines by-the-confusion loosed neither horses their
reperirent, nec quid facerent deliberarent, rex non suo,
could-they-find nor what to-do could-they-decide the-king not on-his-own
sed alieno insidens equo, animosus resistebat, clamosus
but on-another's sitting horse spirited resisted loud
revocabat, nominatim audaciores ne fugerent sollicitabat.
called-back by-name the-bolder lest they-flee he-urged
Ipse autem inter hostiles cuneos, exerto gladio, quibus
he-himself moreover among the-hostile wedges with-drawn sword to-whom

poterat præsidio erat, fugaces refugabat, et ultra quam regiam
he-could for-protection was the-fleeing he-drove-back and beyond than royal
deceret majestatem, miles emeritus, militis officio, non
befitted majesty a-knight veteran of-a-knight by-the-duty not
regis, singulariter decertabat. Cum autem corruere exercitum,
of-a-king singly fought when moreover to-collapse the-army
equo lassato, solus prohibere non valeret, adest armiger
his-horse wearied alone to-prevent not he-could is-present a-squire
qui proprium reducit dextrarium; cui citissime insiliens,
who his-own brings-back charger on-which most-quickly leaping
vexillum præferens, cum paucis in hostes regreditur, plures
the-banner carrying-before with few against the-enemies he-goes-back several
suorum captos mira strenuitate eripit, quosdam hostium
of-his-men captured with-wondrous vigor he-rescues some of-the-enemies
validissimo impetu intercipit, et ne ulterius lædant exercitum,
with-most-powerful onset he-intercepts and lest further they-harm the-army
ac si Gades Herculis offendant, aut magno Oceano arceantur,
as if the-Gades of-Hercules they-strike or by-the-great Ocean be-held-off
refugos repellit, quibus, priusquam Puteolum regrediantur,
the-fleeing he-drives-back whom before to-Le-Puiset they-go-back
quingentorum militum Normannorum aut amplior occurrit
of-five-hundred knights Norman or larger meets
exercitus: qui si maturius venissent, exercitu corruente, majus
an-army which if earlier they-had-come the-army collapsing greater
damnum inferre fortassis potuissent. Cumque regis exercitus,
harm to-inflict perhaps could-have and-when of-the-king the-army
circumquaque dispersus, alii Aurelianum, alii Stampas, alii
everywhere scattered some to-Orléans others to-Étampes others
Piverim tetendissent, rex Tauriacum fatigatus deveniens,
to-Pithiviers had-made-for the-king to-Toury wearied coming

Pulsus ut armentis primo certamine taurus,
driven-off as from-the-herds in-the-first contest a-bull
explorat cornua truncis,
tries his-horns on-the-trunks

et fortissimo pectore robur recolligens, in hostem
and with-the-strongest breast strength regathering against the-enemy
per ferrum magni securus vulneris exit; haud secus
through the-iron of-a-great careless wound goes-out not otherwise
rex, exercitum rovocans, strenuitati reformat, audaciam
the-king the-army recalling to-vigor restores daring
reparat; exercitus ruinam stultitiæ, non imprudentiæ reputat;
repairs of-the-army the-ruin to-folly not to-imprudence he-ascribes
inevitabiliter his aliquando militiam subjacere reportat;
inevitably to-these sometimes knighthood to-be-subject he-reports
tanto ferocius et audacius, si opportunitas condonet,
so-much more-fiercely and more-boldly if opportunity grant
dimicare, illatam injuriam punire, tam blanditiis quam
to-fight the-inflicted injury to-punish as-much by-blandishments as
minis excitare laborat. Et dum tam Franci quam
by-threats to-rouse he-labors and while as-much the-Franks as
Normanni castri restitutioni insistunt (aderat enim cum
the-Normans of-the-castle to-the-restoration apply-themselves was-present for with
Theobaldo comite et exercitu Normannorum et Milo de
Theobald the-count and the-army of-the-Normans both Milo of
Monte Leherii, et tam Hugo Creciacensis quam frater
Mont- -lhéry and as-much Hugh of-Crécy as brother
ejus Guido comes de Rupe Forti, qui mille trecenti
his Guy count of Roche- -fort who a-thousand three-hundred
milites obsidionem Tauriaco minabantur), rex nullo timore
knights siege to-Toury threatened the-king by-no fear

flectebatur, quibus poterat nocte et die lacessere injuriis
was-bent with-what he-could night and day to-provoke with-injuries
nitebatur, ne victualia longe quæritarent refragabatur.
he-strove lest provisions far they-seek he-opposed
Restituto itaque castro continua septimana, cum, recedentibus
restored and-so the-castle in-a-continuous week when withdrawing
quibusdam Normannorum, comes Theobaldus cum exercitu
certain of-the-Normans count Theobald with an-army
multo remansisset, recollecto robore, rex bellicum movet
great had-remained regathered strength the-king warlike moves
apparatum, in manu forti Puteolum regreditur, hostem
array with hand strong to-Le-Puiset returns the-enemy
obviantem conterit, per portam dimicando et illatam
meeting-him crushes through the-gate by-fighting and the-inflicted
injuriam ulciscendo, castro recludit, militum præsidia ne
injury by-avenging in-the-castle shuts-up of-knights garrisons lest
exeant reponit, antiquam antecessorum suorum destitutam
they-go-out he-places the-ancient of-forebears his abandoned
motam, castro jactu lapidis propinquam, occupat, castrum
motte to-the-castle by-a-throw of-a-stone near he-occupies a-castle
supererigit miro labore, mira anxietate, si trabes
builds-on-it with-wondrous labor with-wondrous anxiety if beams
juncti clausuris non erigerentur contra, fundibulariorum,
joined with-enclosures not were-raised against of-slingers
balistariorum, sagittariorum emissa pericula sustinentes:
of-crossbowmen of-archers the-sent perils enduring
gravissime quidem, cum qui eos angebant, infra septa
most-grievously indeed since those-who them distressed within the-fences
castri securi, extra jaculantes, nullam meriti mali
of-the-castle safe outside hurling no of-deserved ill
hostium horrerent vicissitudinem. Flagrat æmula victoriæ
of-the-enemies dreaded requital blazes emulous of-victory

interiorum et exteriorum periculosa concertatio, et qui læsi
of-those-inside and of-those-outside the-perilous contest and who hurt
fuerant regii quirites, acerrime lædere, injuriarum memores,
had-been the-royal warriors most-fiercely to-hurt of-injuries mindful
contendunt, nec ab incœpto desistunt, donec subitam ac
strive nor from the-begun they-desist until the-sudden as
si fatatam munitionem, multo milite, multa armatura
if fated fortification with-many a-knight with-much armor
munierunt: certi, mox ut recesserit rex, aut loci
they-fortified certain soon as should-withdraw the-king either of-the-place
proximi importunitate se audacissime defendere, aut
near by-the-difficulty themselves most-boldly to-defend or
hostium sævissimo gladio miserrime interire.
of-the-enemies by-the-most-savage sword most-wretchedly to-perish
Rediens itaque Tauriacum, viresque recolligens, alendo
returning and-so to-Toury and-strength regathering for-feeding
exercitui in præfata mota, modo clam cum paucis, modo
the-army in the-aforesaid motte now secretly with few now
palam cum multis, per medias hostium acies victualia
openly with many through the-midst of-the-enemies lines provisions
tam periculose quam audacter deferebat: donec, quia
as perilously as boldly he-carried until because
Puteolenses propinquitatis importunitate eos intolerabiliter
the-men-of-Le-Puiset of-the-nearness by-the-trouble them unbearably
urgentes obsidionem minabantur, rex cominus castra movit,
pressing siege threatened the-king close-at-hand camp moved
Yonis Villam fere uno milliario Puteolo propinquam occupat,
Jan- -ville almost by-one mile to-Le-Puiset near he-occupies
inopinate palo et vimine curiam interiorem cingit. Dumque
unexpectedly with-stakes and wicker the-court inner he-girds and-while
exercitus extra tentoria figit, palatinus comes Theobaldus,
the-army outside tents pitches the-palatine count Theobald

collecto quantocumque potuit et suorum et Normannorum
gathered as-much-as he-could both of-his-own and of-the-Normans
exercitus robore, impetu validissimo in eos irruit imparatos,
of-army strength with-an-onset most-powerful upon them rushes unprepared
necdum munitos tam repellere quam prosternere animatur.
not-yet fortified as-much to-repel as to-lay-low he-is-spirited
Cui cum rex armatus extra obviasset, vicissim in campo
whom when the-king armed outside had-met by-turns in the-field
gravissime dimicatur, indifferenter tam lanceis quam
most-heavily it-is-fought indiscriminately as-much with-lances as
gladiis; potius de victoria quam de vita agitur, de trophæo
swords rather of victory than of life it-is-dealt of the-trophy
quam de morte consulitur. Ubi mirabilis audaciæ videres
than of death it-is-considered where of-wondrous daring you-might-see
experimentum: quoniam cum exercitus comitis, ter tantum
a-proof since when the-army of-the-count thrice as-great
exercitu regis numerosior, milites regis in villam
than-the-army of-the-king more-numerous the-knights of-the-king into the-village
retrusissent, rex ipse cum paucis, videlicet nobilissimo comite
had-thrust-back the-king himself with few namely the-most-noble count
Viromandensi Radulfo consanguineo suo, Drogone Montiacensi,
of-Vermandois Ralph kinsman his Drogo of-Mouchy
duobus aut tribus aliis, dedignatus villam timore regredi,
two or three others disdaining into-the-village through-fear to-go-back
memor pristinæ virtutis, elegit hostium impetus armatorum
mindful of-former valor chose of-the-enemies the-onsets of-armed-men
gravissimos et pene innumerabiles sustinere ictus, quam si
most-heavy and almost countless to-withstand blows than if
coactus villam intrare cogatur, propriæ strenuitati et regis
compelled the-village to-enter he-be-forced from-his-own vigor and of-the-king
excellentiæ derogare. Cumque comes Theobaldus, jam se
from-the-excellence to-detract and-when count Theobald already himself

victorem arbitratus, tentoria præfati Viromandensis comitis
victor thinking the-tents of-the-aforesaid of-Vermandois count
detruncare multa audacia inniteretur, assistit ei comes
to-cut-down with-much daring was-striving stands-against him the-count
mira velocitate qui ei improperans nunquam hactenus
with-wondrous speed who to-him reproaching never hitherto
Brienses contra Viromandenses talia præsumpsisse,
the-men-of-Brie against the-men-of-Vermandois such-things to-have-presumed
irruit in eum, multoque conatu illatæ injuriæ vicem
rushes upon him and-with-much effort of-the-inflicted injury the-return
rependens, fortissime repellit. Cujus tam virtute quam
paying most-strongly drives-back whose as-much by-valor as
clamore regii exhilarati quirites, in eos insiliunt, toto
by-shout the-royal gladdened warriors upon them leap with-whole
animo eorum sanguinem sitientes aggrediuntur, cædunt,
mind their blood thirsting they-attack they-cut-down
dehonestant, et usque Puteolum, etiam si porta sorderet,
they-dishonor and right-up-to Le-Puiset even if the-gate were-foul
multis eorum retentis, pluribus interemptis, coactos retruserunt:
many of-them held more slain compelled they-thrust-back
et ut se habet belli dubius eventus, qui prius se
and as itself has of-war the-doubtful outcome who before themselves
victores arbitrabantur, erubescunt victos, dolent captos,
victors thought blush the-conquered they-grieve-for the-captured
deplorant interemptos. Cumque rex deinceps in eos
they-lament the-slain and-when the-king thereafter against them
prævaleret, comes autem, tanquam de summo rotæ
prevailed the-count moreover as from the-top of-the-wheel
exorbitans, declinando deficeret, post longam sui et
swerving by-declining was-failing after long of-himself and
suorum defatigationem, post intolerabilem et consumptivam
of-his-men weariness after unbearable and consuming

suî suorumque depressionem, quoniam quotidie regis
of-himself and-of-his-men depression since daily of-the-king
et suorum invalescebat fortitudo et regni optimatum
and of-his-men grew-strong the-strength and of-the-kingdom of-the-magnates
in comitem indignantium frequentatio, præfatus comes,
against the-count indignant the-thronging the-aforesaid count
nactus recedendi occasionem hesterni vulneris susceptione,
having-got of-withdrawing the-occasion of-yesterday's wound by-the-receiving
regi nuntios delegat, intercessores mittit, ut eum dominus
to-the-king envoys he-delegates intercessors sends that him the-lord
rex secure Carnotum redire concedat suppliciter efflagitat.
king securely to-Chartres to-return allow suppliantly he-begs
Cujus petitioni rex, ut erat dulcis et ultra humanam
whose to-petition the-king as he-was sweet and beyond human
opinionem mansuetus, condescendens, cum multi dissuaderent
opinion gentle condescending though many dissuaded
ne hostem illaqueatum victualibus deficientibus dimitteret,
lest the-enemy ensnared provisions failing he-let-go
ne deinceps repetitas injurias sustineret; relicto tam castro
lest thereafter repeated injuries he-endure left as-much the-castle
Puteolo quam Hugone arbitrio regis, comes Carnotum
Le-Puiset as Hugh to-the-judgment of-the-king the-count to-Chartres
spe vana frustratus recessit, et quod felici principio
in-hope vain frustrated withdrew and what with-happy beginning
incœpit, infausto fine terminavit. Rex vero non tantum
he-began with-unlucky end he-ended the-king but not only
Hugonem Puteolensem exhæredavit; quin etiam castrum
Hugh of-Le-Puiset disinherited but also the-castle
Puteoli, dirutis mœniis et effossis puteis, tanquam locum
of-Le-Puiset demolished walls and dug-out wells as a-place
divinæ maledictioni patulum, subvertens deplanavit.
to-divine curse open overturning he-leveled

De reciproca ejus proditione

21 · HUGH'S LAST TREACHERY

Restored to favor, Hugh rebels again and pierces the seneschal Anseau of Garlande with his own lance. Besieged and disinherited once more, he never unlearns his treachery until he dies on the road to Jerusalem.

Sed et alia vice, longo post tempore, cum in gratiam
but also on-another occasion long after a-time when into the-favor
regis multis obsidibus, multis sacramentis reductus
of-the-king with-many hostages with-many oaths brought-back
esset, iterata fraude recalcitrans,
he-had-been with-repeated fraud kicking-back

Et docilis Scillam scelerum vicisse magistrum,
and apt Sulla of-crimes to-have-surpassed the-master

iterato a rege obsessus, iterato exhæredatus, cum dapiferum
again by the-king besieged again disinherited when the-seneschal
ejus Ansellum Garlandensem, baronem strenuum, propria
his Anseau of-Garlande a-baron vigorous with-his-own
lancea perforasset, nativam et assuetam dediscere proditionem
lance he-had-pierced native and accustomed to-unlearn treachery
non valuit: donec via Hierosolymitana, sicut et multorum
not he-could until on-the-way to-Jerusalem as also of-many
nequam aliorum, ejus omni veneno inflammatam nequitiam
wicked others his with-all poison inflamed wickedness
vitæ ereptione extinxit.
of-life by-the-snatching-away extinguished

The magnates of the realm make peace between the kings and Theobald, and the barons who had conspired against the crown lose what they hoped to gain: Lancelin his claim to the Beauvais safe-conduct, Payen his claim to Livry, and Milo his marriage to Theobald's sister.

Cum igitur ad pacis confœderationem inter regem Angliæ
when therefore to of-peace the-alliance between the-king of-England
et regem Galliæ et comitem Theobaldum tam regni
and the-king of-Gaul and count Theobald as-much of-the-kingdom
optimates quam religiosi viri operam commodarent, justo
the-magnates as religious men effort lent by-the-just
eorum arbitrio, qui contra regnum conspirantes ad
their judgment (those)-who against the-kingdom conspiring for
propriarum recuperationem querelarum tam regem Angliæ
of-their-own the-recovery claims as-much the-king of-England
quam comitem Theobaldum obligaverant, guerra consumpti,
as count Theobald had-bound by-war consumed
pace nihil lucrantes, quid fecerint digna tandem sententia
by-peace nothing gaining what they-had-done by-a-worthy at-last sentence
animadvertunt: cum Lancelinus comes Domni Martini querelam
perceive since Lancelin count of-Dam- -martin the-claim
Belvacensis conductus sine spe recuperandi amiserit; Paganus
of-the-Beauvais safe-conduct without hope of-recovering lost Payen
de Monte Gaio, querela castri Livriaci deceptus, cum uno
of Mont- -jay in-the-claim of-the-castle of-Livry deceived since in-one
mense idem castrum clausura dirutum, sequente vero multo
month the-same castle in-its-enclosure destroyed following but much
fortius pecunia regis Anglici restitutum præcordialiter
stronger with-the-money of-the-king English restored heartily

doluerit; Milo vero de Monte Leherii gratissimum de sorore
he-grieved Milo but of Mont- -lhéry the-most-welcome with the-sister
comitis conjugium occasione parentelæ dolens et gemebundus
of-the-count marriage on-the-occasion of-kinship grieving and groaning
amis[er]it, nec tam honoris et gaudii in receptione quantum
lost nor so-much of-honor and joy in the-receiving as
in divortio dehonestationis et tristitiæ suscep[er]it. Quod
in the-divorce of-dishonor and sorrow he-received which
quidem egregie factum virorum judicio ex ea canonum
indeed excellently done of-men by-the-judgment from that of-the-canons
auctoritate assumptum est, ubi hæc habetur sententia:
authority taken was where this is-held sentence
Obligationes contra pacem in irritum omnino reducantur.
obligations against peace into nullity wholly let-them-be-brought

23 · THOMAS OF MARLE AND CRÉCY

Thomas of Marle ravages the Laonnois and the lands of Amiens and Reims. A council at Beauvais excommunicates him, and Louis storms his castles of Crécy and Nouvion, hangs the murderers of Bishop Gaudry, and besieges and razes the tower of Amiens.

Quia fortissima regum dextera, officii jure votivo,
because by-the-most-strong of-kings right-hand of-office by-right by-the-wished-for
reprimitur tyrannorum audacia, quotiens eos guerris lacessiri
is-checked of-tyrants the-daring as-often-as them by-wars to-be-harassed
vident infinite, gratulantur rapere, pauperes confundere,
they-see endlessly they-rejoice to-plunder the-poor to-confound
ecclesias destruere, interpolata licentia qua, si liceret,
the-churches to-destroy interrupted license by-which if it-were-allowed
semper insanius inflammantur; malignorum instar spirituum,
always more-madly they-are-inflamed of-evil like spirits

qui quos timent perdere magis trucidant, quos sperant
who whom they-fear to-lose more they-slaughter whom they-hope
retinere omnino fovent, fomenta flammis apponunt, ut
to-keep wholly they-cherish tinder to-flames they-apply that
infinite crudelius devorent.
endlessly more-cruelly they-may-devour
Thomas siquidem de Marna, homo perditissimus, Ludovico
Thomas indeed of Marle a-man most-abandoned Louis
rege supradictis et multis aliis guerris attendente,
the-king to-the-above-said and many other wars attending
pagum Laudunensen, Remensem, Ambianensem, diabolo ei
the-district of-Laon of-Reims of-Amiens the-devil him
prosperante, quia stultorum prosperitas eos perdere consuevit,
prospering because of-fools the-prosperity them to-destroy is-wont
usque adeo dilapidaverat, furore lupino devoraverat, ut
so far had-wasted with-fury wolfish had-devoured that
nec clero, ecclesiasticæ ultionis timore, nec populo aliqua
neither the-clergy of-ecclesiastical vengeance from-fear nor the-people with-any
humanitate pepercerit; omnia trucidans, omnia perdens, etiam
humanity he-spared all-things slaughtering all-things destroying even
sancti Joannis Laudunensis monasterio sanctimonialium
of-Saint John of-Laon from-the-monastery of-nuns
duas villas peroptimas eripuerit; fortissima castella Creciacum
two villages very-excellent he-snatched the-strongest castles Crécy
et Novigentum, vallo mirabili, altis etiam turribus,
and Nouvion with-a-rampart wonderful with-high also towers
tanquam propria munierit; et sicut draconum cubile et
as his-own he-fortified and as of-dragons a-lair and
speluncam latronum adaptans, totam fere terram tam
a-den of-robbers fitting the-whole almost land as-much
rapinis quam incendiis immisericorditer exposuerit. Cujus
to-plunderings as to-burnings mercilessly exposed whose

intolerabili fatigata molestia, cum sederet Belvaci generali
by-unbearable wearied trouble when sat at-Beauvais in-general
conventu gallicana ecclesia, ut in hostes veri sponsi
assembly the-Gallic church that against the-enemies of-the-true bridegroom
Jesu Christi hic etiam judicii primordia et damnativam
Jesus Christ here also of-judgment the-beginnings and damning
promulgare incipiat sententiam, venerabilis sanctæ romanæ
to-promulgate it-might-begin sentence the-venerable of-the-holy Roman
ecclesiæ legatus Cono Prænestinus episcopus, innumerarum
church legate Cono of-Palestrina bishop of-countless
pulsatus molestia querelarum, ecclesiarum, pauperum et
struck by-the-trouble complaints of-churches of-the-poor and
orphanorum, devexationum ejus tyrannidem mucrone beati
orphans of-harassments his tyranny with-the-sword of-blessed
Petri, anathemate scilicet generali, detruncans, cingulum
Peter with-anathema namely general cutting-down the-belt
militarem ei licet absenti decingit, ab omni honore
military from-him though absent ungirds from every honor
tanquam sceleratum, infamatum, christiani nominis inimicum,
as wicked infamous of-the-Christian name the-enemy
omnium judicio deponit. Tanti itaque concilii rex
of-all by-the-judgment deposes of-so-great and-so council the-king
exoratus deploratione, citissime in eum movet exercitum; et
prevailed-on by-the-lament most-quickly against him moves an-army and
clero, cui semper humillime hærebat, comitatus, Creciacum
by-the-clergy to-which always most-humbly he-clung accompanied to-Crécy
munitissimum castrum divertit, armatorum potentissima
the-most-fortified castle he-turns of-armed-men with-a-most-powerful
manu, quin potius divina, inopinate castrum occupat,
band nay rather with-a-divine unexpectedly the-castle he-seizes
turrim fortissimam ac si rusticanum tugurium expugnat,
the-tower strongest as if a-rustic hut he-storms

sceleratos confundit, impios pie trucidat, et quos, quia
the-wicked he-confounds the-impious piously slaughters and whom because
immisericordes offendit, immisericorditer detruncat. Videres
merciless he-found mercilessly he-cuts-down you-would-see
castrum ac si igne conflari infernali, ut fateri non
the-castle as if by-fire to-be-consumed infernal so-that to-confess not
differres: Pugnabit pro eo orbis terrarum contra insensatos.
you-would-delay shall-fight for him the-world of-lands against the-senseless
Hac igitur potitus victoria, successus urgere suos promptus,
this therefore having-won victory successes to-press his ready
cum ad aliud castrum nomine Novigentum tetendisset, adest
when to another castle by-name Nouvion he-had-made-for is-present
qui ei referat: «Noverit Serenitas tua, domine mi rex,
(one)-who to-him may-report let-know Serenity your lord my king
in hoc scelerato castro sceleratissimos illos demorari, qui solo
in this wicked castle most-wicked those to-dwell who alone
inferorum loco digni erant; illi, inquam, qui occasione
of-the-underworld of-the-place worthy were those I-say who on-the-occasion
jussu vestro amissæ communiæ, non solum civitatem
by-order your of-the-lost commune not only the-city
Laudunensem, sed et nobilem matris Domini cum multis
of-Laon but also the-noble of-the-mother of-the-Lord with many
aliis ecclesiam igne succenderunt, nobiles civitatis fere omnes,
other church with-fire set-alight the-nobles of-the-city almost all
eo quod vera fide suffragari domino suo innitebantur
by-this that with-true faith to-support lord their they-strove
episcopo, tam causa quam pœna martyrisaverunt, ipsum
the-bishop as-much in-cause as in-penalty they-martyred the-very
episcopum Galdricum venerabilem ecclesiæ defensorem, non
bishop Gaudry the-venerable of-the-church defender not
veriti manum mittere in Christum Domini, crudelissime
fearing a-hand to-lay upon the-Anointed of-the-Lord most-cruelly

interfecerunt, bestiis nudum et avibus in platea exposuerunt,
they-killed to-beasts naked and to-birds in the-street they-exposed
digitum cum annulo pontificali truncaverunt, et cum ipso
the-finger with the-ring pontifical they-cut-off and with the-very
suo nequissimo persuasore Thoma turrim vestram ad vestrî
their most-wicked persuader Thomas the-tower your for of-you
exhæredationem occupare concertaverunt.» Dupliciter ergo
the-disinheritance to-seize they-contended doubly therefore
rex animatus, sceleratum aggreditur castrum, disrumpit instar
the-king roused the-wicked attacks castle breaks-up like
inferorum pœnalia et sacrilega loca, innocentes dimittens et
of-the-underworld penal and sacrilegious places the-innocent letting-go and
noxios gravissime puniens. Unus multorum injurias ulciscitur,
the-guilty most-heavily punishing one-man of-many the-injuries avenges
quoscumque homicidarum nequissimorum offendit, justitiæ
whomever of-the-murderers most-wicked he-found of-justice
sitibundus, milvorum, corvorum et vulturum rapacitati pastum
thirsty of-kites of-crows and of-vultures to-the-greed food
generalem exhibens, et patibulo affigi præcipiens, quid
general providing and to-the-gibbet to-be-fixed ordering what
mereantur qui in Christum Domini manum mittere non
they-deserve who upon the-Anointed of-the-Lord a-hand to-lay not
verentur edocuit. Subversis igitur adulterinis castellis, easdem
fear he-taught overturned therefore the-unlicensed castles the-same
villas sancto Johanni restituens, civitatem Ambianensem
villages to-Saint John restoring the-city of-Amiens
regressus, turrim ejusdem civitatis Adæ cujusdam tyranni,
having-returned-to the-tower of-the-same city of-Adam a-certain tyrant
ecclesias et totam viciniam dilapidantem, obsedit: quam
the-churches and the-whole neighborhood wasting he-besieged which
fere biennali coarctans obsidione, ad deditionem defensores
almost by-a-two-year pressing siege to surrender the-defenders

cogens, expugnavit, expugnatam funditus subvertit, ejusque
compelling he-stormed stormed utterly he-overturned and-its
subversione pacem patriæ, regis fungens officio qui
by-the-overturning the-peace of-the-country of-a-king discharging the-office who
non sine causa gladium portat, gratantissime reformavit, et
not without cause the-sword bears most-gladly restored and
tam ipsum præfatum Thomam nequissimum quam suos
as-much the-very aforesaid Thomas most-wicked as his-men
dominio ejusdem civitatis perpetualiter exhæredavit.
from-the-lordship of-the-same city perpetually disinherited

24 · AIMO OF BOURBON

Alard of Guillebaud complains that Aimo Vaire-Vache of Bourbon has disinherited his nephew, Alard's stepson. Aimo refuses justice, and the king besieges Germigny; Aimo falls at his feet, and the suit is settled by the Franks' judgment or by agreement.

Ne igitur quacumque terrarum parte locorum angustiis
lest therefore in-whatever of-lands part of-places by-the-narrownesses
virtus regia coarctari videatur (scitur enim longas regibus
the-valor royal to-be-confined seem it-is-known for long to-kings
esse manus), accelerat ad eum de finibus Bituricensium vir
to-be hands hastens to him from the-borders of-the-men-of-Bourges a-man
peritus linguæque venalis, Alardus Guillebaldi: qui satis rhetorice
skilled and-of-tongue venal Alard of-Guillebaud who rather rhetorically
privigni sui querelam deponens, domino regi humillime
of-stepson his the-complaint laying-down to-the-lord king most-humbly
supplicat, rogans quatinus nobilem baronem Haimonem
supplicates asking that the-noble baron Aimo
nomine, Variam Vaccam cognomine, Burbonensem dominum,
by-name the-Spotted Cow by-surname of-Bourbon the-lord

justitiam recusantem, imperialiter in jus traheret; nepotem
justice refusing imperially into court he-should-drag the-nephew
majoris fratris, Erchembaldi scilicet filium, exhæredantem
of-the-elder brother Archambaud namely the-son disinheriting
tam præsumptuosa audacia compesceret; et Francorum
so with-presumptuous daring he-should-restrain and of-the-Franks
judicio, eorum quis quid habere debeat, determinaret
by-the-judgment of-them who what to-have ought he-should-determine
Rex itaque tam amore justitiæ quam ecclesiarum et
the-king and-so as-much by-love of-justice as of-the-churches and
pauperum miseratione, ne hac occasione guerrarum malitia
of-the-poor by-pity lest on-this occasion of-wars the-malice
pullulante pauperes devexati alienæ superbiæ luerent pœnam,
sprouting the-poor harassed of-another's pride should-pay the-penalty
cum præfatum Haimonem frustra in causam vocari
when the-aforesaid Aimo in-vain into court to-be-summoned
fecisset (recusabat enim, de justitia diffidens), nulla
he-had-caused he-refused for of justice distrusting by-no
remissus voluptate aut pigritia, ad partes Biturícensium cum
relaxed pleasure or sloth to the-parts of-the-men-of-Bourges with
exercitu multo tetendit, Germiniacum ejusdem Haimonis
an-army great he-made-for Germigny of-the-same Aimo
munitissimum castrum divertens, multo conflictu impugnare
the-most-fortified castle turning-aside with-much conflict to-assail
contendit. Videns autem præfatus Haimo nullo modo se
he-strove seeing moreover the-aforesaid Aimo in-no way himself
posse resistere, jam et personæ et castri spe sublata,
to-be-able to-resist already both for-(his)-person and for-the-castle hope taken-away
hanc solam salutis suæ reperiens viam, pedibus domini regis
this only of-safety his finding way at-the-feet of-the-lord king
prostratus et multorum admiratione sæpius revolutus, ut
prostrate and of-many to-the-wonder more-often rolled-over that

in eum misericorditer ageret efflagitans, castrum reddit,
toward him mercifully he-would-act begging the-castle surrenders
seipsum regiæ majestatis arbitrio totum exponit, et
himself of-royal majesty to-the-judgment wholly exposes and
quanto superbius se subduxerat tanto humilius, his
by-how-much more-proudly himself he-had-withdrawn by-so-much more-humbly by-these
edoctus, justitiæ se reduxit. Rex vero retento castro,
taught to-justice himself he-brought-back the-king but kept the-castle
et eodem Haimone in Francia causæ reducto, Francorum
and the-same Aimo into France to-the-case brought-back of-the-Franks
judicio aut concordia, avunculi et nepotis litem tam justissime
by-judgment or by-agreement of-uncle and nephew the-suit as most-justly
quam piissime diremit, multorumque oppressiones et labores
as most-piously settled and-of-many the-oppressions and toils
sumptuoso sudore consumpsit. Hæc et his similia in partibus
with-costly sweat he-ended these and to-these similar in parts
illis crebro clementissime pro quiete ecclesiarum et pauperum
those often most-mercifully for the-quiet of-the-churches and of-the-poor
patrare consuevit: quæ, quia si stylo traderentur
to-perform he-was-accustomed which because if by-the-pen they-were-handed-down
tædium generarent, supersedere dignum duximus.
tedium they-would-breed to-pass-over fitting we-have-thought

Henry of England and Theobald war on the king again. Louis takes Gasny on the Epte by a stratagem and razes Henry's new castle of Malassis. Henry, beset by his own barons and by a plot in his chamber, recovers when Baldwin of Flanders and Enguerrand of Chaumont die and Fulk of Anjou goes over to him, and he routs Louis's army. Louis returns with a vast army, burns Ivry, reaches Breteuil, and spares Chartres at the clergy's plea.

Habet effrenis elatio hoc amplius superbia, ut cum hæc
has unbridled arrogance this more than-pride that while this
superioritatem, illa nihilominus dedignetur paritatem. Cui
superiority that nonetheless disdains equality to-which
illud convenit poeticum:
that fits poetic-line

Nec quemquam sufferre potest Cæsarve priorem,
nor anyone to-endure can or-Caesar as-superior
Pompeiusve parem.
or-Pompey an-equal

Et quoniam omnis potestas impatiens consortis erit, rex
and since every power impatient of-a-partner shall-be the-king
Francorum Ludovicus, ea qua supereminebat regi
of-the-Franks Louis with-that by-which be-towered-over the-king
Anglorum ducique Normannorum Henrico sublimitate, in
of-the-English and-duke of-the-Normans Henry loftiness against
eum semper tanquam in feodatum suum efferebatur. Rex
him always as against vassal his was-lifted-up the-king
vero Anglorum, et regni nobilitate et divitiarum opulentia
but of-the-English both of-the-kingdom by-the-nobility and of-riches by-the-wealth
mirabili inferioritatis impatiens, suffragio nepotis Theobaldi
wonderful of-inferiority impatient with-the-support of-his-nephew Theobald

palatini comitis et multorum regni æmulorum, ut ejus
palatine count and of-many of-the-kingdom rivals that his
dominio derogaret, regnum commovere, regem turbare
from-the-lordship he-might-detract the-kingdom to-stir-up the-king to-disturb
nitebatur. Reciprocatur igitur inter eos antiquarum guerrarum
strove is-returned therefore between them of-ancient wars
recidiva malitia, dum rex Angliæ cum comite Theobaldo,
the-relapsing malice while the-king of-England with count Theobald
quoniam eos Normannici et Carnotensis pagi concopulabat
since them of-the-Norman and Chartres district joined
affinitas, proximam regis marchiam impugnare concertant;
the-neighborhood the-nearest of-the-king march to-assail contend
comitem Moritoilensem Stephanum, alterius fratrem, alterius
count of-Mortain Stephen of-the-one the-brother of-the-other
nepotem, ad alias partes, videlicet Briensium, cum exercitu
the-nephew to other parts namely of-the-men-of-Brie with an-army
transmittunt, formidantes ne absentia comitis terram
they-send-over dreading lest in-the-absence of-the-count land
illam subito rex occuparet. Qui nec Normannis, nec
that suddenly the-king might-seize who neither the-Normans nor
Carnotensibus, nec etiam Briensibus parcere sustinebat, cum
the-men-of-Chartres nor even the-men-of-Brie to-spare endured since
in utrorumque medio tanquam in circino positus, modo
in of-both the-middle as in a-compass placed now
in istos, modo in illos terrarum dissipatione, crebro
against these now against those of-lands by-the-scattering often
etiam conflictu, regiæ majestatis animositatem declaraverit.
also by-conflict of-royal majesty the-spirit he-declared
Verum quia Normannorum marchia, tam regum Anglorum
but because of-the-Normans the-march as-much of-the-kings of-the-English
quam Normannorum ducum nobili providentia, et novorum
as of-the-Norman dukes by-the-noble foresight and of-new

positione castrorum, et invadabilium fluminum decursu,
by-the-placing castles and of-unfordable rivers by-the-course
extra alias cingebatur, rex, quia his callebat, transitum
beyond others was-girded the-king because in-these he-was-skilled passage
in Normanniam sibi affectans, cum pauca militum
into Normandy for-himself seeking with a-small of-knights
manu, ut secretius agendis provideat, ad eandem
band that more-secretly for-things-to-be-done he-may-provide to the-same
marchiam contendens, viros caute præmittit: qui tanquam
march making-for men cautiously sends-ahead who as
viatores, loricati sub cappis et gladiis cincti, publica via
travelers mailed under cloaks and with-swords girded by-the-public road
descendentes, ad villam quæ dicitur Vadum Nigasii, villam
going-down to the-village which is-called Gas- -ny a-village
antiquam, patulum et gratum Francis præbere paratam ad
ancient open and pleasing to-the-Franks to-offer ready to
Normannos accessum (quæ, Ettæ fluvio circumfluente, cum in
the-Normans access which the-Epte river flowing-round since in
medio suî tutum præbeat, extra inferius et superius longe
the-middle of-itself safe it-offers outside below and above far
prohibet transitum), subito cappas deponunt, gladios exponunt,
forbids passage suddenly cloaks they-lay-aside swords they-bare
accolas animadvertentes et armis gravissime insistentes
the-inhabitants noticing and with-arms most-heavily pressing
fortissime resistendo repellunt; cum subito rex jam
most-strongly by-resisting they-drive-back when suddenly the-king to-the-already
pene lassatis, per declivum montis periculose accelerans,
almost wearied down the-slope of-the-hill perilously hastening
opem opportunam ferre præcipitat, tam villæ atrium
help timely to-bring rushes as-much of-the-village the-court
quam munitam turre ecclesiam, non sine suorum damno,
as the-fortified with-a-tower church not without of-his-men loss

occupat. Cumque regem Angliæ prope cum exercitu multo, ut
he-seizes and-when the-king of-England near with an-army great as
semper consuevit, comperisset, barones suos asciscit, adjurando
always he-was-wont he-had-learned the-barons his he-summons by-adjuring
ut se sequantur invitat. Adventare festinant comes Flandriæ
that him they-follow invites to-come hasten count of-Flanders
Balduinus, apprime militaris, elegans juvenis et facetus,
Baldwin exceedingly soldierly an-elegant youth and polished
comes Andegavensis Fulco, multique regni optimates, qui,
count of-Anjou Fulk and-many of-the-kingdom magnates who
rupta Normanniæ clausura, dum alii villam muniunt, alii
broken of-Normandy the-barrier while some the-village fortify others
terram, longa pace opimam, tam rapinis quam incendiis
the-land by-long peace rich as-much to-plunderings as to-burnings
exponunt, et, quod insolitum fuerat, præsente rege
expose and what unwonted had-been in-the-presence-of the-king
Anglorum, circumquaque devastantes intolerabiliter confundunt.
of-the-English round-about devastating unbearably confound
Interea idem rex Angliæ castelli apparatum multa instantia
meanwhile the-same king of-England of-a-castle the-equipment with-much urgency
præparat, operosos sollicitat, et dum rex suum præsidio
prepares the-workmen urges and while the-king his with-a-garrison
militum munitum relinquit, ipse suum proximo monte
of-knights fortified leaves he-himself his on-the-nearest hill
erigit castrum, ut exinde militari copia, balistariorum et
raises castle that thence by-military force of-crossbowmen and
sagittariorum repulsione, et cibaria terræ eis excuteret,
archers by-repulse both the-food of-the-land from-them he-might-shake
et pro his terram suam jugi necessitate confundere
and for these the-land their by-constant necessity to-confound
coarctaret. Cui rex Francorum jaculata retorquens,
he-might-force to-whom the-king of-the-Franks the-hurled-things turning-back

absque mora vicem reddit; cum subito collecto exercitu, sicut
without delay the-turn returns when suddenly gathered an-army as
qui tesseris ludit, in aurora remeans, novum illud castrum,
(one)-who with-dice plays at dawn returning new that castle
quod vulgo nominabatur Malesessum, virtuose aggreditur,
which commonly was-named Malassis valiantly he-attacks
multo conatu, multa gravissimorum ictuum donatione et
with-much effort by-much of-most-heavy blows the-giving and
receptione (tali enim foro tale vulgo solvitur theloneum)
receiving at-such for a-market such commonly is-paid toll
viriliter suppeditat, diripit et pessundat, et ad regni
manfully he-overpowers tears-apart and ruins and to of-the-kingdom
excellentiam et oppositi contumeliam quicquid machinatum
the-excellence and of-the-opponent the-insult whatever contrived
inde fuerat vera virtute dissolvit. Et quoniam nulli fortuna
thence had-been with-true valor he-dissolved and since no-one fortune
aliquando parcit potestativa, cum dicatur:
ever spares powerful as it-is-said

Si fortuna volet, fies de rhetore consul;
if fortune shall-wish you-shall-become from rhetorician consul
Si volet hæc eadem, fies de consule rhetor;
if shall-wish she the-same you-shall-become from consul rhetorician

rex Angliæ, post longos et mirabiles placidissimæ prosperitatis
the-king of-England after long and wonderful of-most-placid prosperity
successus, quasi de summo rotæ descendens, mutabili
successes as-if from the-top of-the-wheel descending by-a-changeable
et infausto rerum angariatur eventu, cum ex hac parte rex
and unlucky of-things is-harassed outcome since on this side the-king
Franciæ, ex parte Pontivorum Flandriæ affinitate
of-France on the-side of-the-men-of-Ponthieu of-Flanders by-the-neighborhood

comes Flandrensis, ex parte Cinomannorum comes Fulco
the-count of-Flanders on the-side of-the-men-of-Maine count Fulk
Andegavensis, omnino eum turbare, omnino eum aggredi,
of-Anjou wholly him to-disturb wholly him to-attack
tota virtute contenderint. Qui nec exteriorum tantum, sed
with-all valor strove who not of-outsiders only but
interiorum hominum suorum, Hugonis videlicet Gornacensis,
of-insiders men his-own of-Hugh namely of-Gournay
comitis Oensis, comitis Albemarlensis et multorum aliorum
of-the-count of-Eu of-the-count of-Aumale and of-many others
lacessiebatur guerrarum injuriis. Qui etiam ad cumulum
was-harassed of-wars by-the-injuries who also to the-heap
mali intestino malitiæ devexabatur dispendio, cum et
of-evil by-the-internal of-malice was-troubled damage since both
camerariorum et cubiculariorum, privata factione perterritus,
of-chamberlains and of-bedchamber-men by-the-private faction terrified
sæpe lectum mutaret, sæpe nocturno timori vigiles armatos
often (his)-bed he-changed often for-the-nightly fear guards armed
multiplicaret, ante se dormientem scutum et gladium omni
he-multiplied before himself sleeping shield and sword every
nocte constitui imperaret. Horum vero unus Henricus nomine
night to-be-set he-commanded of-these but one Henry by-name
familiarium intimus, regis liberalitate ditatus, potens et
of-the-household the-most-intimate of-the-king by-the-liberality enriched powerful and
famosus, famosior proditor, tam horribili factione deprehensus,
famous a-more-famous traitor so in-horrible a-faction caught
oculorum et genitalium amissione, cum laqueum suffocantem
of-the-eyes and of-the-genitals by-the-loss though the-noose suffocating
meruisset, misericorditer est damnatus. His et talibus rex
he-had-deserved mercifully was condemned by-these and such the-king
nusquam securus, nativæ magnanimitatis strenuitate conspicuus,
nowhere secure of-native high-spirit by-the-vigor conspicuous

in arto providus, etiam in ostio gladio cingebatur, nec
in a-strait provident even at the-door with-a-sword was-girded nor
quos fidiores habebat extra domos gladiis se cingi,
whom more-faithful he-held outside the-houses with-swords themselves to-be-girded
quacumque mulcta tanquam ludo, impunitos sustinebat.
by-whatever fine as in-play unpunished he-suffered
Qua tempestate quidam etiam Engerrannus de Calvo
at-which time a-certain also Enguerrand of Chau-
Monte, vir strenuus et cordatus, audacter militari manu
-mont a-man vigorous and sensible boldly with-a-military band
progrediens, castellum cui nomen Andeliacum, quorumdam
advancing the-castle to-which the-name Les-Andelys of-certain-men
factione clam munitis propugnaculis, strenue occupavit,
by-the-faction secretly fortified ramparts vigorously seized
fretusque regis præsidio, occupatum audacissime munivit,
and-relying of-the-king on-the-protection the-seized most-boldly fortified
quo terram usque ad fluvium qui dicitur Andella, a
by-which the-land right-up to the-river which is-called Andelle from
fluvio Ettæ usque etiam ad Pontem-Sancti Petri omnino
the-river Epte right-up also to Pont-Saint- -Pierre wholly
subjacere cogebat. Qui multorum se etiam superiorum
to-be-subject he-forced who of-many himself also superiors
fretus comitatu, ipsi etiam regi in plano occurrebat,
relying on-the-company to-the-very also king in the-plain he-ran-against
redeuntem inreverenter insequebatur, ejusque terra a
him-returning irreverently he-pursued and-his land from
termino supradicto pro sua utebatur. Ex parte etiam
the-boundary above-said as his-own he-used on the-side also
Cinomannorum, cum idem rex obsessis in turre Alenciaci
of-the-men-of-Maine when the-same king to-the-besieged in the-tower of-Alençon
castri præsidia ferre cum comite Theobaldo multa mora
castle aid to-bring with count Theobald with-much delay

decrevisset, a comite Fulcone repulsam referens, et multos
had-decided from count Fulk repulse bringing-back both many
suorum et cum castello, eo inglorius facto, turrim amisit.
of-his-men and with the-castle by-that inglorious deed the-tower lost
Cumque his et talibus multo tempore anxiatus pene in
and-when by-these and such for-much time troubled almost to
imum declinasset, cum jam divina propitiatio dure flagellato
the-bottom he-had-declined when now divine propitiation harshly the-scourged
et aliquantisper castigato (erat enim ecclesiarum liberalis ditator
and for-a-while chastised he-was for of-churches a-liberal enricher
et eleemosynarum dapsilis dispensator, sed lascivus) parcere et
and of-alms a-bountiful dispenser but wanton to-spare and
a tanta eum depressione misericorditer sublevare decrevisset,
from so-great him depression mercifully to-raise had-decided
ex insperato inferioritatis ejus adversitas in summam rotæ
from the-unhoped of-inferiority his adversity to the-top of-the-wheel
prosperitatem subito reducitur; cum et altiores turbatores,
prosperity suddenly is-brought-back when both the-higher disturbers
potius manu divina quam sua, aut supreme declinant aut
rather by-the-hand divine than their-own either utterly decline or
omnino deficiunt, sicut ipsa Divinitas consuevit jam
wholly fail as the-very Divinity is-wont to-the-already
pene desperatis et humano auxilio destitutis misericordiæ
almost despairing and of-human aid destitute of-mercy
dexteram misericorditer extendere. Comes siquidem Flandrensis
the-right-hand mercifully to-stretch-out the-count indeed of-Flanders
Balduinus, cujus gravissima infestatione graviter idem rex
Baldwin whose by-most-heavy hostility heavily the-same king
infestabatur, sæpius in Normanniam irruens, cum ad
was-assailed more-often into Normandy rushing when for
debellandum Oense castellum et maritimam viciniam animo
subduing the-Eu castle and the-maritime neighborhood with-mind

effrenis militiæ vacaret, subito, sed raro ictu, in facie
of-unbridled knighthood he-was-free suddenly but by-a-rare blow in the-face
lancea percussus, dedignatus tantilla sibi providere plaga,
by-a-lance struck disdaining for-so-slight himself to-provide wound
mori non dedignatus, non tantum regi Angliæ, sed omnibus
to-die not disdaining not only the-king of-England but all
deinceps, finem faciens, parcere elegit. Præfatus itaque
thereafter an-end making to-spare chose the-aforesaid and-so
Engerrannus de Calvo Monte, vir audacissimus et ejusdem
Enguerrand of Chau- -mont a-man most-daring and of-the-same
regis infestator præsumptuosus, cum beatæ Mariæ matris
king a-harasser presumptuous when of-blessed Mary mother
Domini Rothomagensis archiepiscopatus terram destructum
of-the-Lord of-the-Rouen archbishopric the-land destroyed
iri non obhorreret, gravissimo tactus morbo, post longam
to-be not shrank-from by-most-grievous touched disease after long
suî exagitationem, post longam et intolerabilem proprii
of-himself tossing after long and unbearable of-his-own
corporis meritam molestiam, quid reginæ cœlorum debeatur
body deserved trouble what to-the-queen of-the-heavens is-owed
licet sero addiscens, vita decessit. Comes etiam Andegavensis
though late learning from-life departed the-count also of-Anjou
Fulco, cum et proprio hominio et multis sacramentis,
Fulk though both by-his-own homage and by-many oaths
obsidum etiam multiplicitate regi Ludovico confœderatus
of-hostages also by-the-multitude to-king Louis allied
esset, avaritiam fidelitati præponens, inconsulto rege, perfidia
he-was avarice to-fidelity preferring unconsulted the-king with-perfidy
infamatus, filiam suam regis Anglici filio Guillelmo
defamed daughter his of-the-king English to-the-son William

nuptui tradidit, et compactas sacramento inimicitias, tali
in-marriage gave and the-compacted by-oath enmities by-such
cum eo amicitiæ conjunctus copula, fraudulentus dissolvit.
with him of-friendship joined bond fraudulent dissolved
Rex itaque Ludovicus, cum terram Normanniæ ea de
the-king and-so Louis when the-land of-Normandy on-that from
parte in conspectu suo silere coegisset, modo multa,
side in sight his to-be-silent had-forced now with-a-large
modo pauca manu, indifferenter rapinis eam exponebat,
now with-a-small band indiscriminately to-plunderings it he-exposed
tam regem quam suos longa devexationis consuetudine
as-much the-king as his-men by-long of-harassment habit
omnino floccifaciens vilipendebat: cum subito quadam die
wholly holding-of-no-account he-despised when suddenly on-a-certain day
rex Angliæ, collectis multorum viribus, speculatus regis
the-king of-England gathered of-many the-forces having-spied of-the-king
Francorum improvidam audaciam, ordinatas militum acies
of-the-Franks the-improvident daring ordered of-knights lines
occulte in eum dirigit; incendia, ut in eum extraordinarie
secretly against him directs burnings that upon him out-of-order
insiliant, ponit; milites armatos, ut fortius committant,
they-may-leap he-places knights armed that more-strongly they-may-engage
pedites deponit; quacumque belli cautela sibi providere
on-foot he-sets-down with-whatever of-war caution for-himself to-provide
potest, sagaciter satagit. Rex autem cum suis, nullum
he-can shrewdly he-busies-himself the-king moreover with his-men no
prælii constituere dignatus apparatum, in eos indiscrete
of-battle to-set-up deigning array against them heedlessly
sed audacissime evolat; cum priores qui dextras applicuerunt
but most-boldly flies-out when the-first who right-hands applied
Vilcassinenses, cum Buchardo Monmorenciacensi et Guidone
the-men-of-the-Vexin with Bouchard of-Montmorency and Guy

Claromontensi, primam Normannorum aciem fortissima
of-Clermont the-first of-the-Normans line with-most-strong
manu cædentes, a campo marte mirabili fugaverunt, et
hand cutting-down from the-field with-valor wondrous put-to-flight and
priores equitum acies super armatos pedites validissima
the-first of-horsemen lines upon the-armed foot-soldiers with-most-powerful
manu repulerunt. Verum qui eos sequi proposuerant Franci
hand drove-back but who them to-follow had-proposed the-Franks
incompositi, extraordinarie ordinatis et compositis aciebus
disordered out-of-order on-the-ordered and composed lines
insistentes, sicut se res in talibus habet, eorum
pressing as itself the-matter in such-things has their
compositam instantiam ferre non valentes, cesserunt. Rex
composed pressure to-bear not able gave-way the-king
autem lapsum admiratus exercitum, ut consueverat in
moreover the-fallen wondering-at army as he-had-been-wont in
adversis, constantiam suî suorumque præsidio armis
adversities constancy of-himself and-of-his-men for-the-protection with-arms
consulens, quam decentius potest, non tamen sine magno
providing as more-fittingly he-can not yet without great
erratici exercitus detrimento, Andeliacum remeavit. Quo
of-the-straggling army loss to-Les-Andelys returned by-which
subiti adventus infortunio aliquantisper levitate propria
of-the-sudden arrival misfortune for-a-while by-the-lightness his-own
læsus, ne diutius hostes insultent, tanquam si ulterius
hurt lest longer the-enemies insult as if further
Normanniam intrare non audeat, solito multo animosior in
Normandy to-enter not he-dare than-usual much more-spirited in
adversis, et, quod tantum virorum est, constantior, exercitum
adversities and what only of-men is more-constant the-army
revocat, absentes asciscit, optimates regni invitat, die
he-recalls the-absent summons the-magnates of-the-kingdom invites on-a-day

certa et terram intrare et certamen celeberrimum inire
fixed both the-land to-enter and a-battle most-famous to-engage
regi Anglorum significat; et quod ei promittit tanquam
to-the-king of-the-English he-signifies and what to-him he-promises as
jurejurando pactum persolvere festinat. Irruens siquidem in
by-oath agreed to-pay hastens rushing indeed into
Normanniam, mirabili exercitu eam depopulando, cum
Normandy with-a-wondrous army it by-laying-waste when
castrum munitissimum quod dicitur Ivriacum, multo congressu
the-castle most-fortified which is-called Ivry by-much fighting
expugnatum, incendio conflari effecisset, Britoilum usque
stormed by-fire to-be-consumed he-had-caused to-Breteuil right
pervenit. Qui aliquantisper in terra demoratus, nec regem
he-came who for-a-while in the-land having-tarried neither the-king
Anglorum videre, nec in quem sufficiat illatam vindicare
of-the-English to-see nor on whom suffices the-inflicted to-avenge
reperiens injuriam, ut etiam in comitem Theobaldum
finding injury that also upon count Theobald
redundaret Carnotum regressus, impetu validissimo
it-might-overflow to-Chartres having-gone-back with-an-onset most-powerful
urbem aggrediens, igne conflagrare concertabat; cum subito
the-city attacking with-fire to-burn he-was-striving when suddenly
tam cleri quam cives, beatæ Dei genitricis camisiam
as-much the-clergy as the-citizens of-the-blessed of-God mother the-shift
præferentes, ut pro ejus amore tanquam Ecclesiæ tutor
carrying-before that for her love as of-the-Church guardian
principalis misericorditer parcat devotissime supplicant, in
principal mercifully he-spare most-devoutly supplicate upon
suos alienam ne ulciscatur injuriam implorant. Quorum
his-own another's lest he-avenge injury they-implore whose
rex supplicationibus regiæ majestatis inclinans celsitudinem,
the-king to-the-supplications of-royal majesty bending the-loftiness

ne nobilis beatæ Mariæ cum civitate igne solveretur
lest the-noble of-blessed Mary with the-city by-fire be-destroyed
ecclesia, comiti Flandrensi Carolo mandat ut exercitum
church to-the-count of-Flanders Charles orders that the-army
revocet, Ecclesiæ amore et timore civitati parcat. Qui cum
he-recall of-the-Church for-love and fear the-city he-spare who when
repatriassent, momentaneum infortunium longa, continua
they-had-returned-home the-momentary misfortune with-long continual
et gravissima ultione punire non desistebant.
and most-heavy vengeance to-punish not ceased

26 · THE POPES GELASIUS AND CALIXTUS; SUGER MADE ABBOT

Pope Gelasius, driven from Rome, flees to France and dies before he can meet the king, and Guy of Vienne is elected as Calixtus, who excommunicates the emperor at Reims; back in Rome the Romans capture and shame the antipope Burdinus. While Suger is in Italy on the king's business, the monks elect him abbot; the king, angered at first, consents, and Suger, blessed at Saint-Denis, credits God with its reform.

Ea tempestate, venerandæ memoriæ summum pontificem
at-that time of-venerable memory the-supreme pontiff
romanum Paschalem ab hac ad lucem perpetuam contigit
Roman Paschal from this to the-light perpetual it-happened
demigrare. Cui cum de Johanne Gaitano cancellario,
to-depart to-whom when from John Gaetani the-chancellor
electione canonica constitutus, papa Gelasius successisset,
by-election canonical appointed pope Gelasius had-succeeded
et cujusdam Burdini depositi Bracarensis archiepiscopi,
and of-a-certain Burdinus deposed of-Braga archbishop
imperatoris Henrici violentia in sedem apostolicam intrusi,
of-the-emperor Henry by-the-violence into the-see apostolic intruded

et populi romani conductitia infestatione intolerabiliter
and of-the-people Roman by-the-hired hostility unbearably
fatigaretur, et a sancta sede eorum tyrannide arceretur; ad
was-wearied and from the-holy see their by-the-tyranny was-kept-off to
tutelam et protectionem serenissimi regis Ludovici et
the-guardianship and protection of-the-most-serene king Louis and
gallicanæ ecclesiæ compassionem, sicut antiquitus consueverunt,
of-the-Gallic church the-compassion as of-old they-were-wont
confugit. Qui cum navali subsidio (pauperie quippe multa
he-fled who when by-naval aid by-poverty indeed much
angebatur) applicuisset Magalonam, arctam in pelago insulam,
he-was-distressed had-put-in at-Maguelonne a-narrow in the-sea island
cui super est solo episcopo, clericis, et rara familia
on-which left is with-only the-bishop clerics and with-scant household
contempta, singularis et privata, muro tamen propter mare
content a-solitary and private with-a-wall yet because-of the-sea
commeantium Sarracenorum impetus munitissima civitas; a
of-crossing Saracens the-onsets most-fortified city from
domino rege, quia jam adventum ejus audierat, destinati
the-lord king because already the-arrival his he-had-heard sent
mandata deposuimus, diem certam locumque Viziliaci mutui
the-commands we-laid-down a-day fixed and-a-place at-Vézelay of-mutual
colloquii, cum ejus benedictione, quia regni primitias
parley with his blessing because of-the-reign the-first-fruits
obtuleramus, gratanter reportavimus. Cui cum dominus
we-had-offered gladly we-brought-back whom when the-lord
rex occurrere maturaret, nuntiatum est eundem summum
king to-meet was-hastening announced it-was the-same supreme
pontificem, podagrico morbo diu laborantem, tam Romanis
pontiff by-the-gouty disease long suffering as-much the-Romans
quam Francis vitæ depositione pepercisse. Cujus apostolicis
as the-Franks of-life by-the-laying-down to-have-spared whose at-apostolic

exequiis cum multi religiosorum virorum et Ecclesiæ
obsequies when many of-religious men and of-the-Church
prælatorum interesse festinassent, astitit virorum venerabilis
prelates to-be-present had-hastened stood-by of-men the-venerable
Guido Viennensis archiepiscopus, imperialis et regiæ celsitudinis
Guy of-Vienne archbishop of-imperial and royal loftiness
dirivativa consanguinitate generosus, multo generosior moribus;
by-derived kinship noble much nobler in-manners
qui cum in somnis proxima nocte, apto satis licet ignoto
who when in sleep the-next night by-an-apt enough though unknown
præsagio, vidisset sibi a persona præpotente lunam sub
presage had-seen to-himself by a-person very-powerful the-moon under
chlamyde repositam committi, ne causa Ecclesiæ Apostolici
a-cloak put-away to-be-entrusted lest the-cause of-the-Church of-the-Apostolic
transitu periclitaretur, ab ea quæ aderat romana ecclesia
by-the-passing be-endangered by that which was-present Roman church
in summum pontificem electus, visionis veritatem enucleatius
as supreme pontiff elected of-the-vision the-truth more-clearly
animadvertit. Sublimatus itaque tantæ celsitudinis dignitate,
perceived exalted and-so of-so-great loftiness by-the-dignity
gloriose, humiliter, sed strenue Ecclesiæ jura disponens,
gloriously humbly but vigorously of-the-Church the-rights ordering
amore et servitio domini Ludovici regis et nobilis Adelaidis
for-love and service of-the-lord Louis king and of-the-noble Adelaide
reginæ neptis [suæ] aptius ecclesiasticis providebat negotiis.
queen niece his more-aptly for-ecclesiastical provided business
Remis itaque celeberrimum celebrans concilium, cum legatis
at-Reims and-so a-most-celebrated celebrating council when with-the-envoys
imperatoris Henrici, pro pace Ecclesiæ sedere differens,
of-the-emperor Henry for the-peace of-the-Church to-sit delaying
in marchiam versus Mosomum occurrisset, nec profecisset,
into the-march toward Mouzon he-had-gone-to-meet nor had-succeeded

quemadmodum et antecessores fecerant, anathematis vinculo,
as also (his)-predecessors had-done of-anathema with-the-bond
pleno Francorum et Lotharingorum concilio, innodavit.
in-full of-the-Franks and of-the-Lorrainers council he-bound-him
Cum autem, ecclesiarum votivis ditatus beneficiis, gloriose
when moreover of-the-churches with-votive enriched benefits gloriously
Romam pervenisset, gloriosa tam cleri quam populi
to-Rome he-had-come with-a-glorious as-much of-the-clergy as of-the-people
romani susceptus receptione, multis antecessorum superior,
Roman received reception than-many of-his-predecessors superior
ecclesiæ curam feliciter administrabat. Nec multam adhuc
of-the-church the-care happily he-administered nor much yet
in sede sancta fecerat moram, cum Romani, ejus tam
in the-see holy had-he-made delay when the-Romans his as-much
nobilitati quam liberalitati faventes, intrusum ab imperatore
nobility as liberality favoring the-intruded by the-emperor
schismaticum Burdinum, apud Sutram sedentem, et ad
schismatic Burdinus at Sutri sitting and to
limina Apostolorum transeuntes clericos genu flectere
the-thresholds of-the-Apostles passing clerics the-knee to-bend
compellentem, expugnatum tenuerunt; tortuoso animali
compelling stormed held on-a-crooked animal
camelo tortuosum antipapam, immo Antichristum, crudis
a-camel the-crooked antipope nay Antichrist in-raw
et sanguinolentis pellibus caprinis amictum, transversum
and bloody skins of-goats clad crosswise
superposuerunt, et ignominiam Ecclesiæ Dei ulciscentes,
they-set and the-disgrace of-the-Church of-God avenging
per medium civitatis via regia, ut magis publicaretur,
through the-middle of-the-city by-the-road royal that more it-might-be-made-public
educentes, imperante domino papa Calixto, perpetuo carcere in
leading-out commanding the-lord pope Calixtus to-perpetual prison in

montanis Campaniæ prope Sanctum Benedictum captivatum
the-mountains of-Campania near Saint Benedict captured
damnaverunt, et ad tantæ ultionis memoriæ conservationem,
they-condemned and for of-so-great vengeance of-the-memory the-preserving
in camera palatii sub pedibus domini papæ conculcatum
in the-chamber of-the-palace under the-feet of-the-lord pope trampled
depinxerunt. Domino itaque Calixto gloriose præsidente, et
they-painted the-lord and-so Calixtus gloriously presiding and
raptores Italiæ et Apuliæ perdomante, pontificalis cathedræ
the-robbers of-Italy and of-Apulia subduing of-the-pontifical chair
lucerna non sub modio, sed superposita monti, clare
the-lamp not under a-bushel but set-upon a-mountain brightly
elucebat beati Petri ecclesia, et reliqua urbis et extra
shone of-blessed Peter the-church and the-other of-the-city and outside
amissa recuperantes, tanti domini gratissimo fruebantur
lost-things recovering of-so-great lord the-most-welcome enjoyed
patrocinio. Cui cum in Apulia, apud civitatem Botontum,
patronage whom when in Apulia at the-city Bitonto
missus a domino rege Ludovico pro quibusdam regni
sent by the-lord king Louis for certain of-the-kingdom
negotiis, occurrissem, vir apostolicus, tam pro domini
affairs I-had-met the-man apostolic as-much for of-the-lord
regis quam pro monasterii nostri reverentia, honorifice nos
king as for of-monastery our reverence honorably us
recepit, et diutius retinere vellet, si ecclesiæ nostræ
received and longer to-retain would-have-wished if of-church our
amore et sociorum, abbatis Sancti Germani, socii et
by-love and of-companions of-the-abbot of-Saint Germain companion and
connutriti, et aliorum persuasione non devocaremur.
fellow-pupil and of-others by-persuasion not we-were-called-away

Peractis itaque regni quæ susceperamus negotiis, cum
completed and-so of-the-kingdom which we-had-undertaken the-affairs when
prospere redire maturaremus, ut peregrinorum mos est,
prosperously to-return we-were-hastening as of-pilgrims the-custom is
hospitio suscepti quadam villa, cum finitis matutinis, auroram
in-lodging received in-a-certain village when finished matins dawn
expectando, vestitum in lecto me reddidissem, semivigilans
by-awaiting clothed on the-bed myself I-had-put half-awake
videor videre me alto maris spatio, exiguo lembo solum
I-seem to-see myself in-the-deep of-the-sea expanse in-a-tiny skiff alone
omni remigio destitutum vagari, frequenti fluctuum motu,
of-all oarage destitute to-wander by-the-frequent of-the-waves motion
modo ascendendo, modo descendendo, periculose fluctuare,
now by-rising now by-descending perilously to-toss
percussum horrido naufragii timore, Divinitatis aures multo
struck with-horrid of-shipwreck fear of-the-Divinity the-ears with-much
clamore sollicitare: cum subito, divina propitiatione, lenis
outcry to-assail when suddenly by-divine propitiation a-gentle
et placida aura, tanquam sudo aere suscitata, tremulam et
and placid breeze as-if in-clear air raised the-trembling and
jam periclitantem miseræ naviculæ proram in directum
already endangered of-the-wretched little-ship prow into the-straight
retorquens, opinione citius applicans, portum placidum
turning-back than-expectation sooner bringing-in a-harbor placid
apprehendit. Excitatus autem crepusculo, iter cœptum
reached woken moreover at-twilight the-journey begun
aggrediens, cum visionem et visionis interpretationem et
undertaking when the-vision and of-the-vision the-interpretation both
memorare et assignare eundo multa meditatione laborarem
to-recall and to-assign in-going with-much meditation I-was-laboring
(timebam enim fluctuum infestatione aliquod grave infortunium
I-feared for of-the-waves by-the-hostility some grave misfortune

mihi significari), occurrit subito puer familiaris, qui meos
to-me to-be-signified meets-(us) suddenly a-servant of-the-household who my-men
meque recognoscens lætus et tristis singularem educit,
and-me recognizing glad and sad (me)-alone draws-aside
domini nostri bonæ memoriæ abbatis Adæ antecessoris
of-the-lord our of-good memory abbot Adam predecessor
decessum denuntiat, communem de persona nostra pleno
death announces the-common concerning person our by-the-full
conventu factam electionem. Sed quia inconsulto rege
chapter made election but because unconsulted the-king
factum fuerat, meliores et religiosiores fratrum, milites
done it-had-been the-better and more-religious of-the-brothers knights
etiam nobiliores, cum obtulissent domino regi electionem
also nobler when they-had-offered to-the-lord king the-election
ut assensum præberet, multis affectos conviciis, Aurelianis
that assent he-might-give with-many treated insults at-Orléans
castello inclusos reportat. Obortis itaque lachrymis, patri
in-the-castle shut-up he-reports arisen and-so tears with-the-father
spiritali et nutritori meo humanitatis et pietatis affectu
spiritual and nurturer my of-humanity and of-piety with-the-feeling
compatiens, de morte temporali graviter dolens, a perpetua
suffering-with for the-death temporal heavily grieving from the-perpetual
eum erui devotissime divinam implorabam propitiationem.
him to-be-rescued most-devoutly the-divine I-implored propitiation
Cum autem et multorum consolatione comitum et ipsa
when moreover both of-many by-the-consolation companions and by-the-very
meî discretione ad meipsum rediissem, triplici angebar
of-me discretion to myself I-had-returned by-threefold I-was-distressed
dispendio: utrum contra domini regis voluntatem electionem
loss whether against of-the-lord king the-will the-election
suscipiens, ecclesiæ romanæ rigore et domini papæ
accepting of-the-church Roman by-the-rigor and of-the-lord pope

Calixti qui me diligebat auctoritate, matrem ecclesiam
Calixtus who me loved by-the-authority the-mother church
quæ a mamilla gratissimo liberalitatis suæ gremio
which from the-breast with-most-welcome of-generosity her bosom
dulcissime fovere non destiterat, dilapidare et emungere
most-sweetly to-cherish not had-ceased to-waste and to-fleece
utroque dissipatore, occasione meî, cum numquam tale quid
with-each squanderer on-account of-me though never such anything
affectassent, sustinerem; utrum fratres et amicos pro amore
they-had-aimed-at I-should-endure whether the-brothers and friends for love
nostro deturpari et dehonestari regio carcere permitterem;
our to-be-disgraced and dishonored in-royal prison I-should-permit
utrum etiam pro his et hujusmodi eam postponens, tantæ
whether also for these and such-things it putting-aside of-so-great
improperium repulsæ incurrerem. Cumque de meis aliquem
the-reproach of-rebuff I-should-incur and-when of my-men someone
domino papæ, ut super his consuleret, remittere deliberarem,
to-the-lord pope that about these he-might-consult to-send-back I-was-deliberating
subito occurrit nobis clericus romanus, nobilis et familiaris,
suddenly meets us a-cleric Roman noble and familiar
qui quod sumptuoso labore per nostros volebamus per
who what with-costly labor through our-men we-wished by
seipsum facere votive suscepit. Præmisimus etiam de nostris,
himself to-do willingly undertook we-sent-ahead also of ours
cum eo qui venerat, ad regem unum, ut quem finem
with him who had-come to the-king one that what end
turbati negotii confusio reperisset nobis referrent: neque
of-the-troubled business the-confusion had-found to-us they-might-report nor
enim incaute regiis molestiis nos exponeremus.
for incautiously to-royal troubles ourselves would-we-expose

Subsequentes itaque, sicut si mari magno absque
following and-so as if on-the-sea great without
remige fluctuaremus, turbati, incerti rei eventus,
oarsman we-tossed troubled uncertain of-the-matter of-the-outcome
cum gravissime anxiaremur, Dei omnipotentis larga
when most-heavily we-were-distressed of-God almighty by-the-generous
propitiatione, placida aura naufragantem navem applicante,
propitiation the-placid breeze the-shipwrecking ship bringing-in
inopinate redeunt qui domini regis pacem, captorum
unexpectedly return those-who of-the-lord king the-peace of-the-captives
solutionem, electionis confirmationem reportant. Nos autem
the-release of-the-election the-confirmation bring-back we moreover
ex hoc ipso voluntatis Dei argumentum assumentes (voluntas
from this very of-the-will of-God proof taking the-will
enim Dei fuit ut cito occurreret quod volebamus),
for of-God was that quickly should-come-about what we-wished
cum ad matrem ecclesiam, Deo opitulante, pervenissemus,
when to the-mother church God helping we-had-come
tam dulciter, tam filialiter, tam nobiliter filium prodigum
so sweetly so filially so nobly the-son prodigal
suscepit, ut et dominum regem prius severo, modo
she-received that both the-lord king before with-severe now
sereno vultu occurrentem, archiepiscopum Bituricensem,
with-serene face meeting-us the-archbishop of-Bourges
episcopum Silvanectensem, et ecclesiasticas plures personas
the-bishop of-Senlis and ecclesiastical several persons
ibidem nos expectantes gratulanter invenerimus. Qui cum
there us awaiting joyfully we-found who when
multa veneratione celeberrime cum lætabundo fratrum
with-much veneration most-solemnly with the-joyful of-the-brothers
conventu nos suscepissent, sequente die, sabbato scilicet
chapter us had-received on-the-following day the-Saturday namely

Medianæ, me indignum ordinavit presbyterum. Sequente
of-Mid-Lent me unworthy he-ordained priest on-the-following
autem dominica Isti sunt dies, ibidem ante sacratissimum
moreover Sunday These are the-days there before the-most-sacred
corpus beatissimi Dionysii abbatem, licet immeritum,
body of-the-most-blessed Denis abbot though undeserving
consecravit. Quo consueto Dei omnipotentiæ facto, quanto
he-consecrated by-which wonted of-God of-omnipotence deed by-how-much
ab imo ad summum, de stercore erigens pauperem,
from the-bottom to the-top from the-dung raising the-poor-man
ut sedere cum principibus faceret, sublimavit, tanto
that to-sit with princes he-might-make he-exalted by-so-much
humiliorem, et si fragilitas humana non impediat, in
humbler and if frailty human not hinder in
omnibus devotiorem manus tam dulcissima quam potentissima
all-things more-devout the-hand as most-sweet as most-powerful
comparavit. Quæ cum in omnibus clementer parvitati nostræ
made which since in all-things mercifully to-smallness our
prosperata fuerit (novit enim insufficientia nostri tam
prospered has knows for the-insufficiency of-us as-much
generis quam scientiæ), inter antiquorum prædiorum ecclesiæ
of-birth as of-knowledge among of-ancient estates of-the-church
recuperationem et novorum acquisitionem, et ecclesiæ
the-recovery and of-new the-acquisition and of-the-church
circumquaque augmentationem, et ædificiorum restitutionem
round-about the-enlargement and of-buildings the-restoration
sive institutionem, hoc potissimum et gratissimum, immo
or founding this chiefly and most-welcome nay
summam præstitit miseratus prærogativam, quod sanctæ
the-highest it-granted having-pitied prerogative that of-the-holy
ecclesiæ suæ, ad sanctorum, immo suî honorem, ordinem
church its to of-the-saints nay of-itself the-honor the-order

sanctum ibidem plene reformavit, sanctæ religionis propositum,
holy there fully it-reformed of-holy religion the-purpose
quo ad Deo fruendum pervenitur, absque scandalo et
by-which to God enjoying one-comes without scandal and
perturbatione fratrum, licet non consueverint, pacifice
disturbance of-the-brothers though not they-had-been-used peacefully
constituit. Cujus voluntatis divinæ efficaciam, tantæ
established of-which will divine the-efficacy of-so-great
libertatis, bonæ famæ et terrenæ opulentiæ subsecuta est
liberty of-good fame and of-earthly wealth followed has
affluentia; ut etiam in præsentiarum, quo magis nostra
the-abundance that even in the-present by-which more our
excitetur pusillanimitas, quodam modo cognoscatur nos ipsos
may-be-roused faint-heartedness in-a-certain way it-may-be-known us ourselves
remuneratione etiam temporali remunerare, cum et apostolici,
with-reward even temporal to-reward since both the-apostolic
reges et principes felicitatibus Ecclesiæ congratulari delectet,
kings and princes in-the-felicities of-the-Church to-rejoice it-delights
gemmarum pretiosarum, auri et argenti, palliorum et aliorum
of-gems precious of-gold and of-silver of-palls and of-other
ecclesiasticorum ornamentorum affluentia exinde exuberet, ut
ecclesiastical ornaments the-abundance thence overflows that
recte dicere valeamus: Venerunt mihi omnia bona pariter
rightly to-say we-may-be-able came to-me all good-things together
cum illa. Quo experimento gloriæ futuræ Dei, fratres
with her by-which proof of-glory future of-God the-brothers
successores nostros obtestando per Dei misericordiam et
successors our by-adjuring through of-God the-mercy and
terribile ejus judicium sollicitamus ne sanctam religionem,
the-terrible his judgment we-urge lest the-holy religion
quæ et homines et Deum conciliat, confracta consolidat,
which both men and God reconciles the-broken makes-firm

perdita restaurat, paupertatem opimat, tepescere permittant:
the-lost restores poverty enriches to-grow-lukewarm they-allow
quia sicut timentibus Deum nihil deest, non timentibus,
because as to-those-fearing God nothing is-lacking not to-those-fearing
etiam regibus, omnia ipsi quoque sibi deficiunt.
even kings all-things they-themselves also to-themselves fail

27 · THE EMPEROR TURNED BACK

Suger attends the Lateran council, and Pope Honorius restores Argenteuil to Saint-Denis. Emperor Henry plans to strike at Reims; Louis takes the Vexin banner from Saint-Denis's altar and summons the realm, and so vast an army gathers that the emperor turns aside. Louis thanks the martyrs and restores the Lendit fair, and Henry of England's attack fails.

Sequente itaque ordinationis nostræ anno, ne ingratitudine
following and-so of-ordination our in-the-year lest of-ingratitude
argueremur (sancta quippe romana ecclesia ante nostram
we-be-accused the-holy indeed Roman church before our
promotionem, tam Romæ quam alibi multis et diversis
promotion as-much at-Rome as elsewhere in-many and various
conciliis, tam pro ecclesia nostra quam pro aliis agentem
councils as-much for church our as for others acting
benigne susceperat, gratanter disserentem audierat, negotia
kindly had-received gladly discoursing had-heard business
nostra me altius erexerat), ad eam visitandam properantes, a
our me higher had-raised to her to-be-visited hastening by
domino papa Calixto et tota curia honorifice valde recepti
the-lord pope Calixtus and the-whole curia honorably very received
per sex menses, cum apud eum demorando, magno concilio
for six months when with him by-tarrying at-the-great council

trecentorum aut amplius episcoporum, Lateranis compositioni
of-three-hundred or more bishops at-the-Lateran to-the-settlement
pacis de querela investiturarum astitissemus; orationis
of-peace concerning the-dispute of-investitures we-had-attended of-prayer
causa frequentatis diversis sanctorum locis, videlicet S.
for-the-sake frequented various of-the-saints places namely of-Saint
Benedicti Cassini, S. Bartholomæi Beneventi, S. Matthæi
Benedict at-Cassino of-Saint Bartholomew at-Benevento of-Saint Matthew
Salerni, S. Nicolai Bari, Sanctorum Angelorum Gargani,
at-Salerno of-Saint Nicholas at-Bari of-the-Holy Angels at-Gargano
Deo opitulante, cum gratia et domini papæ amore et
God helping with the-favor and of-the-lord pope the-love and
formatis epistolis prospere remeavimus. Cum autem et alia
formal letters prosperously we-returned when moreover also another
vice, post aliquot annos, nos dulcissime, ut magis honoraret
time after some years us most-sweetly that more he-might-honor
et, sicut in litteris suis continebatur, libenter exaltaret, ad
and as in letters his it-was-contained gladly he-might-exalt to
curiam revocasset, apud Lucam Tusciæ civitatem decessus
the-curia he-had-recalled at Lucca of-Tuscany a-city of-the-death
ejus veritatem cognoscentes, Romanorum novam et veterem
his the-truth learning of-the-Romans the-new and old
avaritiam devitando retrocessimus. Cui successit de Hostiensi
avarice by-shunning we-went-back to-whom succeeded from of-Ostia
episcopo approbata persona assumptus papa Honorius, vir
bishop of-approved person taken-up pope Honorius a-man
gravis et severus. Qui cum justitiam nostram de
grave and severe who when the-right our concerning
monasterio Argentoilensi, puellarum miserrima conversatione
the-monastery of-Argenteuil of-the-girls by-most-wretched conduct
infamato, tum legati sui Matthæi Albanensis episcopi,
defamed both of-the-legate his Matthew of-Albano bishop

tum domini Carnotensis, Parisiensis, Suessionis, domini
and of-the-lord of-Chartres of-Paris of-Soissons of-the-lord
etiam archiepiscopi Remensis Rainaldi, et multorum virorum
also archbishop of-Reims Rainald and of-many men
testimonio cognovisset, præcepta regum antiquorum Pipini,
by-the-testimony had-learned the-precepts of-the-kings ancient of-Pepin
Caroli Magni, Ludovici Pii et aliorum de jure
of-Charles the-Great of-Louis the-Pious and of-others concerning the-right
loci præfati a nuntiis nostris oblata perlegisset, curiæ
of-the-place aforesaid by envoys our offered had-read-through of-the-curia
totius persuasione, tam pro nostra justitia quam pro earum
whole by-the-persuasion as-much for our right as for their
fœtida enormitate, beato Dionysio et restituit et confirmavit.
foul enormity to-blessed Denis both restored and confirmed
Ut autem ad propositum recolendæ regis historiæ
that moreover to the-purpose of-the-to-be-recalled of-the-king history
revertamur, ante domini papæ Calixti decessum, imperator
we-may-return before of-the-lord pope Calixtus the-death the-emperor
Henricus, collecto longo animi rancore contra dominum
Henry gathered by-long of-mind rancor against the-lord
regem Ludovicum, eo quod in regno ejus Remis in concilio
king Louis by-this that in kingdom his at-Reims in the-council
domini Calixti anathemate innodatus fuerat, exercitum
of-the-lord Calixtus by-anathema bound he-had-been an-army
quantumcumque potest Lotharingorum, Alemannorum,
as-great-as he-can of-Lorrainers of-Alemans
Bajoariorum, Suevorum et Saxonum, licet eis infestaretur,
of-Bavarians of-Swabians and of-Saxons though by-them he-was-harassed
colligit; alioque tendere simulans, consilio regis
gathers and-elsewhere to-make-for feigning by-the-counsel of-the-king
Anglici Henrici, cujus filiam reginam duxerat, qui etiam
English Henry whose daughter as-queen he-had-married who also

regi guerram inferebat, Remis civitatem inopinate aggredi
on-the-king war was-bringing Reims the-city unexpectedly to-attack
machinatur, proponens aut eam subito destruere, aut tanta
contrives proposing either it suddenly to-destroy or with-so-much
dehonestatione et oppressione civitatem obsidere, quanta
dishonor and oppression the-city to-besiege as-much-as
dominus papa ibidem in eum agens sedit sessione. Quod
the-lord pope there against him acting sat in-session which
cum domino regi Ludovico intimorum relatione innotuisset,
when to-the-lord king Louis of-intimates by-report had-become-known
tam strenue quam audacter delectum quem non expectat
as vigorously as boldly a-levy which not awaits
cogit, nobiles asciscit, causam exponit. Et quoniam beatum
he-musters the-nobles summons the-cause sets-out and since blessed
Dionysium specialem patronum et singularem post Deum
Denis as-special patron and singular after God
regni protectorem, et multorum relatione et crebro
of-the-kingdom protector both of-many by-the-report and by-frequent
cognoverat experimento, ad eum festinans, tam precibus quam
he-had-known experience to him hastening as-much with-prayers as
beneficiis præcordialiter pulsat ut regnum defendat, personam
with-benefits heartily he-knocks that the-kingdom he-defend (his)-person
conservet, hostibus more solito resistat: et quoniam hanc
preserve the-enemies in-manner wonted resist and since this
ab eo habent prærogativam ut, si regnum aliud regnum
from him they-have prerogative that if kingdom another the-kingdom
Francorum invadere audeat, ipse beatus et admirabilis
of-the-Franks to-invade dare he-himself the-blessed and admirable
defensor cum sociis suis tanquam ad defendendum altari
defender with companions his as for defending on-the-altar
suo superponatur, eo præsente fit tam gloriose quam
his be-set-upon him being-present it-is-done as gloriously as

devote. Rex autem vexillum ab altari suscipiens quod de
devoutly the-king moreover the-banner from the-altar receiving which from
comitatu Vilcassini, quo ad ecclesiam feodatus est, spectat,
the-county of-the-Vexin by-which to the-church enfeoffed he-is belongs
votive tanquam a domino suo suscipiens, pauca manu
devoutly as from lord his receiving with-a-small band
contra hostes, ut sibi provideat, evolat; ut eum tota
against the-enemies that for-himself he-may-provide flies-out that him the-whole
Francia sequatur potenter invitat. Indignata igitur hostium
France follow mightily invites indignant therefore of-the-enemies
inusitatam audaciam usitata Franciæ animositas, circumquaque
at-the-unwonted daring the-wonted of-France spirit round-about
movens militarem delectum, vires et viros pristinæ virtutis
moving a-military levy forces and men of-former valor
et antiquarum memores victoriarum delegat. Qui cum Remis
and of-ancient mindful victories sends who when at-Reims
undecumque potenter convenissemus, tantæ militaris et
from-everywhere mightily we-had-assembled so-great of-mounted and
pedestris exercitus copiæ apparebant, ut viderentur superficiem
foot army forces appeared that they-seemed the-surface
terræ, more locustarum, non tantum secus decursus
of-the-earth in-the-manner of-locusts not only along the-courses
aquarum, sed etiam [in] montanis et planitie devorare. Ubi
of-waters but also on the-mountains and plain to-devour where
cum rex continuata septimana Theutonicorum præstolaretur
when the-king for-a-continuous week of-the-Germans awaited
incursum, tali inter regni proceres deliberatione res
the-incursion by-such among of-the-kingdom the-nobles deliberation the-matter
disponebatur: «Transeamus, inquiunt, audacter ad eos, ne
was-ordered let-us-cross they-say boldly to them lest
redeuntes impune ferant, quod in terrarum dominam
returning with-impunity they-carry-off what against of-lands the-mistress

Franciam superbe præsumpserunt. Sentiant contumaciæ suæ
France proudly they-presumed let-them-feel of-contumacy their
meritum, non in nostra sed in terra sua, quæ jure
the-deserts not in ours but in land their which by-right
regio Francorum Francis sæpe perdomita subjacet: ut
royal of-the-Franks to-the-Franks often subdued lies-subject that
quod ipsi furtim in nos machinabantur attemptare,
what they-themselves stealthily against us were-contriving to-attempt
nos in eos coram retorqueamus.» Aliorum autem perita
we against them openly may-turn-back of-others moreover the-skilled
severitas persuadebat eos diutius expectare, ingressos marchiæ
severity urged them longer to-await entered of-the-march
fines, cum jam fugere intercepti nequirent, expugnatos
the-borders when now to-flee cut-off they-could-not overcome
prosternere, tanquam Sarracenos immisericorditer trucidare,
to-lay-low as Saracens mercilessly to-slaughter
inhumata barbarorum corpora lupis et corvis ad eorum
the-unburied of-the-barbarians bodies to-wolves and crows to their
perennem ignominiam exponere, tantorum homicidiorum et
perpetual ignominy to-expose of-so-many killings and
crudelitatis causam terræ suæ defensione justificare.
of-cruelty the-cause of-land their by-the-defense to-justify
Ordinantes autem regni proceres in palatio bellatorum
ordering moreover of-the-kingdom the-nobles in the-palace of-warriors
acies coram rege, quæ quibus suffragio jungerentur
the-lines before the-king which to-which in-support should-be-joined
Remensium et Catalaunensium ultra sexaginta millia, tam
of-the-men-of-Reims and of-Châlons beyond sixty thousand as-much
equitum quam peditum, unam componunt; Laudunensium et
of-horsemen as of-foot one they-compose of-the-men-of-Laon and
Suessionensium, nec minori numero, secundam; Aurelianensium,
of-Soissons nor in-lesser number the-second of-the-men-of-Orléans

Stampensium et Parisiensium, et beati Dionysii copioso
of-Étampes and of-Paris and of-blessed Denis with-an-abundant
exercitu et coronæ devoto, tertiam; cui etiam seipsum
army and to-the-crown devoted the-third to-which also himself
interesse, spe suffragii protectoris sui, disponens: «Hac,
to-be-present in-hope of-the-support of-protector his arranging in-this
inquit, acie tam secure quam strenue dimicabo, cum præter
he-says line as securely as vigorously I-shall-fight since besides
sanctorum dominorum nostrorum protectionem, etiam qui
of-the-saints lords our the-protection also those-who
me compatriotæ familiarius educaverunt, aut vivum juvabunt,
me fellow-countrymen more-intimately raised either living shall-help
aut mortuum conservantes reportabunt.» Comes etiam palatinus
or dead preserving shall-carry-back the-count also palatine
Theobaldus, cum avunculo nobili Trecensi comite Hugone, cum
Theobald with his-uncle the-noble of-Troyes count Hugh though
ex abjuratione Franciæ (guerram enim regi cum avunculo
from the-abjuration of-France war for on-the-king with his-uncle
rege Anglico inferebat) adventasset, quartam efficiens; quintam
king English he-was-bringing had-come the-fourth making the-fifth
Burgundiorum ducis et Nivernensis comitis, præviam fecit.
of-the-Burgundians of-the-duke and of-Nevers of-the-count the-vanguard made
Comes vero egregius Viromandensis Radulfus, germana regis
the-count but excellent of-Vermandois Ralph by-full of-the-king
consanguinitate conspicuus, optima fretus militia, multoque
kinship conspicuous on-the-best relying knighthood and-with-much
Sancti-Quintini et totius terræ, armato tam loricis
of-Saint-Quentin and of-the-whole land armed as-much with-mail-coats
quam galeis exercitu, cornu dextrum conservare destinatus,
as with-helmets army the-wing right to-keep appointed
Pontivos et Ambianenses et Belvacenses in sinistro
the-men-of-Ponthieu and the-men-of-Amiens and the-men-of-Beauvais on the-left

constitui approbavit. Nobilissimus etiam comes Flandrensis,
to-be-placed approved the-most-noble also count of-Flanders
cum decem millibus militum pugnatissimorum (triplicasset
with ten thousand of-knights most-warlike would-have-tripled
exercitum, si tempestive scisset) extrema acie ad peragendum
the-army if in-time he-had-known in-the-last line for completing
ordinabatur. His autem locorum affinitate propinquus
was-ordered with-these moreover of-places by-the-neighborhood near
dux Aquitaniæ Guillelmus, comes egregius Britanniæ, comes
the-duke of-Aquitaine William the-count excellent of-Brittany the-count
bellicosus Fulco Andegavensis summe æmulabantur; eo
warlike Fulk of-Anjou exceedingly vied by-this
quod vires exaggerare, et Francorum injuriam gravissime
that forces to-heap-up and of-the-Franks the-injury most-heavily
punire, et viæ prolixitas et temporis brevitas prohiberet.
to-punish both of-the-road the-length and of-time the-shortness prevented
Provisum est etiam ut ubicumque exercitus, apto tamen
provided it-was also that wherever the-armies at-a-suitable yet
loco, certamen inirent, et carri et carretæ, aquam et vinum
place battle should-join both carts and wagons water and wine
fessis et sauciatis deferentes, instar castellorum in corona
to-the-weary and wounded carrying like castles in a-ring
locarentur, ut a labore bellico, a vulneribus deficientes,
should-be-placed that from toil warlike from wounds failing
inibi potando ac ligaturas restringendo fortiores, indurati ad
there by-drinking and bandages by-binding stronger hardened for
palmam obtinendam concertarent. Publicata igitur tanti et
the-palm to-be-won they-might-contend made-public therefore of-so-great and
tam tremendi facti deliberatione, tantique delectus fortissimi
so tremendous deed the-deliberation and-of-so-great levy most-strong
apparitione, cum hoc ipsum auribus imperatoris intonuisset,
by-the-appearance when this very in-the-ears of-the-emperor had-thundered

simulans et dissimulans, palliata occasione subterfugiens,
feigning and dissembling with-cloaked pretext slipping-away
alias tendit, magis eligens ignominiam defectus sustinere
elsewhere makes-for rather choosing the-ignominy of-failure to-endure
quam et imperium et personam ruina periclitantem
than both the-empire and his-person with-ruin imperiled
Francorum gravissimæ ultioni suppeditare. Quo Franci
of-the-Franks to-the-most-heavy vengeance to-submit which the-Franks
comperto, sola archiepiscoporum et episcoporum et
learned by-the-sole of-archbishops and of-bishops and
religiosorum prece virorum, ab illius regni devastatione et
of-religious prayer men from of-that kingdom the-devastation and
pauperum depressione vix se continere valebant.
of-the-poor oppression scarcely themselves to-restrain could
Tanta igitur et tam celebri potitus victoria (idem enim
so-great therefore and so famous having-won victory the-same for
aut superius fuit quam si campo triumphassent), Francis
or higher was than if in-the-field they-had-triumphed the-Franks
repatriantibus, rex exhilaratus nec ingratus ad protectores
returning-home the-king gladdened nor ungrateful to protectors
suos sanctissimos martyres humillime devenit, eisque
his the-most-holy martyrs most-humbly came and-to-them
post Deum gratias magnas referens coronam patris sui,
after God thanks great rendering the-crown of-father his
quam injuste retinuerat (jure enim ad eos omnes
which unjustly he-had-kept-back by-right for to them all
pertinent), devotissime restituit, Indictum exterius in platea
belong most-devoutly restored the-Lendit outside in the-square
(interius enim Sanctorum erat) libentissime reddidit, viaturam
inside for of-the-Saints it-was most-gladly gave-back the-road-toll
omnimodam quibus spatiis cruces et columnæ statuuntur
of-every-kind in-which spaces crosses and columns are-set-up

marmoreæ, quasi Gades Herculis omnibus obsistentes
marble as-if the-Gades of-Hercules to-all standing-against
hostibus, præcepti regii confirmatione sanccivit. Sacras etiam
enemies of-a-precept royal by-the-confirmation he-sanctioned the-sacred also
venerabiles sacratissimorum corporum lecticas argenteas, quæ
venerable of-the-most-sacred bodies biers silver which
altari principali superpositæ toto spatio bellici
on-the-altar principal set-upon for-the-whole space of-the-warlike
conventus extiterant, ubi continuo celeberrimo diei et
gathering had-stood where with-continuous most-solemn of-day and
noctis officio fratrum colebantur, multa devotissimi
of-night office of-the-brothers they-were-worshiped with-much of-the-most-devout
populi et religiosarum mulierum, ad suffragandum exercitui,
people and of-religious women for aiding the-army
frequentabantur multiplici oratione, rex ipse proprio collo
they-were-thronged with-manifold prayer the-king himself on-his-own neck
dominos et patronos suos cum lachrymarum affluentia
lords and patrons his with of-tears abundance
filialiter loco suo reportavit, multisque tam terræ quam
filially to-place their carried-back and-with-many as-much of-land as
aliarum commoditatum donariis, pro his et aliis impensis
of-other advantages gifts for these and other bestowed
beneficiis, remuneravit. Imperator ergo theutonicus, eo
benefits rewarded the-emperor therefore German by-that
vilescens facto, et de die in diem declinans, infra
growing-cheap deed and from day to day declining within
anni circulum extremum agens diem, antiquorum verificavit
of-a-year the-circle (his)-last passing day of-the-ancients verified
sententiam, neminem nobilem aut ignobilem regni
the-saying no-one noble or ignoble of-the-kingdom
aut ecclesiæ turbatorem, cujus causa aut controversia
or of-the-church disturber whose for-the-cause or controversy

Sanctorum corpora subleventur, anno fore superstitem, sed
of-the-Saints the-bodies are-raised the-year to-be surviving but
ita vel intra deperire. Rex autem Angliæ, conscius theutonici
so or within to-perish the-king moreover of-England privy of-the-German
doli, quia regi Ludovico cum comite Theobaldo guerram
guile because against-king Louis with count Theobald war
inferens conspiraverat marchiam collimitantem, regis
bringing he-had-conspired the-march bordering of-the-king
absentia, omnino aut depopulari aut occupare, solo uno
in-the-absence wholly either to-lay-waste or to-seize by-only one
barone, scilicet Amalrico de Monte Forti, viro marte jugi
baron namely Amaury of Mont- -fort a-man in-war constant
acerrimo, et strenuitate Vilcassinensis exercitus repulsus, aut
most-fierce and by-the-vigor of-the-Vexin army driven-back either
parum aut nihil proficiens, vana spe frustratus retrocessit.
little or nothing achieving in-vain hope frustrated withdrew
Quo facto nostrorum modernitate, nec multorum temporum
than-which deed of-ours in-the-modernity nor of-many times
antiquitate, nihil clarius Francia fecit, aut potentiæ suæ
in-the-antiquity nothing more-famous France did or of-power her
gloriam, viribus membrorum suorum adunatis, gloriosius
the-glory by-the-strength of-members her united more-gloriously
propalavit, quam cum uno eodemque termino de imperatore
displayed than when at-one and-the-same term over the-emperor
romano et rege anglico, licet absens, triumphavit. Ex
Roman and the-king English though absent she-triumphed from
quo quidem, suffocata hostium superbia, siluit terra
which indeed stifled of-the-enemies the-pride was-silent the-land
in conspectu ejus, et pene ad quos pertingere poterat,
in the-sight his and almost to whom to-reach he-could

inimici in gratiam ultro redeuntes, amicitiæ dextras
enemies into favor of-their-own-accord returning of-friendship right-hands
dederunt. Sic arma tenenti omnia dat, qui justa negat.
gave thus arms to-him-holding all-things gives he-who just-things denies

28 · THE EXPEDITIONS TO AUVERGNE

At the plea of the bishop of Clermont, Louis marches into Auvergne, takes Pont-du-Château, and restores the city to the bishop. When the counts break the peace, the king, now heavy in body, returns with a greater army and besieges Montferrand; Duke William of Aquitaine offers to bring the count before the royal court, and Louis accepts and returns victorious.

Ea etiam tempestatis temperie, Alvernorum pontifex
at-that also of-time season of-the-Auvergnats the-bishop
Claromontensis, vir honestæ vitæ et defensor ecclesiæ
of-Clermont a-man of-honorable life and defender of-the-church
illustris, et pulsatus et pulsus Alvernorum superbia nova
illustrious both assailed and driven-out of-the-Auvergnats by-the-pride new
et antiqua, quæ eis titulatur:
and old which to-them is-ascribed

Alvernique ausi Latios se fingere fratres;
and-the-Auvergnats having-dared Latin themselves to-feign brothers

ad dominum regem confugiens, querelam ecclesiæ
to the-lord king fleeing the-complaint of-the-church
lachrymabilem deponit, comitem Alvernensem civitatem
tearful lays-down the-count of-Auvergne the-city
occupasse, ecclesiam beatæ Mariæ episcopalem, decani sui
to-have-seized the-church of-blessed Mary episcopal of-dean his

fraude, multa tyrannide munivisse. Renitentis etiam
by-the-fraud with-much tyranny to-have-fortified of-the-reluctant also
pedibus provolutus, ancillatam ecclesiam exancillari, tyrannum
at-the-feet prostrate the-enslaved church to-be-freed the-tyrant
effrenatum compescere regiæ majestatis gladio, suppliciter
unbridled to-restrain of-royal majesty with-the-sword suppliantly
efflagitat. Rex autem, ut consueverat ecclesiis promptissime
he-begs the-king moreover as he-had-been-wont the-churches most-promptly
opitulari, causam Dei gratanter, sed sumptuose assumens,
to-help the-cause of-God gladly but at-great-cost taking-up
quia verbis et majestatis suæ sigillo tyrannum corrigere
because by-words and of-majesty his by-the-seal the-tyrant to-correct
non valet, facto maturans, militares colligit vires, movet in
not he-can by-deed hastening military he-gathers forces moves into
Alverniam recalcitrantem copiosum Francorum exercitum. Cui
Auvergne kicking-back an-abundant of-the-Franks army whom
Bituricas adventanti regni optimates, comes bellicosus
to-Bourges arriving of-the-kingdom the-magnates the-count warlike
Andegavensis Fulco, comes potentissimus Britanniæ Conanus,
of-Anjou Fulk the-count most-powerful of-Brittany Conan
comes egregius Nivernensis, multique alii regni proceres,
the-count excellent of-Nevers and-many other of-the-kingdom nobles
manu magna militari, regni debitores occurrunt,
with-a-band great military to-the-kingdom debtors meet
in Alvernos injuriam Ecclesiæ et regni ulcisci
against the-Auvergnats the-injury of-the-Church and of-the-kingdom to-avenge
festinantes. Terram itaque hostium depopulantes, cum civitati
hastening the-land and-so of-the-enemies laying-waste when the-city
Claromontensi propinquarent, Alverni præsidio civitatis,
of-Clermont they-neared the-Auvergnats to-the-protection of-the-city
quia peroptime erat munita, relictis montanis acutissimis
because very-well it-was fortified left mountain most-sharp

castellis, se commiserunt. Unde Franci consulte eorum
castles themselves committed whence the-Franks advisedly their
deridentes simplicitatem, et ad urbem tendere differentes,
mocking simplicity and to the-city to-make-for putting-off
ut aut civitatem dimitterent, ne castella amitterent, aut
that either the-city they-should-give-up lest the-castles they-lose or
si remanerent, interim victualia consumerent, ad castrum
if they-stayed meanwhile the-provisions they-should-consume to a-castle
peroptimum, Pontum nomine, super fluvium Hilerim
very-excellent Pont-du-Château by-name on the-river Allier
diverterunt. Ubi circumquaque tentoria figentes, æque plana
turned-aside where round-about tents pitching equally the-level
et ardua diripiunt, gigantea audacia cœlum tendere videntur,
and the-steep they-ravage with-giant daring heaven to-reach they-seem
dum munitissima montium cacumina præripiunt, prædas non
while the-most-fortified of-mountains summits they-seize-first spoils not
tantum pecorum, sed et pecoralium hominum superfluo
only of-cattle but also of-cattle-like men in-excess
etiam educunt; instrumenta impugnatoria turri ejusdem
also they-lead-out instruments of-assault to-the-tower of-the-same
castelli applicantes, saxorum molarium impetu, sagittarum
castle applying of-stones millstone by-the-force of-arrows
impluvio, multa eos strage ad deditionem compellunt. Quo
by-the-rain with-much them slaughter to surrender they-compel which
audito, qui civitatem tenebant, timore perculsi, simile aut
heard those-who the-city held by-fear struck the-like or
gravius quid expectantes, fugam parant, civitatem exeunt,
worse something expecting flight prepare the-city leave
eamque regis arbitrio derelinquunt. Rex autem et
and-it of-the-king to-the-judgment abandon the-king moreover both
Deo ecclesiam, et clero turres, et episcopo civitatem,
to-God the-church and to-the-clergy the-towers and to-the-bishop the-city

pace inter eos et comitem et sacramentis et obsidum
peace between them and the-count both by-oaths and of-hostages
multiplicitate firmata, victor in omnibus restituit.
by-the-multitude confirmed victor in all-things restored
Verum temporum lustro peracto, cum Alvernorum comitum
but of-times a-lustrum completed when of-the-Auvergnats counts
perfida levitate solveretur, recidiva episcopi et ecclesiæ
by-the-perfidious levity it-was-broken the-relapsing of-the-bishop and of-the-church
calamitas recidivam reportat regi querimoniam. Qui se
calamity a-relapsing brings-back to-the-king complaint who himself
casso labore adeo defatigatum dedignans, collecto primo
by-vain labor so wearied disdaining gathered than-the-first
multo majore exercitu, terram repetit Alvernorum. Jamque
much greater army the-land seeks-again of-the-Auvergnats and-already
gravis corpore et carneæ spissitudinis mole ponderosus,
heavy in-body and of-fleshly thickness by-the-bulk weighty
cum alius quislibet, pauper etiam, tanta corporis periculosi
when another anyone poor even with-so-great of-body perilous
incommoditate equitare nec vellet nec posset, ipse
inconvenience to-ride neither would-wish nor could he-himself
contra multorum amicorum dissuasionem, mira animositate
against of-many friends the-dissuasion by-wondrous spirit
rapiebatur, et quod ipsi etiam juvenes horrebant, æstivos
was-carried-away and what themselves even the-young shuddered-at the-summer
junii et augusti tolerans calores, impatientes calorum deridet,
of-June and of-August enduring heats those-impatient of-heats he-mocks
cum sæpius eum angustiis paludum, locis fortissimis, suorum
though more-often him in-the-straits of-marshes in-places by-the-strongest of-his-men
lacertis sustentari oporteret. Erant in ejus expeditione
arms to-be-held-up it-was-necessary there-were in his expedition
comes præpotens Flandrensis Carolus, comes Andegavensis
the-count very-powerful of-Flanders Charles the-count of-Anjou

Fulco, comes Britanniæ, tributarius regis Anglici Henrici
Fulk the-count of-Brittany tributary of-the-king English Henry
de Normannia exercitus, barones et regni optimates
from Normandy the-army barons and of-the-kingdom magnates
quamplures, qui etiam Hispaniam perdomare sufficerent.
very-many who even Spain to-subdue would-suffice
Transiens itaque Alvernorum difficiles ingressus et obviantia
passing and-so of-the-Auvergnats the-difficult entries and the-opposing
castella, Claromontem pervenit. Cum autem abortivo et
castles to-Clermont he-came when moreover to-the-abortive and
opposito civitati castro Montis Feranni exercitum applicaret,
set-against the-city castle of-Mont- -ferrand the-army he-brought-up
milites qui castrum defendere habebant, Francorum mirabilem
the-knights who the-castle to-defend had of-the-Franks the-wondrous
exercitum suis dissimilem formidantes, loricarum et
army to-their-own unlike dreading of-mail-coats and
galearum repercusso sole splendorem admirantes, solo
of-helmets in-the-reflected sun the-splendor wondering-at by-the-mere
visu hærent, et exteriorem refutantes immunitatem, in turre
sight they-stick and the-outer refusing defense in the-tower
et turris procinctu vix etiam inibi se contulerunt.
and of-the-tower the-precinct scarcely even there themselves betook
Applicitus autem immunitatis relictæ domibus flammivomus
applied moreover of-the-defense left to-the-houses flame-spewing
ignis, quicquid erat, præter turrim et procinctum ejus, in
fire whatever there-was besides the-tower and precinct its into
cineres dissolvit. Et prima quidem die, propter æstuantem
ashes dissolved and on-the-first indeed day because-of the-seething
incendio subito villam, extra tentoria figentes, sequente intus,
with-fire suddenly town outside tents pitching on-the-following inside
sopitis flammis, reportavimus. Rex vero summo mane hoc
quenched the-flames we-carried-back the-king but at-highest morning by-this

uno facto et eos contristavit, et nos exhilaravit: quoniam
one deed both them saddened and us gladdened since
cum tentoria nostra, una de parte turri propinquiora,
when tents our on-one of side to-the-tower nearer
multo bello, multis sagittarum et jaculorum emissionibus,
with-much war with-many of-arrows and of-darts discharges
ita etiam ut, præmissis inter nos et ipsos armatorum
so even that sent-ahead between us and them of-armed-men
præsidiis, nos clypeis operiri oporteret, lacessire tota
guards ourselves with-shields to-be-covered it-was-necessary to-harass the-whole
nocte non desisterent, significavit militari viro et egregio
night not they-ceased he-signified to-the-military man and excellent
baroni Amalrico de Monte Forti ut, eis ex obliquo insidias
baron Amaury of Mont- -fort that for-them from the-side ambushes
ponens, ne procinctum impune regrederentur provideat.
setting lest to-the-precinct with-impunity they-return he-should-provide
Qui talibus callens intentoriis, sumit arma, eosque equorum
who in-such skilled attempts takes arms and-them of-horses
velocitate, ex obliquo nostris eos impedientibus, inopinate
by-the-speed from the-side our-men them hindering unexpectedly
quosdam intercipit, regi celeriter remittit. Qui cum
some intercepts to-the-king swiftly sends who when
redimi se multo rogarent, imperat eos emancari,
to-be-ransomed themselves with-much they-asked he-orders them to-be-unhanded
mancos autem, pugnos in pugnis referentes, intus sociis
maimed moreover fists in fists carrying-back inside to-their-companions
remitti. Quibus cæteri territi deinceps nos quietos sinebant.
to-be-sent-back by-which the-rest terrified thereafter us quiet allowed
Cumque machinarum et instrumentorum structura demorante,
and-when of-engines and of-instruments the-building delaying
tota Alvernia voluntati et arbitrio exercitus pateret, dux
the-whole Auvergne to-the-will and judgment of-the-army lay-open the-duke

Aquitaniæ Guillelmus, exercitu Aquitanorum fretus, advenit.
of-Aquitaine William on-the-army of-the-Aquitanians relying came
Qui cum in montanis castra metatus, in plano Francorum
who when on the-mountains camp having-pitched on the-plain of-the-Franks
intueretur rutilare phalanges, admiratus exercitus tanti
saw to-glow the-phalanxes wondering-at of-the-army so-great
magnitudinem, pœnituit eum pro impotentia ad refragandum
the-size it-repented him for powerlessness for resisting
venisse; mittensque pacificos regi nuncios, ut ei
to-have-come and-sending peaceable to-the-king envoys that to-him
tanquam domino suo loquatur assistit, perorans hoc modo:
as to-lord his he-may-speak stands-by pleading in-this manner
«Dux tuus Aquitaniæ, domine rex, multa te salute, omni
the-duke your of-Aquitaine lord king with-much you greeting all
te potiri honore. Non dedignetur regiæ majestatis celsitudo,
you to-enjoy honor not let-disdain of-royal majesty the-loftiness
ducis Aquitaniæ servitium suscipere, jus suum ei
of-the-duke of-Aquitaine the-service to-receive right his to-him
conservare: quia sicut justitia exigit servitium, sic et justum
to-preserve because as justice demands service so also a-just
exigit dominium. Alvernensis comes, quia Alverniam a
demands lordship the-Auvergne count because Auvergne from
me, quam ego a vobis habeo, habet, si quid commisit,
me which I from you have holds if anything he-has-committed
curiæ vestræ vestro habeo imperio repræsentare. Hoc
to-the-court your at-your I-have command to-present this
nunquam prohibuimus, hoc etiam modo offerimus, et ut
never we-have-forbidden this also now we-offer and that
suscipiatis suppliciter efflagitamus. Et ne super his celsitudo
you-receive-it suppliantly we-beg and lest about these loftiness
vestra dubitare dignetur, multos et sufficientes obsides dare
your to-doubt deign many and sufficient hostages to-give

paratos habemus. Si sic judicaverint regni optimates,
ready we-have if so shall-have-judged of-the-kingdom the-magnates
fiat; sin aliter, sicut.» Super his igitur rex cum
let-it-be-done if-not otherwise as about these therefore the-king with
optimatibus regni consulens, dictante justitia, fidem,
the-magnates of-the-kingdom consulting dictating justice the-faith
juramentum, obsidum sufficientiam suscipit, pacem patriæ
the-oath of-hostages the-sufficiency receives peace to-the-country
et ecclesiæ restituit, diem inter eos præsente duce Aquitaniæ
and to-the-church restores a-day between them present the-duke of-Aquitaine
agendis, Aurelianis, quod huc usque renuerant, statuit,
for-things-to-be-done at-Orléans which hither- -to they-had-refused he-fixes
exercitumque gloriose reducens, in Franciam victor remeavit.
and-the-army gloriously leading-back into France victor returned

29 · THE MURDER OF CHARLES THE GOOD

Count Charles of Flanders is murdered at prayer in Bruges by the provost's kin. Louis enters Flanders, makes William of Normandy count, besieges the murderers in the church and tower, and punishes them with terrible deaths, then takes Ypres from William the Bastard.

Egregie factum, quo nobilius ab adolescentia usque ad vitæ
excellently done than-which more-nobly from youth right to of-life
limitem nullum perpetravit, vitando fastidium, cum multa
the-limit nothing he-accomplished by-avoiding tedium though many-things
egeat, brevi narratione memorare, non quomodo sed quid fecerit
it-need in-brief narration to-recall not how but what he-did
significantes, proposuimus. Famosus comes vir potentissimus
signifying we-have-proposed the-famous count a-man most-powerful
Carolus, de amita domini regis Ludovici, Danorum regis
Charles from the-aunt of-the-lord king Louis of-the-Danes of-the-king

filius, cum successisset jure consanguinitatis fortissimo
the-son when he-had-succeeded by-right of-kinship to-the-most-strong
comiti Balduino, Hierosolymitani Roberti filio, Flandriæ terram
count Baldwin of-the-Jerusalemite Robert the-son of-Flanders the-land
valde populosam tam strenue quam diligenter administrabat,
very populous as vigorously as diligently administered
ecclesiæ Dei illustris defensor, eleemosynarum liberalitate
of-the-church of-God illustrious defender of-alms in-liberality
conspicuus, justitiæ tutor insignis. Qui cum debitor honoris
conspicuous of-justice guardian notable who when as-debtor of-the-honor
adepti, potenter quosdam genere humiles, opibus elatos,
obtained mightily certain in-birth humble in-wealth lifted-up
dominio ejus lineam consanguinitatis absentare superbe
from-the-lordship his the-line of-kinship to-withdraw proudly
innitentes (erant enim de fæce conditionis servilis), judicio
striving they-were for of the-dregs of-condition servile by-judgment
curiæ convenienter satis repeteret, ipsi, videlicet Brugensis
of-the-court fittingly enough reclaimed they namely of-the-Bruges
ecclesiæ præpositus et sui, viri superbissimi et famosi
church the-provost and his-kin men most-proud and notorious
proditores, crudelissime ei insidiabantur. Cum igitur quadam
traitors most-cruelly for-him lay-in-wait when therefore on-a-certain
die Brugas venisset, summo mane ecclesiæ Dei assistens,
day to-Bruges he-had-come at-highest morning at-the-church of-God attending
pavimento prostratus, librum orationum manu tenens orabat:
on-the-pavement prostrate the-book of-prayers in-hand holding he-was-praying
cum subito Buchardus quidam, nepos præpositi præfati, satelles
when suddenly Bouchard a-certain nephew of-the-provost aforesaid a-henchman
truculentus, cum aliis de eadem sceleratissima radice et
savage with others of the-same most-wicked root and
aliis traditionis pessimæ complicibus, oranti, immo Deo
other of-betrayal most-evil accomplices to-(him)-praying nay to-God

loquenti, tacite retrocedit, et caute gladio evaginato, collum
speaking silently steps-back and cautiously the-sword unsheathed the-neck
terræ prostratum comitis suavissime tangens, ut paululum
to-the-ground prostrate of-the-count most-gently touching that a-little
erectum ferientis gladio se inopinate dirigeret, ensem
raised of-the-striker to-the-sword itself unexpectedly might-direct the-blade
ei applicans, uno ictu impius pium, servus dominum
to-him applying with-one blow the-impious the-pious the-servant the-lord
sceleratissime detruncat. Qui autem astabant necis impiæ
most-wickedly cuts-down those-who moreover stood-by of-the-killing impious
cooperatores, sanguinem ejus sitientes, tanquam canes in
co-workers the-blood his thirsting like dogs on
relicta cadavera debacchantes, innocentem laniare gaudebant,
the-abandoned corpses raging the-innocent to-mangle rejoiced
summopere gloriantes quod opere complere potuerant quem
exceedingly glorying that in-deed to-fulfill they-had-been-able which
conceperant dolorem et quam pepererant iniquitatem.
they-had-conceived sorrow and which they-had-brought-forth iniquity
Et apponentes iniquitatem super iniquitatem, utpote malitia
and adding iniquity upon iniquity as-being by-malice
sua excæcati, quoscumque castellanos, quoscumque nobiliores
their blinded whatever castellans whatever nobler
comitis barones, sive in eadem ecclesia sive extra in castro
of-the-count barons whether in the-same church or outside in the-castle
offendere poterant, infelicissimo miseræ mortis genere,
to-come-upon they-could by-the-most-unhappy of-wretched death kind
imparatos nec confessos trucidabant. Quibus tamen prodesse
unprepared nor confessed they-slaughtered to-whom yet to-profit
valde arbitramur, quod pro fidelitate domini sui taliter
greatly we-think that for the-fidelity of-lord their thus
mactati, in ecclesia orantes sunt reperti, cum scriptum sit:
slain in church praying they-were found since written it-is

Ubi te invenero, ibi te judicabo. Comitem vero truces
where you I-shall-find there you I-shall-judge the-count but the-savage-men
in ipsa ecclesia tumulantes, ne honorifice extra deplangeretur
in the-very church burying lest honorably outside he-be-mourned
et sepeliretur, et pro gloriosa vita et gloriosiore morte
and be-buried and for (his)-glorious life and more-glorious death
devotus populus in ejus ultionem incitaretur, ecclesiam ipsam
the-devout people to his vengeance be-roused the-church itself
speluncam latronum statuentes, tam ipsam quam comitis
a-den of-robbers making as-much it as of-the-count
domum ecclesiæ inhærentem muniverunt, et quibuscumque
the-house to-the-church adjoining they-fortified and with-whatever
paratis victualium alimentis, et seipsos exinde protegere, et
prepared of-provisions supplies both themselves thence to-protect and
terram sibi allicere summa superbia deliberant.
the-land to-themselves to-attract with-highest pride they-resolve
Tanti igitur et tam scelerati horrore facti attoniti, qui
of-so-great therefore and so wicked by-horror deed astounded who
his non consenserant Flandriæ barones, lachrymabiles
to-these not had-consented of-Flanders the-barons tearful
exequias persolventes, notam proditionis evitant, dum hoc
obsequies paying the-brand of-treachery they-shun while this
domino regi Ludovico, nec ei tantum, sed fama volante
to-the-lord king Louis nor to-him only but report flying
per universum orbem denuntiant. Rex autem et amore
through the-whole world they-announce the-king moreover both by-love
justitiæ et consanguinitatis affectu in ultionem tantæ
of-justice and of-kinship by-affection to vengeance of-so-great
proditionis excitatus, nec regis Anglici, nec comitis
treachery roused neither of-the-king English nor of-count
Theobaldi guerra detentus, Flandriam animosus intrat, ut
Theobald by-the-war held-back Flanders spirited enters that

nequissimos atrocissime perdat, toto animi et operis
the-most-wicked most-atrociously he-destroy with-whole of-mind and of-deed
nisu exæstuat. Comitem Flandriæ Guillelmum Normannum,
striving he-boils count of-Flanders William the-Norman
filium Roberti Hierosolymitani Normanniæ comitis (ad eum
son of-Robert the-Jerusalemite of-Normandy count to him
enim jure consanguinitatis spectabat), constituit. Ut autem
for by-right of-kinship it-belonged he-appoints as moreover
Brugas descendit, non veritus terræ barbariem, nec fœdam
to-Bruges he-went-down not fearing of-the-land the-barbarism nor the-foul
proditoriæ consanguinitatis lineam, ipsos proditores in ecclesia
traitorous of-kinship line the-very traitors in the-church
et turre obsessos coarctat, victualia præter sua, quæ divino
and the-tower besieged he-presses provisions besides their-own which by-divine
nutu eorum etiam usui importuna repugnabant, prohibet.
nod their even to-the-use troublesome resisted he-forbids
Ut autem fame, peste et gladio aliquantisper eos contrivit,
as moreover by-hunger plague and sword for-a-while them he-wore-down
ecclesiam relinquentes, turrim tantum, ut eos turris retineret,
the-church leaving the-tower only that them the-tower might-hold
retinuerunt. Jam ergo de vita eis desperantibus, cum jam
they-held now therefore of life they despairing when now
in luctum verteretur cythara eorum, et organum eorum
into mourning was-turned the-harp their and organ their
in vocem flentium, nequissimus Buchardus sociorum
into the-voice of-those-weeping the-most-wicked Bouchard of-his-companions
consensu fuga lapsus, terram exire volens nec valens, sola
by-consent in-flight slipped-away the-land to-leave wishing nor able by-sole
iniquitate propria prohibente, in firmitate cujusdam amici
iniquity his-own forbidding in the-stronghold of-a-certain friend
et familiaris reversus, interceptus regis imperio,
and intimate having-turned-back intercepted of-the-king by-the-command

exquisito miseræ mortis genere, alta rota superligatus,
by-an-exquisite of-wretched death kind on-a-high wheel bound-on
corvorum et alitum rapacitati expositus, desuper oculis
of-crows and birds to-the-greed exposed from-above in-the-eyes
defossus et tota facie dilaceratus, inferiorum sagittis et
dug-out and in-the-whole face torn of-those-below by-arrows and
lanceis et jaculis millies perforatus, miserrime interfectus,
lances and darts a-thousand-times pierced most-wretchedly killed
in cloacam projectus est. Bertoldus vero caput iniquitatis,
into a-sewer thrown was Bertulf but the-head of-iniquity
cum similiter effugere decrevisset, cum huc illucque satis
when likewise to-escape he-had-decided when hither and-thither quite
licenter deambulasset, sola superbia reversus (dicebat enim:
freely he-had-walked-about by-sole pride turned-back he-said for
Quis ego, aut quid ego?), suis etiam capitur, et regis
who I or what I by-his-own even he-is-taken and of-the-king
arbitrio expositus, merita et miserrima morte est
to-the-judgment exposed by-deserved and most-wretched death was
damnatus. Furcis enim cum cane suspensus, quotiens canis
condemned on-the-gallows for with a-dog hung as-often-as the-dog
percutiebatur, in eum iram retorquens, totam faciem ejus
was-struck upon him its-anger turning the-whole face his
masticando devorabat; aliquando etiam, quod horribile dictu est,
by-chewing devoured sometimes also what horrible to-tell is
stercorabat: sicque miseram vitam miserior miserrimo
it-befouled and-thus wretched life more-wretched than-the-most-wretched
morte perpetua terminavit. Quos autem in turre incluserat,
by-death perpetual he-ended whom moreover in the-tower he-had-shut-up
multis angustiis ad deditionem cogens, sigillatim unum post
by-many straits to surrender forcing singly one after
alium, coram suis, fractis cervicibus dejecit. Quemdam
another before their-own with-broken necks he-cast-down a-certain-one

etiam eorum, Isaac nomine, timore mortis in monasterio
also of-them Isaac by-name from-fear of-death in monastery
quodam tonsoratum, demonachatum, patibulo affixit.
a-certain tonsured unmonked on-the-gibbet he-fixed
Potitus itaque Brugensi victoria, rex cum suis Ipram,
having-won and-so the-Bruges victory the-king with his-men Ypres
peroptimum castrum, contra Guillelmum Bastardum, proditionis
a-very-excellent castle against William the-Bastard of-the-treachery
fautorem, ut et in eum ulciscatur, accelerat. Brugenses
the-abettor that also on him he-might-take-vengeance hastens the-men-of-Bruges
tam minis quam blanditiis, directis ad eos nunciis, allicit.
as-much by-threats as blandishments sent to them envoys he-entices
Dumque Guillelmus cum trecentis militibus ei obviat, altera
and-while William with three-hundred knights him meets one
pars regalis exercitus in eum irruit, altera ex obliquo
part of-the-royal army upon him rushes the-other from the-side
alia porta castellum audacter occupat, eoque retento,
by-another gate the-castle boldly seizes and-it kept
Guillelmum a tota Flandria exhæredatum exterminat: et
William from the-whole Flanders disinherited he-banishes and
quia proditione ad possidendam Flandriam aspiraverat, merito
because by-treachery to possessing Flanders he-had-aspired deservedly
in tota Flandria nihil obtinuit. His ergo et diversis
in the-whole Flanders nothing he-obtained by-these therefore and various
ultionum modis, et sanguinis multi effusione lota et quasi
of-vengeances ways and of-blood much by-the-pouring washed and as-if
rebaptizata Flandria, Guillelmo Normanno comite constituto,
rebaptized Flanders William the-Norman as-count appointed
rex in Franciam, Deo auxiliante, victor remeavit.
the-king into France God helping victor returned

Louis marches against Thomas of Marle at Coucy, and Count Ralph of Vermandois wounds him mortally. Thomas barely consents to the viaticum and dies unrepentant without it, and the king wrings the merchants' release from his family. Later, quarreling with Amaury of Montfort over the seneschalship, Louis razes Livry, and is wounded in the leg by a crossbow bolt.

Sed et aliam consimilem et Deo gratam et alia
but also another very-like and to-God pleasing and on-another
vice famosam fecit ultionem, cum hominem perditissimum
occasion famous he-made vengeance when the-man most-abandoned
Thomam de Marna, ecclesiam Dei terebrantem, nec
Thomas of Marle the-church of-God boring neither
Deum nec hominem reverentem, in manu forti celeriter
God nor man revering with hand strong swiftly
tanquam titionem fumigantem extinxit. Querulo siquidem
as a-firebrand smoking he-quenched by-the-querulous indeed
ecclesiarum planctu compulsus, cum Laudunum ad ulciscendum
of-the-churches lament compelled when to-Laon for avenging
adventasset, episcoporum et regni optimatum persuasione,
he-had-come of-the-bishops and of-the-kingdom of-the-magnates by-the-persuasion
et maxime egregii comitis Viromandensis Radulfi, qui
and especially of-the-excellent count of-Vermandois Ralph who
potentior aliis post regem in partibus illis erat, consilio,
more-powerful than-others after the-king in parts those was by-the-counsel
in eum ducere exercitum Cociacum deliberatum est.
against him to-lead the-army to-Coucy resolved it-was
Festinante autem rege ad castrum, cum qui missi fuerant
hastening moreover the-king to the-castle when those-who sent had-been
opportunum explorare accessum importunum omnino et
a-suitable to-explore access unsuitable wholly and

inaccessibile renunciassent, et a multis angariaretur, juxta
inaccessible had-reported and by many he-was-pressed according-to
audita consilium mutare debere, rex ipsa indignatus
things-heard his-plan to-change to-be-bound the-king by-the-very indignant
animositate: «Lauduni, inquit, hoc remansit consilium. Quod
spirit at-Laon he-says this remained plan what
enim ibi deliberatum est, nec pro morte nec pro vita
for there resolved was neither for death nor for life
mutabimus. Vilesceret merito regiæ majestatis magnificentia,
shall-we-change would-grow-cheap deservedly of-royal majesty the-magnificence
si scelerati hominis formidine refugi derideremur.» Hæc ait,
if of-a-wicked man for-fear fleeing we-were-mocked these-things he-said
et mira animositate, licet corpore gravis, per abrupta
and with-wondrous spirit though in-body heavy through steep-places
et nemoribus obstrusas vias, licet periculose, cum exercitu
and by-woods blocked ways though perilously with the-army
penetrans, cum prope castrum pervenisset, nunciatum est
penetrating when near the-castle he-had-come announced it-was
strenuissimo comiti Radulfo, ex alia parte castri vaganti,
to-the-most-vigorous count Ralph on the-other side of-the-castle roaming
exercitui insidias parari et ruinæ eorum instantissime
for-the-army ambushes to-be-prepared and ruin their most-urgently
demoliri. Qui illico armatus, cum paucis sociorum illuc via
to-contrive who at-once armed with few of-companions thither by-a-road
opaca tendens, conspicatus, præmissis quibusdam militibus
shady making having-seen sent-ahead some knights
suis, jam percussum illum cecidisse, equum calcaribus
his already struck that-man to-have-fallen his-horse with-spurs
urgens, irruit in eum, et audacter gladio percutiens,
urging rushes upon him and boldly with-the-sword striking
lethale vulnus infligit, nec nisi prohiberetur repetendum
a-lethal wound inflicts nor unless he-were-prevented to-be-repeated

foret. Captus itaque et ad mortem sauciatus, regique
would-it-be taken and-so and to death wounded and-to-king
Ludovico præsentatus, ejus imperio Laudunum, laude
Louis presented his by-command to-Laon with-the-praise
omnium fere et suorum et nostrorum, est deportatus.
of-all almost both of-his-own and of-ours was carried
Sequente autem die, publicata terra plana ejus ruptisque
on-the-following moreover day confiscated land the-level his and-broken
stagnis, quia dominum terræ habebat terræ parcens,
the-ponds because the-lord of-the-land he-had to-the-land sparing
Laudunum regressus dominus rex Ludovicus, hominem
to-Laon having-returned the-lord king Louis the-man
perditissimum nec vulneribus, nec carcere, nec minis, nec
most-abandoned neither by-wounds nor by-prison nor by-threats nor
prece ad redditionem mercatorum, quos mira proditione
by-prayer to the-surrender of-the-merchants whom by-wondrous treachery
in conductu spoliatos omnibus suis carcere detinebat,
in safe-conduct despoiled of-all their-goods in-prison he-held
cogere valebat. Qui cum conjugem ex regia permissione sibi
to-force was-able who when his-wife by royal permission to-himself
ascivisset, magis videbatur de mercatorum, qui ab eo
had-summoned more he-seemed about of-the-merchants who from him
exigebantur, quam de vitæ amissione dolere. Cumque jam
were-demanded than about of-life the-loss to-grieve and-when already
plagarum dolore gravissimo pene ad mortem constrictus, a
of-blows by-the-pain most-grievous almost to death bound by
multis etiam confiteri et viaticum suscipere rogaretur, vix
many even to-confess and the-viaticum to-receive he-was-asked scarcely
concessit. Cum autem corpus Domini manu sacerdotis in
he-consented when moreover the-body of-the-Lord by-the-hand of-the-priest into
eam quam miser inhabitabat cameram deportatum esset,
that which the-wretch inhabited chamber carried had-been

sicut si ipse Dominus Jesus miserrimum vas hominis minime
as if himself the-Lord Jesus the-most-wretched vessel of-a-man least
pœnitentis nullo modo ingredi sustineret, mox ut ille nequam
penitent in-no way to-enter endured as-soon as that wicked-one
collum erexit, illico confractum retorsit, et spiritum
his-neck raised at-once broken he-twisted-back and the-spirit
teterrimum divinæ expers Eucharistiæ exhalavit. Rex
most-foul of-the-divine without Eucharist breathed-out the-king
autem ulterius aut mortuum aut mortui terram prosequi
moreover further either the-dead-man or of-the-dead-man the-land to-pursue
dedignatus, mercatorum emancipationem et thesaurorum ejus
disdaining of-the-merchants the-release and of-the-treasures his
maximam partem a conjuge et filiis extorsit, et pace
the-greatest part from wife and sons he-wrung and peace
ecclesiis morte tyranni restituta, victor Parisius remeavit.
to-the-churches by-the-death of-the-tyrant restored victor to-Paris returned
Sed et alio tempore, cum occasione dapiferatus emersisset
but also at-another time when on-occasion of-the-seneschalship had-arisen
inter dominum regem et Amalricum de Monte Forti virum
between the-lord king and Amaury of Mont- -fort a-man
illustrem, stimulante Stephano Garlandensi, grandis altercatio,
illustrious goading Stephen of-Garlande a-great dispute
et tam regis anglici quam comitis Theobaldi fulciretur
and as-much of-the-king English as of-count Theobald was-propped
suffragio, festinato exercitu Livriacum obsedit castrum, et
by-the-support hastened an-army Livry he-besieged the-castle and
erectis impugnatoriis machinis, frequenti invasione crebro
raised of-assault engines with-frequent invasion often
aggrediens impetu, fortissime expugnavit. Et quoniam ejus
attacking by-onset most-strongly stormed and since his
comes et cognatus germanus Radulfus Viromandensis,
companion and cousin german Ralph of-Vermandois

balistarii quadro, in assultu promptissimus, oculo est
of-a-crossbowman by-the-bolt in the-assault most-ready of-an-eye was
privatus, fortissimum castrum funditus subvertit. Sed et
deprived the-most-strong castle utterly he-overturned but also
tanto guerrarum bello eos affecit, quod et dapiferatum et
with-so-great of-wars war them he-afflicted that both the-seneschalship and
dapiferatus hæreditatem bona pace relinquentes abdicaverunt.
of-the-seneschalship the-inheritance in-good peace leaving renounced
Qua guerra ipse etiam rex, quia militaris vir erat, semper
in-which war himself also the-king because a-military man he-was always
promptus in hostes, balistarii immissione quadri crure
ready against the-enemies of-a-crossbowman by-the-loosing of-a-bolt in-the-leg
perforatus, læsus valde, multa animositate vilipendebat,
pierced hurt greatly with-much spirit he-despised
et tanquam si regiæ majestatis thronus vulneris dolorem
and as if of-royal majesty the-throne of-the-wound the-pain
dedignaretur, rigide angustiam quasi non sustinens sustinebat.
disdained stiffly the-distress as-if not enduring he-endured

Rival parties elect Innocent and Peter Leonis; Louis's council at Étampes accepts Innocent, who keeps Easter at Saint-Denis. Prince Philip dies when a pig trips his horse, young Louis is anointed at Reims, and the aging king longs to be a monk at Saint-Denis.

Eo autem tempore, ecclesiam romanam schismate periculoso
at-that moreover time the-church Roman by-a-schism perilous
gravissime et pene præcordialiter contigit sauciari. Venerandæ
most-grievously and almost to-the-heart it-happened to-be-wounded of-venerable
memoriæ summo pontifice et universali papa Honorio
memory the-supreme pontiff and universal pope Honorius
viam universæ carnis ingresso, cum ecclesiæ romanæ
the-way of-all flesh having-entered when of-the-church Roman
majores et sapientiores, ad removendum ecclesiæ tumultum,
the-greater and wiser for removing of-the-church the-tumult
consensissent apud Sanctum Marcum et non alibi, et non
had-agreed at Saint Mark's and not elsewhere and not
nisi communiter, romano more celebrem fieri electionem,
except in-common in-the-Roman manner a-solemn to-be-made election
qui assiduitate et familiaritate propinquiores apostolici
those-who in-attendance and intimacy nearer to-the-apostolic
fuerant, timore tumultuantium Romanorum illuc convenire
had-been for-fear of-the-rioting Romans thither to-assemble
non audentes, antequam publicaretur domini papæ decessus,
not daring before was-made-public of-the-lord pope the-death
personam venerabilem cardinalem de Sancto Angelo diaconum
a-person venerable cardinal of Saint Angelo deacon
Gregorium summum eligunt pontificem. Qui autem Petri
Gregory as-supreme elect pontiff those-who moreover of-Peter

Leonis parti favebant, apud Sanctum Marcum pro
Leonis to-the-party favored at Saint Mark's according-to
pacto alios invitantes convenerunt, dominique papæ
the-agreement others inviting assembled and-of-the-lord pope
morte comperta, ipsum eumdem Petrum Leonis cardinalem
the-death learned the-very same Peter Leonis cardinal
presbyterum, multorum et episcoporum et cardinalium et
priest of-many both of-bishops and of-cardinals and
clericorum et Romanorum nobilium consensu, votive elegerunt,
of-clerics and of-Romans noble by-the-consent eagerly elected
sicque schisma perniciosum statuendo, Christi Domini tunicam
and-thus a-schism pernicious by-establishing of-Christ the-Lord the-tunic
inconsutilem discindendo, partiti sunt ecclesiam Dei, et dum
seamless by-tearing divided have the-church of-God and while

Magno se judice quisque tuetur,
by-a-great himself judge each defends

alii alios alliciunt, alii alios anathemate innodant, judicium
some others entice some others with-anathema bind judgment
præter suum non attendunt. Cum autem Petri Leonis pars,
besides their-own not they-heed when moreover of-Peter Leonis the-party
tum parentum suffragio, tum romanæ nobilitatis præsidio
both of-kinsmen by-the-support and of-Roman nobility by-the-protection
prævaleret, dominus papa Innocentius cum suis urbem
prevailed the-lord pope Innocent with his-men the-city
relinquere deliberat, ut orbem terrarum obtinere prævaleat.
to-leave resolves that the-circle of-lands to-hold he-may-prevail
Descendens itaque navali subsidio ad partes Galliarum, tutum
descending and-so by-naval aid to the-parts of-Gaul a-safe
et approbatum eligit personæ et Ecclesiæ post Deum
and approved chooses for-his-person and for-the-Church after God

defensionis asylum regnum nobilissimum Francorum, nunciisque
of-defense asylum the-kingdom most-noble of-the-Franks and-envoys
suis ad regem Ludovicum destinatis, et personæ et Ecclesiæ
his to king Louis sent both his-person and the-Church
opitulari efflagitat. Quo rex, ut erat piissimus Ecclesiæ
to-help he-begs at-which the-king as he-was most-pious of-the-Church
defensor, cito conpunctus, concilium archiepiscoporum,
defender quickly moved a-council of-archbishops
episcoporum, abbatum et religiosorum virorum Stampis
of-bishops of-abbots and of-religious men at-Étampes
convocat, et eorum consilio magis de persona quam de
convokes and their by-counsel more about the-person than about
electione investigans (fit enim sæpe ut Romanorum
the-election inquiring it-happens for often that of-the-Romans
tumultuantium quibuscumque molestiis Ecclesiæ electio
rioting by-whatever troubles of-the-Church the-election
minus ordinarie fieri valeat), ei assensum electioni
less regularly to-be-made can to-him assent to-the-election
consilio virorum præbet, et deinceps manu tenere promittit.
by-the-counsel of-men he-gives and thereafter by-hand to-hold promises
Cum autem et susceptionis et servitii primitias Cluniaci
when moreover both of-reception and of-service the-first-fruits at-Cluny
per nos ei delegasset, tanto exhilarati suffragio, cum
through us to-him he-had-delegated by-so-great gladdened support with
gratia et benedictione domino regi per nos gratias referentes,
favor and blessing to-the-lord king through us thanks rendering
ad propria remiserunt. Ut autem usque Sanctum Benedictum
to our-own sent-back as moreover as-far-as Saint Benedict
super Ligerim descendit, dominus rex cum regina et filiis ei
on the-Loire he-came-down the-lord king with the-queen and sons him
occurrens, nobilem et diademate sæpius coronatum verticem
meeting the-noble and with-diadem more-often crowned head

tanquam ad sepulchrum Petri inclinans, pedibus ejus procumbit,
as at the-tomb of-Peter bowing at-the-feet his falls-forward
catholicum affectum et devoti servitii effectum ei et
catholic affection and of-devout service the-effect to-him and
Ecclesiæ promittit. Cujus exemplo et rex Angliæ Henricus
to-the-Church promises whose by-example also the-king of-England Henry
ei Carnotum occurrens, devotissime pedibus ejus prostratus,
him at-Chartres meeting most-devoutly at-the-feet his prostrate
votivam suî suorumque in terra sua susceptionem, et
the-wished-for of-himself and-of-his-own in land his reception and
obedientiæ filialis promittit plenitudinem. Visitando itaque
of-obedience filial promises the-fullness by-visiting and-so
gallicanam, sicut res exigebat, Ecclesiam, ad partes se
the-Gallic as the-matter required Church to the-parts himself
transfert Lotharingorum. Cui cum imperator Lotharius civitate
he-transfers of-the-Lorrainers whom when the-emperor Lothar in-the-city
Leodii, cum magno archiepiscoporum et episcoporum et
of-Liège with a-great of-archbishops and of-bishops and
theutonici regni optimatum collegio, celeberrime occurrisset,
of-the-German kingdom of-the-magnates college most-solemnly had-met
in platea ante episcopalem ecclesiam humillime seipsum
in the-square before the-episcopal church most-humbly himself
stratorem offerens, pedes per medium sanctæ processionis ad
as-groom offering on-foot through the-middle of-the-holy procession to
eum festinat, alia manu virgam ad defendendum, alia
him hastens with-one hand a-rod for defending with-the-other
frenum albi equi accipiens, tanquam dominum deducebat.
the-bridle of-the-white horse taking as his-lord he-led
Descendente vero tota statione, eum suppodiando deportans,
descending but the-whole station him by-propping carrying
celsitudinem paternitatis ejus notis et ignotis clarificavit.
the-loftiness of-paternity his to-known and unknown he-made-clear

Pace itaque imperii et Ecclesiæ confœderata, instantem
the-peace and-so of-the-empire and of-the-Church allied the-approaching
sancti Paschæ diem apud nos in ecclesia beati Dionysii
of-holy Easter day with us in the-church of-blessed Denis
tanquam speciali filia affectat celebrare. Nos autem ob
as in-a-special daughter he-desires to-celebrate we moreover for
timorem Dei et Ecclesiæ, matris et filiæ, gratanter
fear of-God and of-the-Church mother and daughter gladly
pridie Cœnæ Domini suscipientes, celeberrimam Deo
on-the-day-before of-the-Supper of-the-Lord receiving a-most-solemn to-God
et hominibus proferentes processionem, adventum ejus odis
and men bringing-forth procession the-arrival his with-songs
exultationis collætantes amplexati sumus. Cœna ergo
of-exultation rejoicing-together embraced we-have the-Supper therefore
Domini apud nos more romano et sumptuoso donativo,
of-the-Lord with us in-manner Roman and with-costly donative
quod presbyterium nominatur, celebrata, venerandam Domini
which the-presbyterium is-named celebrated the-venerable of-the-Lord
crucifixionem venerando prosequtus, sanctissimæ Resurrectionis
crucifixion by-venerating having-followed of-the-most-holy Resurrection
vigilias honore debito pernoctavit. Summo mane vero
the-vigils with-honor due he-kept-through-the-night at-highest morning but
extrinseca via ad ecclesiam Martyrum in strata, cum multo
by-an-outer road to the-church of-the-Martyrs on the-highway with a-large
collateralium collegio, quasi secreto commeavit, ibique more
of-attendants company as-if secretly he-went and-there in-manner
romano seipsos præparantes, multo et mirabili ornatu
Roman themselves preparing with-much and wondrous adornment
circumdantes, capiti ejus frigium, ornamentum imperiale,
surrounding on-the-head his the-phrygium an-ornament imperial
instar galeæ circulo aureo circinatum, imponunt, albo et
like a-helmet with-a-circle golden ringed they-place on-a-white and

palliato equo insidentem educunt; ipsi etiam palliati equos
caparisoned horse sitting they-lead-out they also cloaked horses
albis operturis variatos equitantes, odas personando festive
with-white coverings varied riding songs by-sounding festively
geminati procedunt. Barones vero ecclesiæ nostræ feodati et
in-pairs proceed the-barons but of-church our enfeoffed and
castellani nobiles, stratores humillimi, pedites eum equitantem
castellans noble grooms most-humble on-foot him riding
freno deducebant. Quidam etiam prævii copiosam
by-the-bridle led some also going-before plentiful
monetam, ut turbam impedientem removerent, jactitabant.
coin that the-crowd hindering they-might-remove scattered
Via autem regia et salicibus et fixis stipitibus preciosis
the-road moreover royal both with-willows and with-fixed posts with-precious
palliis rutilabat. Cum autem et militiæ cunei et populi
palls glowed when moreover both of-knighthood the-wedges and of-the-people
multi concursus ei honoratissime occurreret, nec etiam ipsa
many the-concourse him most-honorably met nor even the-very
Judæorum Parisiensium excæcata defuit synagoga, quæ legis
of-the-Jews of-Paris blinded was-absent synagogue which of-the-law
litteram, rotulam scilicet velatam offerens, ab ore ejus hanc
the-letter the-roll namely veiled offering from the-mouth his this
misericordiæ et pietatis obtinet supplicationem: «Auferat
of-mercy and of-piety obtains supplication may-take-away
Deus omnipotens velamen a cordibus vestris.» Perveniens
God almighty the-veil from hearts your arriving
vero ad Sanctorum basilicam, coronis aureis rutilantem,
but at of-the-Saints the-basilica with-crowns golden glowing
argenti et plus centies auri preciosarum gemmarum
of-silver and more a-hundred-times of-gold of-precious gems
et margaritarum splendore fulgurantem, divina divine
and of-pearls by-the-splendor flashing the-divine-things divinely

celebrans, agni veri paschalis victimas sacratissimas
celebrating of-the-lamb true paschal the-victims most-sacred
nobis cooperando immolavit. Finita vero missa, erectis in
with-us co-working he-sacrificed finished but the-mass raised in
claustro palliis strato mensis, materialem agnum tanquam
the-cloister palls on-the-strewn tables the-material lamb as-if
thoris accubitati sumunt, cætera nobilis mensæ fercula
on-couches reclining they-take the-other of-the-noble table dishes
consueto more suscipiunt. Sed et sequente die eandem
in-the-wonted manner they-receive but also on-the-following day the-same
ab ecclesia sancti Remigii ad principalem reciprocant
from the-church of-Saint Remigius to the-principal they-return
processionem. Transactis itaque tribus post Pascha diebus,
procession passed and-so three after Easter days
cum gratiarum actione et auxilii et consilii promissione
with of-thanks the-giving and of-aid and of-counsel promise
Parisium transmeavit. Exinde Galliarum ecclesias visitando, et
to-Paris he-passed thence of-Gaul the-churches by-visiting and
de earum copia inopiæ suæ defectum supplendo, cum per
from their abundance of-want his the-lack by-supplying when through
terram aliquantisper deambulasset, Compendii demorari elegit.
the-land for-a-while he-had-walked-about at-Compiègne to-stay he-chose
Interea contigit singulare et ulterius inauditum Franciæ
meanwhile there-happened a-singular and further unheard-of of-France
regni infortunium. Regis enim Ludovici filius, floridus
of-the-kingdom misfortune of-the-king for Louis the-son blooming
et amœnus puer, Philippus, bonorum spes, timorque
and lovely boy Philip of-the-good the-hope and-the-fear
malorum, cum quadam die per civitatis Parisiensis suburbium
of-the-wicked when on-a-certain day through of-the-city of-Paris the-suburb
equitaret, obvio porco diabolico offensus equus gravissime
he-was-riding by-a-meeting pig devilish struck the-horse most-heavily

cecidit, sessoremque suum nobilissimum puerum silice
fell and-rider its most-noble the-boy on-the-flint
consternatum, mole ponderis sui conculcatum, contrivit.
thrown-down by-the-mass of-weight its trampled crushed
Quo dolore civitas et quicumque audierunt consternati
by-which grief the-city and whoever heard dismayed
(ea siquidem die exercitum ad expeditionem asciverat),
on-that indeed day the-army for an-expedition he-had-summoned
vociferabantur, flebant et ejulabant, tenerrimum recolligentes
cried-out wept and wailed the-most-tender gathering-up
puerum pene extinctum, in proximam domum reportant.
boy almost dead into the-nearest house they-carry
Nocte vero instante, proh dolor! spiritum exhalavit. Quantus
night but coming-on alas grief his-spirit he-breathed-out how-great
autem et quam mirabilis dolor et luctus patrem et matrem
moreover and how wondrous grief and mourning the-father and mother
et regni optimates affecerit, nec ipse Homerus elicere
and of-the-kingdom the-magnates affected not himself Homer to-draw-out
sufficeret. Eo autem in ecclesia beati Dionysii, in sepultura
would-suffice him moreover in the-church of-blessed Denis in the-burial
regum et sinistra altaris sanctæ Trinitatis parte, multorum
of-kings and on-the-left of-the-altar of-the-holy Trinity side of-many
conventu episcoporum et regni optimatum, more
by-the-gathering of-bishops and of-the-kingdom of-the-magnates in-manner
regio humato, pater sapiens post lugubres querimonias, post
royal buried the-father wise after mournful complaints after
miserabiles vitæ superstitis imprecationes, religiosorum et
pitiable of-life surviving curses of-the-religious and
sapientium consilio, consolari admisit. Qui ergo intimi ejus
wise by-the-counsel to-be-consoled allowed who therefore intimate his
et familiares eramus, formidantes ob jugem debilitati
and familiar we-were dreading because-of the-continual of-weakened

corporis molestiam ejus subitum defectum, consuluimus ei
body trouble his sudden failing counseled him
quatinus filium Ludovicum, pulcherrimum puerum, regio
that his-son Louis a-most-handsome boy with-the-royal
diademate coronatum, sacri liquoris unctione regem secum
diadem crowned of-sacred liquid by-anointing king with-himself
ad refellendum æmulorum tumultum constitueret. Qui consiliis
for refuting of-rivals the-tumult he-should-establish who to-counsels
nostris adquiescens, Remis cum conjuge et filio et regni
our assenting to-Reims with his-wife and son and of-the-kingdom
proceribus devenit, ubi, in pleno et celeberrimo quod dominus
nobles came where in the-full and most-solemn which the-lord
papa Innocentius convocaverat concilio, sacri olei unctione
pope Innocent had-convoked council of-sacred oil by-anointing
et coronæ regni deportatione in regem sublimatum,
and of-the-crown of-the-kingdom by-the-bearing into king exalted
felicem providit regno successorem. Unde multis quasi
a-happy he-provided for-the-kingdom successor whence to-many as-if
quodam præsagio videbatur ejus debere amplificari potentia,
by-some presage it-seemed his to-be-bound to-be-enlarged the-power
qui tot et tantorum et tam diversorum archiepiscoporum,
who so-many and so-great and so various of-archbishops
episcoporum, Francorum, Theutonicorum, Aquitanorum,
of-bishops of-Franks of-Germans of-Aquitanians
Anglorum, Hispanorum suscepit benedictionem copiosam.
of-English of-Spaniards received blessing abundant
Cumque pater, vivi gaudio defuncti dolorem allevians,
and-when the-father of-the-living by-the-joy of-the-dead the-grief lightening
Parisium rediret, dominus papa, soluto concilio, Autissiodoro
to-Paris returned the-lord pope dissolved the-council at-Auxerre
elegit demorari. Opportunitatem vero repatriandi nanciscens
chose to-stay the-opportunity but of-returning-home getting

de imperatoris Ludovici comitatu (quia eum in manu forti
from of-the-emperor Louis the-escort because him with hand strong
Romam perducere et Petrum Leonis deponere spoponderat),
to-Rome to-conduct and Peter Leonis to-depose he-had-pledged
illuc cum eo devenit. Sed cum eum Augustum imperatorem
thither with him he-came but when him Augustus emperor
constituisset, Romanis resistentibus, pacem obtinere, Petro
he-had-made the-Romans resisting peace to-obtain Peter
Leonis vivente, non potuit. Sed cum Petrus Leonis de
Leonis living not he-could but when Peter Leonis from
medio abiisset, pace Ecclesiæ, post longam fluctuationem,
the-midst had-gone the-peace of-the-Church after long tossing
post diutinos et pene consumptivos languores, Dei auxilio
after lasting and almost consuming sicknesses of-God by-the-help
restituta, dominus papa felici successu sanctissimam
restored the-lord pope with-happy success the-most-holy
cathedram vitæ et officii merito nobilitavit.
chair of-life and of-office by-the-merit ennobled
Jamjamque dominus rex Ludovicus, et corporeæ gravitatis
and-now-already the-lord king Louis both of-bodily heaviness
mole et laborum continuato sudore aliquantisper fractus, ut
by-the-bulk and of-labors by-continued sweat somewhat broken as
humanæ complexionis mos est, corpore non animo deficiebat,
of-human constitution the-way is in-body not in-mind he-was-failing
cum tamen si quid regiæ majestati importunum per
though yet if anything to-royal majesty untoward through
universum regnum emergeret, inultum nullo modo præterire
the-whole kingdom arose unavenged in-no way to-pass-over
sustineret. Tantæ enim scientiæ et industriæ sexagenarius
he-endured of-so-great for knowledge and industry sixty-years-old
erat, ut, si impinguati corporis molestia jugis non resisteret,
he-was that if of-fattened body the-trouble continual not resisted

omnem universaliter hostem superando contereret. Unde sæpe
every universally enemy by-overcoming he-would-crush whence often
intimis ingemiscendo querebatur: «Heu, inquit, miseræ
to-intimates groaning he-complained alas he-says for-the-wretched
conditioni, quæ scire et posse insimul aut vix aut
condition which to-know and to-be-able together either scarcely or
nunquam admittit! Si enim juvenis scissem, aut modo senex
never admits if for young I-had-known or now old
possem, efficacissime regna multa perdomassem.» Ea tamen
I-could most-effectively kingdoms many I-would-have-subdued by-that yet
corporis debilitatus gravitate, etiam lecto rigidissimus, usque
of-body weakened heaviness even in-bed most-unbending so
adeo et regi Angliæ comitique Theobaldo et omnibus
far both the-king of-England and-count Theobald and all
resistebat, ut quicumque eum viderent et præclara opera
he-resisted that whoever him saw and the-brilliant works
audirent, animi nobilitatem prædicarent, corporis debilitatem
heard of-mind the-nobility proclaimed of-body the-weakness
deplangerent. Ea etiam molestatus angaria, cum contra
lamented by-that even troubled affliction when against
Theobaldum comitem, læso crure et vix deportato,
Theobald the-count with-hurt leg and scarcely carried
Bonam Vallem, præter claustra monachorum quæ defendebat,
Bonne- -val except the-cloister of-the-monks which he-defended
igne concremare fecisset, sed et alia vice cum Castellum
by-fire to-burn he-had-caused but also another time when Château-
Renardi, de feodo comitis Theobaldi, per homines etiam
-Renard of the-fief of-count Theobald through his-men even
absens destruxisset, ea quam extremam fecit expeditionem,
absent he-had-destroyed in-that which last he-made expedition
nobilissimo exercitu castrum Sancti Brictionis super fluvium
with-a-most-noble army the-castle of-Saint Brisson on the-river

Ligerim, ob suî rapacitatem et mercatorum deprædationem,
Loire for of-itself the-greed and of-merchants the-plundering
et incendio dissolvit, et turrim et dominum ad deditionem
both by-fire he-destroyed and the-tower and the-lord to surrender
coegit. Qua regressus expeditione, apud castellum novum
compelled from-which having-returned expedition at the-castle new
Montis Treherii gravi diarria ventris profluvio, sicut aliquando
of-Mont- -ereau by-heavy diarrhea of-the-belly by-the-flux as sometimes
consueverat, graviter cœpit anxiari. Qui, ut erat in consiliis
he-had-been-wont heavily began to-be-distressed who as he-was in counsels
providus, sibi ipsi consulens et miseratus animæ suæ,
provident for-himself himself providing and having-pitied soul his
Deo placens, frequentatæ confessionis et orationum sibi
to-God pleasing of-frequent confession and prayers for-himself
devotione providebat; hoc unum toto animi affectu
by-the-devotion provided this one-thing with-whole of-mind affection
præoptans, apud sanctos martyres protectores suos Dionysium
desiring to the-holy martyrs protectors his Denis
sociosque ejus se quomodocumque deferri, et ante
and-companions his himself somehow to-be-carried and before
sacratissima eorum corpora regni et coronæ depositione,
the-most-sacred their bodies of-the-kingdom and of-the-crown by-the-laying-down
coronam pro corona, pro regalibus insignibus et imperialibus
a-crown for a-crown for royal insignia and imperial
ornamentis humilem beati Benedicti habitum commutando,
ornaments the-humble of-blessed Benedict habit by-exchanging
monasticum ordinem profiteri. Videant qui monasticæ
the-monastic order to-profess let-them-see who from-monastic
paupertati derogant, quomodo non solum archiepiscopi, sed
poverty detract how not only archbishops but

et ipsi reges, transitoriæ vitam æternam præferentes, ad
also themselves kings to-the-transitory life eternal preferring to
singularem monastici ordinis tutelam securissime confugiunt.
the-singular of-the-monastic order guardianship most-securely flee

32 · THE DEATH OF KING LOUIS

Gravely ill, Louis confesses publicly, invests his son Louis with the ring, gives away his treasures, and receives the viaticum. Duke William of Aquitaine dies and leaves his daughter Eleanor to the king, who sends his son to marry her at Bordeaux. Louis dies in Paris on the first of August, aged about sixty, and is buried at Saint-Denis in a place that fits his body exactly.

Cum autem de die in diem gravi diarriæ turbaretur motu,
when moreover from day to day by-heavy of-diarrhea he-was-troubled motion
tantis et tam molestis medicorum potionibus, diversorum
by-so-many and so troublesome of-physicians potions of-various
et amarissimorum pulverum susceptionibus ad restringendum
and most-bitter powders by-the-takings for binding
infestabatur, ut nec etiam ipsi incolumes et virtuosi
he-was-assailed that not even themselves the-healthy and strong
sustinere prævalerent. Qui inter has et hujusmodi molestias,
to-endure could who among these and such troubles
innata dulcedine, benevolus omnibus ita blandiebatur, omnes
with-innate sweetness benevolent to-all so was-gracious all
admittebat, omnes demulcebat, ac si nihil molestiæ pateretur.
admitted all soothed as if nothing of-trouble he-suffered
Asperrimo itaque profluvii motu et longo macerati corporis
by-the-harshest and-so of-the-flux motion and by-long of-wasted body
defectu, dedignatus viliter aut inopinate mori, convocat
failing disdaining basely or unexpectedly to-die he-convokes

religiosos viros, episcopos et abbates, et multos Ecclesiæ
religious men bishops and abbots and many of-the-Church
sacerdotes; quærit, rejecto pudore omni, ob reverentiam
priests seeks cast-off shame all for reverence
Divinitatis et sanctorum Angelorum, coram devotissime
of-the-Divinity and of-the-holy Angels before-them most-devoutly
confiteri et securissimo Dominici corporis et sanguinis
to-confess and with-the-most-secure of-the-Lord's body and blood
viatico exitum suum muniri. Cumque idipsum præparare
viaticum departure his to-be-fortified and-when that-very-thing to-prepare
festinant, rex ipse inopinate se levans et præparans,
they-hasten the-king himself unexpectedly himself raising and preparing
vestitus cameram, cunctis admirantibus, obviam corpori Jesu
clothed the-chamber all wondering to-meet the-body of-Jesus
Christi exit, devotissimus assistit. Ubi, videntibus cunctis
Christ goes-out most-devout stands-by where seeing all
tam clericis quam laicis, regem exuens regnum deponit,
as-much clerics as laymen the-king putting-off the-kingdom he-lays-down
peccando regnum administrasse confitetur, filium suum
by-sinning the-kingdom to-have-administered confesses son his
Ludovicum annulo investit, ecclesiam Dei, pauperes et
Louis with-the-ring invests the-church of-God the-poor and
orphanos tueri, jus suum unicuique custodire, neminem in
orphans to-guard right his to-each to-keep no-one in
curia sua capere, si non præsentialiter ibidem delinquat, fide
court his to-seize if not in-person there he-offend by-faith
obligat. Ubi etiam aurum et argentum et vasa concupiscibilia
binds where also gold and silver and vessels desirable
et pallia et palliatas culcitras, et omne mobile quod
and palls and covered mattresses and every movable which
possidebat et quo ei serviebatur, ecclesiis et pauperibus
he-possessed and by-which to-him it-was-served to-the-churches and poor

et egenis pro amore Dei distribuens, nec chlamidibus
and needy for love of-God distributing neither cloaks
nec regiis indumentis usque ad camisiam pepercit. Capellam
nor royal garments right to the-shirt he-spared chapel
autem suam pretiosam, textum pretiosissimum auro et
moreover his precious a-gospel-book most-precious with-gold and
gemmis, thuribulum aureum quadraginta unciarum, candelabra
gems a-censer golden of-forty ounces candlesticks
centum sexaginta auri unciarum, calicem auro et
of-a-hundred sixty of-gold ounces a-chalice with-gold and
pretiosissimis gemmis carissimum, cappas de pallio pretiosas
most-precious gems most-costly copes of silk precious
decem, pretiosissimum jacynthum atavæ regis
ten a-most-precious jacinth of-his-great-grandmother of-the-king
Ruthenorum filiæ, quod de sua in manu nostra
of-the-Russians of-the-daughter which from his-own into hand our
reddens, ut coronæ spineæ Domini infigeretur præcepit,
handing that in-the-crown thorny of-the-Lord it-be-fixed he-ordered
sanctis Martyribus per nos destinavit, et si quocumque
to-the-holy Martyrs through us he-sent and if in-whatever
modo subsequi posset, devotissime spopondit. His igitur
way to-follow he-could most-devoutly he-pledged of-these therefore
exoneratus et Dei misericordia perfusus, humillime flexis
unburdened and of-God with-the-mercy steeped most-humbly bent
genibus ante sacratissimum corpus et sanguinem Domini
knees before the-most-sacred body and blood of-Lord
nostri Jesu Christi (qui enim mox missam celebraverant,
our Jesus Christ who for just-then mass had-celebrated
illuc ei cum processione devote attulerant), in hanc oris
thither to-him with procession devoutly had-brought into this of-mouth
et cordis veræ et catholicæ confessionis vocem, non tanquam
and of-heart of-true and catholic confession voice not as

illiteratus, sed tanquam litteratissimus theologus erumpit:
an-unlettered-man but as a-most-learned theologian bursts-out
«Ego peccator Ludovicus confiteor unum et verum Deum
I a-sinner Louis confess one and true God
Patrem et Filium et Spiritum sanctum, unam ex hac sancta
Father and Son and Spirit holy one of this holy
Trinitate personam, videlicet unigenitum et consubstantialem
Trinity person namely the-only-begotten and consubstantial
et coæternum Dei Patris Filium, de sacratissima Virgine
and coeternal of-God the-Father Son of the-most-sacred Virgin
Maria incarnatum, passum, mortuum et sepultum, tertia
Mary incarnate suffered dead and buried on-the-third
die resurrexisse, cœlos ascendisse, ad dexteram Dei Patris
day to-have-risen the-heavens to-have-ascended at the-right-hand of-God the-Father
consedere, vivos et mortuos extremo et magno judicio
to-sit the-living and dead in-the-last and great judgment
judicare. Hanc autem sacratissimi corporis ejus Eucharistiam
to-judge this moreover of-the-most-sacred body his Eucharist
illud idem credimus corpus quod assumptum est de Virgine,
that same we-believe body which taken-up was from the-Virgin
quod discipulis suis ad confœderandum et uniendum et
which to-disciples his for allying and uniting and
in se commanendum contradidit. Hunc sacratissimum
in himself abiding he-handed-over this most-sacred
sanguinem, illum eundem qui de latere ejus in cruce
blood that same which from the-side his on the-cross
pendentis defluxit, et firmissime credimus et ore
hanging flowed-down both most-firmly we-believe and with-mouth
et corde confitemur, hocque securissimo viatico decessum
and heart we-confess and-by-this most-secure viaticum departure
nostrum muniri, et contra omnem aeriam potestatem
our to-be-fortified and against every aerial power

certissima protectione defendi præoptamus.» Cum autem
by-most-certain protection to-be-defended we-desire when moreover
cunctis admirantibus, facta primum peccatorum confessione,
all wondering made first of-sins the-confession
devotissime corpori et sanguini Jesu Christi communicasset,
most-devoutly in-the-body and blood of-Jesus Christ he-had-communicated
tanquam illico convalescere incipiens, ad cameram rediit,
as-if at-once to-grow-well beginning to the-chamber returned
omnique sæcularis superbiæ rejecta pompa, sola linea culcitra
and-all of-worldly pride cast-off pomp on-only a-linen mattress
decubuit. Cumque eum de tanto tantillum, et de tam
lay-down and-when him from so-great so-little and from so
alto tam humilem, humano more me deflere conspicaretur:
high so humble in-a-human manner me to-weep-for he-saw
«Noli, inquit, carissime amice, super me deflere, quin potius
do-not he-says dearest friend over me weep but rather
exultando gaudere, quod Dei misericordia præstitit me in
by-exulting to-rejoice that of-God the-mercy has-granted me for
ejus occursum, sicut vides, præparasse.»
his meeting as you-see to-have-prepared
Cum autem paulatim ad incolumitatem respiraret, quo potuit
when moreover little-by-little to health he-revived by-what he-could
vehiculo, prope Milidunum ad fluvium Sequanæ, occurrentibus
conveyance near Melun to the-river Seine running-to-meet
et concurrentibus per viam ei obviam et Deo personam
and flocking along the-road him to-meet and to-God person
ejus commendantibus, a castellis et vicis, et relictis aratris,
his commending from castles and villages and left plows
devotissimis populis quibus pacem conservaverat, descendit:
the-most-devout peoples for-whom peace he-had-kept he-went-down
sicque ob amorem sanctorum Martyrum quos visitare et
and-thus for love of-the-holy Martyrs whom to-visit and

grates reddere desiderabat, deveniens citissime, Deo donante,
thanks to-render he-desired coming most-quickly God granting
eques ad eos pervenit. Qui a fratribus et pene tota
on-horseback to them he-came who by the-brothers and almost the-whole
patria tanquam piissimus ecclesiæ pater et nobilis defensor
country as most-pious of-the-church father and noble defender
solemniter et devotissime susceptus, sanctissimis Martyribus
solemnly and most-devoutly received before-the-most-holy Martyrs
humillime prostratus, votivas pro impensis beneficiis et
most-humbly prostrate the-votive for bestowed benefits and
devotas gratiarum actiones lachrymando persolvit, et ut
devout of-thanks actions by-weeping paid and that
deinceps ei provideant humillime interpellavit. Cumque
thereafter for-him they-provide most-humbly he-entreated and-when
castrum Bestisiacum pervenisset, celeriter subsecuti sunt
the-castle Béthisy he-had-reached swiftly followed have
eum nuncii Guillelmi ducis Aquitaniæ, denunciantes eundem
him the-envoys of-William duke of-Aquitaine announcing the-same
ducem ad sanctum Jacobum peregre profectum in via
duke to Saint James on-pilgrimage set-out on the-way
demigrasse, sed antequam iter aggrederetur, et etiam in
to-have-departed but before the-journey he-undertook and also on
itinere moriens, filiam nobilissimam puellam nomine Alienor
the-journey dying daughter most-noble a-girl by-name Eleanor
desponsandam, totamque terram suam eidem retinendam
to-be-betrothed and-the-whole land his to-the-same to-be-kept
et deliberasse et dimisisse. Qui, communicato cum
both to-have-resolved and to-have-bequeathed who shared with
familiaribus consilio, solita magnanimitate gratanter oblata
intimates counsel with-wonted high-spirit gladly the-offered
suscipiens, carissimo filio Ludovico eam copulari promittit,
receiving to-the-dearest son Louis her to-be-joined promises

necnon et deinceps nobilem apparatum ad destinandum illuc
and-also even thereafter a-noble array for sending thither
componit, nobilissimorum virorum exercitum quingentorum
composes of-most-noble men an-army of-five-hundred
et eo amplius militum de melioribus regni colligit,
and than-that more knights from the-better of-the-kingdom gathers
cui etiam palatinum comitem Theobaldum et egregium
over-which also the-palatine count Theobald and the-excellent
Viromandensem comitem consanguineum Radulfum præesse
of-Vermandois count kinsman Ralph to-preside
constituit. Nos autem familiares ejus, et quoscumque sanioris
appoints us moreover intimates his and whomever of-sounder
consilii reperire potuit, ei concopulavit, sic in ejus exitu
counsel to-find he-could to-him he-joined thus at his departure
filio valedicens: «Protegat te, inquit, et tuos, fili carissime,
to-the-son saying-farewell may-protect you he-says and yours son dearest
omnipotentis Dei, per quem reges regnant, validissima
of-almighty God through whom kings reign the-most-powerful
dextera; quia si te et quos tecum transmitto quocumque
right-hand because if you and whom with-you I-send by-whatever
infortunio amitterem, nec me præsentialiter nec regnum
misfortune I-should-lose neither me presently nor the-kingdom
curarem.» Copiosas etiam gazas et thesaurorum sufficientiam
would-I-care-for abundant also riches and of-treasures sufficiency
deliberans, ne quid in toto ducatu Aquitaniæ rapiant,
assigning lest anything in the-whole duchy of-Aquitaine they-plunder
ne terram aut terræ pauperes lædant, ne amicos inimicos
lest the-land or of-the-land the-poor they-harm lest friends enemies
faciant regia majestate interminat; ut gratam exercitui
they-make by-royal majesty he-forbids that a-welcome to-the-army
de proprio ærario quotidianam exhibeant deliberationem
from his-own treasury daily they-furnish allowance

imperare non dubitat. Qui, cum per Limovicensium partes
to-command not he-hesitates who when through of-the-Limousin the-parts
ad Burdegalensium fines pervenissemus, ante civitatem
to of-the-Bordelais the-borders we-had-come before the-city
interposito magno fluvio Garona tentoria defiximus, ibidem
set-between the-great river Garonne tents we-pitched there
præstolantes, et navali subsidio ad urbem transeuntes; donec
waiting and by-naval aid to the-city crossing until
die dominica, collectis Gasconiæ, Sanctoniæ, Pictaviæ
on-the-day Sunday gathered of-Gascony of-Saintonge of-Poitou
optimatibus, præfatam puellam cum eo diademate regni
the-magnates the-aforesaid girl with him with-the-diadem of-the-kingdom
coronatam sibi conjugio copulavit. Redeuntes igitur per
crowned to-himself in-marriage he-joined returning therefore through
pagum Sanctonicum, et, si qui erant, hostes prosternentes,
the-district of-Saintes and if any were enemies laying-low
Pictavorum civitatem cum exultatione totius terræ pervenimus.
of-the-Poitevins the-city with the-exultation of-the-whole land we-came-to
Æstuabant eo tempore æstivi calores solito nociviores,
seethed at-that time the-summer heats than-usual more-harmful
quorum consumptione aliquantisper soluti et valde contriti
whose by-consumption somewhat loosened and greatly worn-down
defatigabamur. Quorum intolerabili solutione cum dominus
we-were-wearied whose by-unbearable loosening when the-lord
rex Ludovicus Parisius recidiva profluvii dissenteria
king Louis at-Paris by-the-relapsing of-the-flux dysentery
gravissime fatigaretur, omnino deficiebat. Qui nunquam
most-heavily was-wearied wholly he-was-failing who never
super his improvidus, accito venerabili Parisiensi episcopo
about these improvident summoned the-venerable of-Paris bishop
Stephano, et religioso Sancti Victoris abbate Gilduino, cui
Stephen and the-religious of-Saint Victor abbot Gilduin to-whom

familiarius confitebatur, eo quod monasterium ejus a
more-intimately he-confessed by-this that monastery his from
fundamine construxerat, et confessionem repetit, et exitum
the-foundation he-had-built both confession he-repeats and departure
suum viatico Dominici corporis muniri devotissime
his with-the-viaticum of-the-Lord's body to-be-fortified most-devoutly
satagit. Cumque se deferri ad ecclesiam sanctorum
is-busy and-when himself to-be-carried to the-church of-the-holy
Martyrum faceret, ut quod votum sæpius spoponderat
Martyrs he-was-having that what vow more-often he-had-pledged
humillime persolveret, ægritudinis anticipatus angustiis, quod
most-humbly he-might-pay of-sickness forestalled by-the-straits what
opere non potuit, corde et animo et voluntate complevit.
in-deed not he-could in-heart and mind and will fulfilled
Præcipiens ergo tapetum terræ et cineres tapeto in
ordering therefore a-carpet on-the-ground and ashes on-the-carpet in
modum crucis deponi, ibidem manibus suorum depositus,
the-manner of-a-cross to-be-laid there by-the-hands of-his-men laid-down
signo sanctæ crucis præsentiam suam muniens, tricesimo
with-the-sign of-the-holy cross presence his fortifying in-the-thirtieth
regni administrationis, ætatis vero ferme sexagesimo
of-the-kingdom of-the-administration of-age but about in-the-sixtieth
anno, kalendis augusti, spiritum emisit. Cum autem
year on-the-kalends of-August his-spirit he-sent-forth when moreover
eadem hora corpus ejus pretioso pallio involutum ad
in-the-same hour the-body his in-a-precious pall wrapped to
ecclesiam sanctorum Martyrum sepulturæ deportaretur, et
the-church of-the-holy Martyrs for-burial was-being-carried and
præcessissent qui sepulturæ locum adaptarent, unum
had-gone-ahead those-who of-the-burial the-place might-fit one-thing
contigit quod silentio præterire dignum non videtur.
happened which in-silence to-pass-over fitting not seems

Cum enim præfatus rex nobiscum conferendo de sepulturis
when for the-aforesaid king with-us by-conferring about the-burials
regum aliquando aut sæpius ageret, felicem fore asserebat
of-kings sometimes or more-often dealt happy to-be he-asserted
qui inter sacratissima sanctæ Trinitatis et sanctorum
(him)-who between the-most-sacred of-the-holy Trinity and of-the-holy
Martyrum altaria sepeliri mereretur, quoniam et sanctorum
Martyrs altars to-be-buried should-deserve since both of-the-saints
suffragio et adventantium orationibus peccatorum veniam
by-the-support and of-those-coming by-the-prayers of-sins pardon
obtineret, ex hoc ipso tacite voluntatem suam significans.
he-would-obtain from this very silently will his signifying
Cum autem, antequam cum filio exissemus, cum venerabili
when moreover before with his-son we-had-gone-out with the-venerable
ecclesiæ priore Herveo, sepulturam ejus ante altare sanctæ
of-the-church prior Hervé the-burial his before the-altar of-the-holy
Trinitatis, ex opposito tumuli Caroli imperatoris, mediante
Trinity from opposite the-tomb of-Charles the-emperor intervening
altari providissemus, occupato loco Carlomanni Francorum
the-altar we-had-provided occupied the-place of-Carloman of-the-Franks
regis sepultura, quia nec fas nec consuetudo permittit reges
of-the-king by-the-burial because neither right nor custom permits kings
exhospitari, quod proposueramus fieri non potuit. Ubi autem
to-be-dislodged what we-had-proposed to-be-done not could where moreover
ipse quasi quadam pronostica præoptaverat, attentantes contra
he-himself as-if by-some prognostic had-desired trying against
omnium opinionem (omnes enim impeditum locum æstimabant),
of-all opinion all for occupied the-place reckoned
quantum nec plus nec minus longitudini et latitudini
as-much-as neither more nor less to-the-length and breadth
corporis ejus conveniebat, locum reservatum invenerunt. Ubi
of-body his fitted a-place reserved they-found where

cum orationum et hymnorum frequentia, et celeberrimo
with of-prayers and hymns frequency and with-the-most-solemn
devotoque exequiarum officio, more regio depositus,
and-devout of-obsequies office in-manner royal laid-down
resurrectionis futuræ consortium expectat, tanto sanctorum
of-the-resurrection future the-fellowship he-awaits so-much of-holy
spirituum collegio spiritu propinquior, quanto corpore sanctis
spirits to-the-college in-spirit nearer as in-body to-the-holy
Martyribus ad suffragandum proxime sepultus assistit.
Martyrs for aiding nearest buried he-stands-by

Felix qui potuit, mundi nutante ruina,
happy (he)-who could of-the-world tottering in-the-ruin
Quo jaceat præscisse loco.
in-what he-should-lie to-have-foreknown place

Cujus devotissimam sanctis Martyribus animam, ipsis
whose most-devout to-the-holy Martyrs soul themselves
intercedentibus, ipse Redemptor resuscitet, et in parte
interceding himself the-Redeemer may-raise-up and in the-portion
sanctorum collocare dignetur, qui posuit animam suam pro
of-the-saints to-place deign who laid-down soul his for
salute mundi Jesus Christus Dominus noster, qui vivit
the-salvation of-the-world Jesus Christ Lord our who lives
et regnat Rex regum et Dominus dominantium, per
and reigns King of-kings and Lord of-lords through
omnia sæcula sæculorum. Amen.
all the-ages of-ages Amen

SUGER OF SAINT-DENIS

De Rebus in Administratione Sua Gestis

On His Administration

In the twenty-third year of his abbacy Suger's brothers in chapter ask him to record what God has added to the church in his time, so that later brothers may pray for him and be spurred by his example. He begins with the town of Saint-Denis itself: the toll and exchange redeemed from a Jew of Montmorency, new quitrents, vineyards planted at Saint-Lucien, the mills' larger yield, and a house bought by the Paris gate.

Anno administrationis nostræ vicesimo tertio, cum in capitulo
in-the-year of-administration our twentieth third when in chapter
generali, quadam die, conferendo cum fratribus nostris tam
general on-a-certain day by-conferring with brothers our as-much
de hominibus quam de privatis negotiis consederemus,
about men as about private affairs we-were-sitting
iidem charissimi fratres et filii obnixe in charitate supplicare
the-same dearest brothers and sons earnestly in charity to-entreat
cœperunt, ne fructum tanti laboris nostri præteriri silentio
began lest the-fruit of-so-great labor our to-be-passed-over in-silence
sustinerem: quin potius ea quæ larga Dei omnipotentis
I-should-allow but rather those which the-generous of-God almighty
munificentia contulerat huic ecclesiæ prælationis nostræ
munificence had-conferred on-this church of-prelacy our
tempore incrementa, tam in novarum acquisitione quam in
in-the-time increments as-much in of-new the-acquisition as in
amissarum recuperatione, emendatarum etiam possessionum
of-lost the-recovery of-improved also possessions
multiplicatione, ædificiorum constitutione, auri, argenti, et
in-the-multiplication of-buildings in-the-construction of-gold of-silver and
pretiosissimarum gemmarum, necnon et optimorum palliorum
of-most-precious gems and-also even of-the-best palls
repositione, calamo et atramento posteritati memoriæ reservare.
in-the-laying-up with-pen and ink for-posterity for-memory to-reserve

Ex hoc uno nobis duo repromittentes, tali notitia fratrum
from this one to-ourselves two promising by-such notice of-brothers
succedentium omnium jugem orationum pro salute animæ
succeeding of-all the-continual of-prayers for the-salvation of-soul
nostræ mereri instantiam, et circa ecclesiæ Dei cultum
our to-earn urgency and about of-the-church of-God the-worship
hoc exemplo eorum excitare bene zelantem sollicitudinem.
by-this example their to-rouse well zealous solicitude
Nos igitur tam devote quam devotis et rationabilibus eorum
we therefore as devoutly as to-devout and reasonable their
petitionibus assensum exhibentes, nullo inanis gloriæ appetitu,
petitions assent showing with-no of-empty glory appetite
nullam laudis humanæ aut retributionis transitoriæ exigendo
no of-praise human or of-reward transitory demanding
retributionem; ne post decessum nostrum quacumque aut
reward lest after the-death our by-whatever or
cujuscumque defraudatione redditibus ecclesia minuatur, ne
of-whomever defrauding in-revenues the-church be-diminished lest
copiosa, quæ tempore amministrationis nostræ larga Dei
the-abundant which in-the-time of-administration our the-generous of-God
munificentia contulit, silentio malis successoribus depereant
munificence conferred by-silence through-bad successors perish
incrementa; sicut a corpore ecclesiæ beatissimorum
increments as from the-body of-the-church of-the-most-blessed
martyrum Dionysii, Rustici et Eleutherii, quæ nos quam
martyrs Denis Rusticus and Eleutherius which us how
dulcissime a mamilla usque in senectam fovit, de
most-sweetly from the-breast right into old-age cherished about
ædificiorum institutione et thesaurorum augmentatione loco
of-buildings the-founding and of-treasures the-increase in-place
suo incipere dignum duximus, ita etiam a castello suo,
its to-begin fitting we-have-thought so also from castle its

videlicet prima ejus sede, et in vicinia circumquaque, de
namely the-first its seat and in the-neighborhood round-about about
reddituum augmentatione tam præsentium quam futurorum
of-revenues the-increase as-much of-present as of-future
notitiæ significare honestum et utile proposuimus.
to-the-knowledge to-signify honorable and useful we-have-proposed
Erat itaque ministerium illud ejusdem castri, quod vulgo
there-was and-so office that of-the-same castle which commonly
dicitur theloneum, et cambiatio, constans sexaginta solidorum
is-called the-toll and exchange standing-at sixty shillings
unaquaque hebdomada. Sed Ursellus Judæus de Monte
each week but Ursel the-Jew of Mont-
Maurenciaco in vadimonio de his decem habebat, cum
-morency in pledge of these ten held with
villa illa quæ dicitur Molignum, pro quatuor viginti marcis
village that which is-called Montlignon for four-times twenty marks
argenti, et alia magna, sicut dicebat, denariorum pecunia.
of-silver and with-other great as he-said of-pennies money
Nos autem et villam viginti libras aut plus valentem, et
we moreover both the-village twenty pounds or more worth and
ipsos decem solidos magno sumptu, videlicet tria milia
the-very ten shillings at-great cost namely three thousand
solidorum reddendo Mathæo de Monte Maurentiaco, qui eam
shillings by-paying to-Matthew of Mont- -morency who it
occupare libenter pro Judæo suo vellet, ipsius vero Judæi
to-seize gladly for Jew his wished of-the-same but Jew
uxori decem libras et decem modios frumenti reddentes,
to-the-wife ten pounds and ten measures of-grain paying
retraximus eos: et de decem aliis in emendatione villæ
we-drew-back them and from ten others in improvement of-the-village
ministerium illud sine exactione fecimus augmentari. Cum
office that without exaction we-made to-be-increased since

igitur constet factum de decem Judæi et decem noviter
therefore it-stands done from the-ten of-the-Jew and ten newly
augmentatis uniuscujusque anni hebdomadæ, viginti solidorum
increased of-each year of-week twenty shillings
augmentum quinquaginta duas libras efficiunt, de villa
increase fifty two pounds make from the-village
vero viginti. Census autem ejusdem villæ in octabis sancti
but twenty the-quitrent moreover of-the-same village in the-octave of-Saint
Dionysii duodecim libras, qui modo constat viginti et plus:
Denis twelve pounds which now stands-at twenty and more
unde hujus rei incrementi libræ octo, et octo de quadam
whence of-this thing of-increase pounds eight and eight from a-certain
domo quam constituens in macello, emptione cujusdam
house which setting-up in the-meat-market by-purchase of-a-certain
alterius domus, usibus carnificum, fratrum infirmantium
other house for-the-uses of-the-butchers of-the-brothers sick
sustentationi contulimus. Sunt igitur quater viginti et decem.
to-the-support we-conferred they-are therefore four-times twenty and ten
De pedagio vero viginti libras, cum prius essent quadraginta
from the-passage-toll but twenty pounds though before they-were forty
librarum. Nos autem inde sæpe habuimus sexaginta et
pounds we moreover thence often have-had sixty and
decem, cum multo plus, nisi rapinam et rapinæ [actores]
ten when much more unless plunder and of-plunder the-doers
anathematizaremus, facile unoquoque anno habere possemus.
we-anathematized easily in-each year to-have we-could
De Indicto vero, quod dominus Ludovicus pater beato
from the-Lendit but which the-lord Louis the-father to-blessed
Dionysio dedit, trecentos solidos quiete et pacifice, triginta
Denis gave three-hundred shillings quietly and peacefully thirty
quinque de censu stallorum pistorum in pantera, quos in
five from the-quitrent of-the-stalls of-the-bakers in the-breadhall which on

festo beatorum apostolorum Petri et Pauli refectioni fratrum
the-feast of-the-blessed apostles Peter and Paul to-the-refection of-the-brothers
apposuimus: decem solidos de Girardo nepote meo, quinque
we-assigned ten shillings from Gerard nephew my five
de domo sua, et quinque de theloneo garantiæ. De plateis
from house his and five from the-toll of-the-guarantee from the-plots
domus Guillelmi Cormeilensis, quam ego emi quater viginti
of-the-house of-William of-Cormeilles which I bought for-four-times twenty
libras, censum quindecim solidorum de tribus mansionibus,
pounds a-quitrent of-fifteen shillings from three dwellings
reliquis duabus adhuc vacantibus. In curticula fratrum in
the-remaining two still standing-empty in the-little-court of-the-brothers on
vacuo, de novis hospitibus sexaginta et decem solidos
the-empty-ground from new tenants sixty and ten shillings
de annuo censu. De curia vero quæ extra villam est, cum nec
of annual quitrent from the-court but which outside the-town is since not
unus hospes umquam ibi mansisset, sed a servientibus expensis
one tenant ever there had-dwelt but by servants at-expenses
propriis servaretur, tam in ea quam in alia nova eidem
own it-was-kept as-much in it as in another new to-it
adjacente, quater viginti et eo amplius novis hospitibus
adjoining four-times twenty and than-that more new tenants
positis, viginti libris constat singulis annis augmentatum. Ubi
placed by-twenty pounds it-stands in-each year increased where
etiam, scilicet apud Sanctum Lucianum, magno sumptu, quia
also namely at Saint Lucien at-great cost because
ecclesia his valde indigebat, clausum vinearum fere quater
the-church of-these greatly had-need an-enclosure of-vines of-almost four-times
viginti arpennorum, ut aiunt, plantando excoli fecimus.
twenty arpents as they-say by-planting to-be-cultivated we-caused
Cui ad maximum ecclesiæ commodum ipsas viginti libras,
to-which for the-greatest of-the-church advantage the-very twenty pounds

ut inde bene excolatur, instituimus: consulte quidem omnia
that thence well it-be-cultivated we-appointed advisedly indeed all
pro defectu vini, quia sæpius cruces et calices et pallia
for lack of-wine because more-often crosses and chalices and palls
multis in locis, et etiam Latiniaci, in vadimonio ponebantur.
many in places and even at-Lagny in pledge were-placed
Molendinorum vero ejusdem castri talis est augmentatio,
of-the-mills but of-the-same castle such is the-increase
quod cum olim singulis diebus quinque minas frumenti
that whereas formerly on-single days five measures of-grain
fratrum refectorio reddere consuevissent, modo singulis
of-the-brothers to-the-refectory to-render they-had-been-wont now on-single
diebus octo reddere non desistunt. Quorum incrementum
days eight to-render not they-cease whose increment
de singulis hebdomadibus certa computatione deductum,
from single weeks by-certain computation deducted
quadraginta modios dimidio minus recipit. Denariorum
forty measures by-a-half less receives of-pennies
vero incrementum septies viginti et sex libras et decem
but the-increment seven-times twenty and six pounds and ten
solidos constat. Domum quæ superest portæ Parisiensi versus
shillings stands-at the-house which is-above the-gate Parisian toward
Sanctum Medericum emimus mille solidis, quoniam,
Saint Merry we-bought for-a-thousand shillings since
cum frequenter interessemus negociis regni, nos et
when frequently we-took-part in-the-affairs of-the-kingdom us and
equos nostros, sed et successores nostros ibidem honestius
horses our but also successors our there more-honorably
hospitari dignum duximus. De porta vero Parisiensi, quæ
to-be-lodged fitting we-thought from the-gate but Parisian which

solebat reddere duodecim libras, quinquaginta nobis reddit,
was-wont to-render twelve pounds fifty to-us it-renders
ubi incrementum est triginta et octo librarum.
where the-increment is of-thirty and eight pounds

De Trembliaco

2 · TREMBLAY

Suger buys peace for Tremblay from the count of Dammartin, who took tallage and lodging there, for ten pounds a year, builds a new court and barn, and raises its grain from ninety measures to nearly two hundred, fortifying the old court against any enemy.

Cum eadem villa multis angariis a comite Domni Martini,
since the-same village by-many exactions from the-count of-Dam- -martin
videlicet exactione talliæ, frumenti scilicet quinque
namely by-the-exaction of-the-tallage of-grain namely of-five
modiorum, quos ei pro pace concesseram, cum ipse
measures which to-him for peace I-had-granted since he-himself
talliam pro voluntate sua facere consuevisset, exactione
tallage at will his to-make had-been-wont by-the-exaction
arietum et hospitandi in villa multis vicibus in anno
of-rams and of-lodging in the-village at-many times in the-year
de rusticorum sumptibus [premeretur]; hanc pacem pro
at of-the-peasants the-expense was-oppressed this peace for
his omnibus cum comite fecimus, ut tota villa in pace
these all with the-count we-made that the-whole village in peace
nobis remaneret absque exactione et consuetudine aliqua,
to-us should-remain without exaction and custom any
et nos pro ejus hominio decem libras singulis annis de
and we for his homage ten pounds in-single years from

marsupio nostro in octabis sancti Dionysii ei daremus. Nos
purse our in the-octave of-Saint Denis to-him should-give we
autem eandem villam ob hoc libentius ædificavimus, et in
moreover the-same village for this more-gladly built-up and at
introitu villæ novam curiam cum granchia nova erigi
the-entrance of-the-village a-new court with a-barn new to-be-raised
fecimus; et ut in ea campipars universalis, et quatuor
we-caused and that in it the-field-share general and of-four
carrucarum; in altera vero, quæ in municipio est, decimæ
plow-teams in the-other but which in the-stronghold is the-tithes
terrarum reponerentur, et in utraque usibus nostris stramina
of-the-lands should-be-stored and in both for-uses our straws
reservarentur. Et cum de eadem villa aut vix aut nunquam
should-be-kept and whereas from the-same village either scarcely or never
quater viginti et decem modios annonarum olim habere
four-times twenty and ten measures of-grain formerly to-have
possemus, ad hoc ipsum rem deduximus quod ducentos
we-could to this very the-matter we-have-brought that two-hundred
modios decem minus inde a majore nostro habemus, extra
measures ten less thence from mayor our we-have beyond
hoc quod seminant, et quod bubulcis et bubus quicquid
this which they-sow and which to-the-oxherds and oxen whatever
necesse fuerit amministrant, et carrucis boves et necessaria
necessary shall-be they-furnish and to-the-plows oxen and necessary
omnia suppeditant; propter quod furni redditum habent.
all-things supply for which of-the-oven the-revenue they-have
Nos vero censum nostrum, et tensamentum, et mortuas
we but quitrent our and the-protection-due and the-dead
manus, et forisfacta, et talliam pro voluntate nostra habemus.
hands and the-forfeits and tallage at will our have
Ubi incrementum annonæ quater viginti et decem modiorum
where the-increment of-grain of-four-times twenty and ten measures

consistit. Curiam autem antiquam muro cinximus, domum
consists the-court moreover ancient with-a-wall we-girded a-house
ecclesiæ inhærentem pene defensabilem ibidem ereximus;
to-the-church adjoining almost defensible there we-raised
qua munitione successores nostri et suos et sua,
by-which fortification successors our both their-men and their-things
si placet, contra omnem hostem defendere poterunt.
if it-please against every enemy to-defend shall-be-able

De recuperatione Argentoilensis abbatiæ

3 · ARGENTEUIL RECOVERED

Reading old charters as a young man, Suger learned that the nunnery of Argenteuil had belonged to Saint-Denis until Charlemagne obtained it, on terms of its return, for his daughter. He petitions Pope Honorius, who restores it to the abbey for its right and for the nuns' scandalous life, and King Louis confirms the restoration.

Cum ætate docibili adolescentiæ meæ antiquas armarii
when at-the-age teachable of-youth my the-ancient of-the-archive
possessionum revolverem cartas, et immunitatum biblos
of-possessions I-was-turning-over charters and of-immunities the-books
propter multorum calumniatorum improbitates frequentarem,
because-of of-many slanderers the-wickednesses I-frequented
crebro manibus occurrebat de cœnobio Argentoilensi
often to-my-hands came-up concerning the-convent of-Argenteuil
fundationis carta ab Hermenrico et conjuge ejus Numma,
of-foundation the-charter from Ermenric and wife his Numma
in qua continebatur quod a tempore Pipini regis beati
in which it-was-contained that from the-time of-Pepin king of-blessed
Dionysii abbatia extiterat. Sed quadam occasione contractus
Denis an-abbey it-had-been but by-a-certain occasion of-a-contract

incommodi, in tempore Karoli Magni filii ejus, alienata
disadvantageous in the-time of-Charles the-Great son his alienated
fuerat. Præfatus enim imperator ut quandam filiam suam,
it-had-been the-aforesaid for emperor that a-certain daughter his
matrimonium humanum recusantem, ibidem abbatissam
marriage human refusing there as-abbess
sanctimonialium constitueret, eo pacto ut post mortem
of-the-nuns he-might-set-up on-that agreement that after the-death
ejus in usum ecclesiæ reverteretur, ab abbate et fratribus
her into the-use of-the-church it-should-revert from the-abbot and brothers
obtinuerat. Sed turbatione regni filiorum filii ejus,
he-had-obtained but by-the-disturbance of-the-kingdom of-the-sons of-the-son his
videlicet Ludovici Pii, altercatione, quoadusque supervixerat,
namely of-Louis the-Pious by-the-quarrel as-long-as he-had-survived
perfici non potuit.
to-be-accomplished not it-could
Unde cum antecessores nostri sæpius super hoc laborantes
whence when predecessors our more-often over this laboring
parum profecissent, communicato cum fratribus nostris
little had-achieved shared with brothers our
consilio, nuncios nostros et cartas antiquas fundationis
counsel envoys our and charters ancient of-foundation
et donationis et confirmationum privilegia bonæ memoriæ
and of-donation and of-confirmations privileges of-good memory
papæ Honorio Romam delegavimus; postulantes ut justitiam
to-pope Honorius to-Rome we-sent demanding that right
nostram canonico investigaret et restitueret scrutinio.
our by-canonical he-might-investigate and restore scrutiny
Qui, ut erat vir consilii et justitiæ tutor, tam pro
who as he-was a-man of-counsel and of-justice guardian as-much for
nostra justitia quam pro enormitate monacharum ibidem
our right as for the-enormity of-the-nuns there

male viventium, eundem nobis locum cum appendiciis suis,
badly living the-same to-us place with appendages its
ut reformaretur ibi religionis ordo, restituit. Rex vero
that might-be-reformed there of-religion the-order restored the-king but
Ludovicus Philippi, charissimus dominus et amicus noster,
Louis of-Philip dearest lord and friend our
eandem restitutionem confirmavit; et quæcumque regalia
the-same restoration confirmed and whatever royal-rights
ibidem habebat, auctoritate regiæ majestatis, ecclesiæ præcepto
there he-had by-the-authority of-royal majesty to-the-church by-precept
firmavit. Cujus quidem recuperationis tenorem si quis plenius
confirmed of-which indeed recovery the-tenor if anyone more-fully
nosse voluerit, in cartis regum et privilegiis Apostolicorum
to-know shall-wish in the-charters of-kings and privileges of-the-popes
enucleatius poterit reperire. Cujus scilicet abbatiæ et
more-clearly he-shall-be-able to-find of-which namely abbey and
appendiciorum, quæ sunt Trappæ, Herencurtis, Chaveniacus,
appendages which are Trappes Arrancourt Chavenay
Burdeniacus, Cerisiacus, et terra de Monte Meliano et
Bourdenay Cerisy and the-land of Mont- -mélian and
Bunziaco, sive de Mosteriolo quod est prope Milidunum,
Bonzy or of Montereau which is near Melun
et aliorum incrementum quanti constet, qui sapienter illa
and of-others the-increase of-how-much it-stands who wisely those
tractabunt pro magno prælati cognoscere poterunt.
shall-handle as great prelates to-know shall-be-able
De antiquo censu Argentoili, qui ad abbatiam non pertinet,
from the-ancient quitrent of-Argenteuil which to the-abbey not belongs
incrementum est viginti librarum; quia, cum olim non
the-increase is of-twenty pounds because whereas formerly not

haberemus nisi viginti libras, modo XL redduntur. De
we-had except twenty pounds now forty are-rendered of
annona prius sex modios, modo XV recipimus.
grain before six measures now fifteen we-receive

De Vilcassino

4 · THE VEXIN

The Vexin is a fief of Saint-Denis, for which King Louis has declared in chapter that he would owe the abbey homage were he not king. Suger obtains the church and court of Cergy and royal revenues at Osny and Trappes, and by careful husbandry and checking the advocates doubles the brothers' daily kitchen allowance.

Vilcassini siquidem, quod est inter Isaram et Ettam, nobilem
of-the-Vexin indeed which is between the-Oise and the-Epte the-noble
comitatum, quem perhibent immunitates ecclesiæ proprium
county which declare the-immunities of-the-church the-own
beati Dionysii feodum, quem etiam rex Francorum
of-blessed Denis fief which also the-king of-the-Franks
Ludovicus Philippi, accelerans contra imperatorem romanum
Louis of-Philip hastening against the-emperor Roman
insurgentem in regnum Francorum, in pleno capitulo
rising against the-kingdom of-the-Franks in full chapter
beati Dionysii professus est se ab eo habere, et
of-blessed Denis declared has himself from him to-hold and
jure signiferi, si rex non esset, hominium ei debere,
by-right of-standard-bearer if king not he-were homage to-him to-owe
hoc insequente incremento dominicaturam, Deo auxiliante,
by-this following increase the-demesne God helping
augmentari elaboravimus. Ecclesiam de Cergiaco et curiæ
to-be-increased we-have-labored the-church of Cergy and of-the-court

libertatem ab eodem rege Ludovico obtinuimus. A filio
the-freedom from the-same king Louis we-obtained from the-son
vero ejus Ludovico viaturam ejusdem villæ et omnes redditus
but his Louis the-road-toll of-the-same village and all revenues
ejus, præter vinum et avenam, in dedicatione ecclesiæ
its besides wine and oats at the-dedication of-the-church
regia liberalitate pro remedio animæ ejus, personæ et
by-royal liberality for the-remedy of-soul his of-person and
regni protectione, obtinuimus. Nec minus etiam quod in
of-kingdom for-the-protection we-obtained nor less also what in
Cormeliis habebat, et apud Œnitum, et quicquid Trappis
Cormeilles he-had and at Osny and whatever at-Trappes
habebat, præter hospitium, sanctis Martyribus devotissime
he-had besides the-lodging-right to-the-holy Martyrs most-devoutly
contulit. Nos autem et de his et multis aliis incrementis,
conferred we moreover both from these and many other increases
præsertim continua sollicitudine et jugi providentia, terræ
especially by-continual solicitude and constant foresight of-the-land
cultus et vinearum, majorum et servientium reprimendo
the-cultivation and of-vines of-mayors and of-servants by-checking
rapacitatem, advocatorum etiam pravorum importunam
the-greed of-advocates also wicked the-troublesome
refellendo infestationem, pro quo multa in novitate nostra
by-refuting harassment for which much in newness our
militiæ usibus expendimus, illuc usque Deo annuente
of-knighthood for-the-uses we-spent thither right God assenting
perduximus, ut, cum temporibus antecessorum nostrorum
we-have-brought that whereas in-the-times of-predecessors our
fratres nostri ad opus coquinæ cotidie quinque solidos habere
brothers our for the-work of-the-kitchen daily five shillings to-have
contenti fuissent, de superabundante incremento omni die alios
content had-been from the-superabundant increase every day another

quinque, et feria quinta atque sabbato quatuordecim pro
five and on-the-day fifth and on-Saturday fourteen for
toto, irrefragabiliter refectioni fratrum recipiant. Et quod
the-whole inviolably for-the-refection of-the-brothers they-receive and what
adhuc his superest, de incremento centum modios annonæ
still beyond-these remains of the-increase a-hundred measures of-grain
large consuevit excedere. Quod nos post Pascha usibus nostris,
amply has-been-wont to-exceed which we after Easter for-uses our
ecclesiis et pauperibus, vel quibuscumque opportunitatibus
for-churches and poor or for-whatever occasions
erogandum censuimus. Extremis enim mensibus anni,
to-be-paid-out decided in-the-last for months of-the-year
aliquando carior annona congregationum improvidentiam punire
sometimes dearer grain of-congregations the-improvidence to-punish
solet. Incrementum denariorum centum et quatuordecim
is-wont the-increase of-pennies of-a-hundred and fourteen
librarum et duodecim solidorum singulis annis consistit.
pounds and twelve shillings in-single years consists

De Cormeliis Parisiensibus

5 · CORMEILLES-EN-PARISIS

At Cormeilles the quitrent rises from twelve pounds to twenty and the grain from ten or twelve measures to eighteen, and Suger buys a tithe from Payen of Gisors for the church's matricular clerks.

De Cormeliis in pago Parisiensi, incrementum census octo
librarum; cum prius haberemus duodecim libras, modo viginti.
De annona decem aut duodecim modios habebamus, nunc decem
et octo. Apud Centinodium quatuor libras de incremento novi
census, et de veteri centum solidos. Apud Francorum Villam
quadraginta solidos de novo incremento, et quadraginta de veteri
præter feodum. Decimam de feodo nostro, quam emimus a
Pagano de Gisortio, et dedimus clericis matriculariis pro amore
Dei, excepta decima clausi nostri, quam nobis retinuimus.

from Cormeilles in the-district Parisian the-increase of-the-quitrent of-eight
pounds whereas before we-had twelve pounds now twenty
of grain ten or twelve measures we-had now ten
and eight at Centinodium four pounds of increase of-new
quitrent and of old a-hundred shillings at Franc- -ville
forty shillings of new increase and forty of old
besides the-fief the-tithe from fief our which we-bought from
Payen of Gisors and gave to-the-clerks matricular for love
of-God excepted the-tithe of-close our which for-ourselves we-kept

De Montiniaco

6 · MONTIGNY

At Montigny fifty shillings of new rent are added to seventy of old.

Apud Montiniacum, quinquaginta solidos de novo, et
at Montigny fifty shillings of new and
sexaginta et decem de veteri.
sixty and ten of old

De Cergiaco

7 · CERGY

At Cergy the wood yields forty shillings of rent, the homage of the knight Theobald of Puiseaux, and forty donkey-loads.

Apud Cergiacum, de bosco quadraginta solidos de censu,
at Cergy from the-wood forty shillings from quitrent
et hominium militis Theobaldi de Puteolis, et quadraginta
and the-homage of-the-knight Theobald of Puiseaux and forty
saumas asinorum.
loads of-asses

De Lovecenis

8 · LOUVECIENNES

At Louveciennes, where the abbey used to let all it had for fifteen pounds a year, Suger convicts the vinedressers of withholding revenues and gains about a hundred measures of wine.

Apud Lovecenas, cum quicquid ibidem habebamus, tam
at Louveciennes whereas whatever there we-had as-much
censum quam annonam et vinum, pro quindecim libris tam
quitrent as grain and wine for fifteen pounds as-much
nos quam antecessores nostri per annum dare consuevimus,
we as predecessors our by the-year to-give have-been-wont
post quædam placita de mansis antiquis, quibus rusticos
after certain pleas about holdings ancient by-which the-peasants
vinearum cultores de retentione reddituum intercepimus,
of-vines cultivators for the-withholding of-revenues we-caught
salvo annuo censu denariorum et annona, centum fere
saving the-annual quitrent of-pennies and grain a-hundred almost
modios vini adquisivimus.
measures of-wine we-acquired

De Vernullello

9 · VERNOUILLET

Vernouillet, pledged for forty years, is redeemed and now yields ten pounds instead of sixty shillings, all of which Suger gives to the sick brothers.

De Vernullello, quod quadraginta annis sub vadimonio
from Vernouillet which for-forty years under pledge
fuerat, decem libras data redemptione recipimus; cum non
had-been ten pounds given the-redemption we-receive whereas not
nisi sexaginta solidos ante haberemus. Cujus loci redditus
except sixty shillings before we-had of-which place the-revenues
ad nos pertinentes fratribus infirmis ex integro contulimus.
to us belonging to-the-brothers sick in full we-conferred

De Valle Crisonis

10 · VAUCRESSON, CHEVREUSE, AND THE BEAUCE

Suger builds a village with a church at Vaucresson in what had been a robbers' wasteland, frees the abbey's valley lands from the three lords who taxed them, recovers the hunting of Yveline, and in the Beauce turns Guillerval, long disordered, into a walled court with a fishpond and two plow-teams.

Apud Vallem Crisonis villam ædificavimus, ecclesiam et
at Vau- -cresson a-village we-built a-church and
domum constituimus, et carruca terram incultam dirumpi
a-house we-set-up and by-the-plow the-land untilled to-be-broken
fecimus. Quæ quanti debeat constare, potius cognoscent
we-caused which of-how-much it-ought to-stand rather shall-know
qui eam ædificare innitentur; cum jam ibidem sint
who it to-build shall-strive since already there there-are
fere sexaginta hospites, et adhuc multi venire eligant,
almost sixty tenants and still many to-come choose
si sit qui provideat. Erat enim locus ille quasi
if there-be (one)-who provides was for place that as-if
spelunca latronum, habens ultra duo miliaria deserti, omnino
a-den of-robbers having beyond two miles of-desert wholly
ecclesiæ nostræ infructuosus, raptoribus et satellitibus propter
to-church our unfruitful for-robbers and benchmen because-of
affinitatem nemorum aptus. Eapropter ibidem fratres nostros
the-nearness of-woods fit therefore there brothers our
Deo deservire disposuimus, ut in cubilibus, in quibus prius
God to-serve we-arranged that in the-lairs in which before
dracones habitabant, oriatur viror calami et junci.
dragons dwelt may-spring-up the-green of-reed and rush

Possessionem beati Dionysii in qua continetur Mesnile
the-possession of-blessed Denis in which is-contained Le-Mesnil
Sancti Dionysii, et Domna Petra, et cæteræ villæ in valle
of-Saint Denis and Dam- -pierre and the-other villages in the-valley
castri quod dicitur Cabrosa, a multis retro temporibus
of-the-castle which is-called Chevreuse from many back times
tribus talliis expositam, videlicet domino castri Cabrosæ, et
to-three tallages exposed namely to-the-lord of-the-castle of-Chevreuse and
domino castri Nielphæ, et Simoni de Villa Aten, eorum
to-the-lord of-the-castle of-Neauphle and to-Simon of Vil- -tain their
rapacitate omnino fere destitutam, non sine magnis expensis
by-greed wholly almost destitute not without great expenses
ab hujusmodi oppressionibus emancipavimus; ea sola,
from such oppressions we-freed those-things alone
quæ ad eorum advocationem jure pertinent, remittentes.
which to their advocacy by-right belong remitting
Nec minus etiam venationem Ivelinæ, infra metas terræ
nor less also the-hunting of-Yveline within the-bounds of-the-land
quam beato Dionysio multis temporibus abstulerunt,
which from-blessed Denis for-many times they-had-taken-away
recuperavimus. Et ne in posterum oblivioni traderetur, illuc
we-recovered and lest in after-time to-oblivion it-be-handed thither
exeuntes per continuam septimanam, ascitis nobis approbatis
going-out for a-continuous week summoned to-us approved
amicis et hominibus nostris, videlicet comite Ebroicensi
friends and men our namely the-count of-Évreux
Amalrico de Monte Forti, Symone de Nielpha, Ebrardo de
Amaury of Mont- -fort Simon of Neauphle Évrard of
Villa Perosa, et aliis quam plurimis, in tentoriis demorantes,
Ville- -preux and others very many in tents staying
singulis diebus totius hebdomadæ cervorum copiam ad
on-single days of-the-whole week of-stags an-abundance to

Sanctum Dionysium, non levitate, sed pro jure ecclesiæ
Saint Denis not by-levity but for the-right of-the-church
reparando, transferri, et fratribus infirmis et hospitibus
restoring to-be-carried and to-the-brothers sick and to-guests
in domo hospitali, necnon et militibus per villam, ne
in the-house hospital and-also even to-knights through the-town lest
deinceps oblivioni traderetur, distribui fecimus. Domino
thereafter to-oblivion it-be-handed to-be-distributed we-caused to-the-lord
vero Cabrosæ præter antiquum feodum, videlicet advocationem
but of-Chevreuse besides the-ancient fief namely the-advocacy
terræ nostræ, et medietatem silvæ, de proprio singulis
of-land our and the-half of-the-wood from our-own in-single
annis centum solidos damus, tanquam feodato nostro, ne
years a-hundred shillings we-give as to-vassal our lest
reducat manum ad talliam vel terræ oppressionem. Quos
he-bring-back his-hand to tallage or of-the-land oppression which
quidem centum solidos in eadem terra pro voluntate nostra
indeed hundred shillings in the-same land at will our
absque contradictione recolligere valemus.
without contradiction to-gather-back we-can
Ne igitur laboris nostri fructus ex oblivione in irritum
lest therefore of-labor our the-fruit from oblivion into nothing
deducatur, illa etiam quæ in Belsa, auxiliante Deo,
be-brought those also which in the-Beauce helping God
augmentari elaboravimus, scripto commendare curavimus.
to-be-increased we-have-labored to-writing to-commit we-have-taken-care
Prima villa beati Dionysii, quæ vocatur Guillelvalis, prope
the-first village of-blessed Denis which is-called Guillerval near
Sarclidas, in catalogo Dagoberti regis beato Dionysio ab
Saclas in the-catalog of-Dagobert king to-blessed Denis by
eodem rege traditas, usque adeo a multis retro temporibus
the-same king handed-over so far from many back times

aut semper ita incomposita extiterat, ut nec domus ubi
or always so disordered it-had-been that not a-house where
etiam abbas caput reclinaret, nec granchia aliqua, nec
even the-abbot his-head might-lay nor barn any nor
quicquam dominicum in tota villa existeret. Viginti quinque
anything demesne in the-whole village existed twenty five
modiolos tantum, qui non excedunt quatuor nostros modios,
little-measures only which not exceed four our measures
pro censu terrarum quas colebant, cum modico domorum
for the-quitrent of-the-lands which they-tilled with small of-houses
suarum censu singulis annis persolvebant. Ad hanc igitur
their quitrent in-single years they-paid to this therefore
adaptandam ob amorem dominorum nostrorum sanctorum
to-be-put-in-order for love of-lords our the-holy
Martyrum accedentes, quandam terram videlicet trium
Martyrs coming a-certain land namely of-three
carrucarum in eadem villa sitam, pro qua a quadraginta
plow-teams in the-same village situated for which from forty
annis et ultra guerra maxima agitabatur inter Johannem
years and beyond war very-great was-waged between John
Stampensem filium Pagani, virum nobilem et strenuum, et
of-Étampes son of-Payen a-man noble and vigorous and
quendam alium militem Pigverensem, multo sumptu apud
a-certain other knight of-Pithiviers at-much cost with
utrumque apposito, ecclesiæ comparavimus, et quod uterque
each spent for-the-church we-bought and what each
quærebat ut neuter haberet, nobis eam retinendo et guerræ
sought that neither should-have for-us it by-keeping and to-war
eorum finem imponendo, favore parentum et amicorum,
their an-end by-putting by-the-favor of-kinsmen and friends
videlicet Balduini de Corboilo, et multorum aliorum, carta
namely of-Baldwin of Corbeil and of-many others by-charter

nobis firmari fecimus. In hac itaque nova terra, videlicet in
for-us to-be-confirmed we-caused in this and-so new land namely in
medio villæ, loci oblectantes amœnitatem, vividorum
the-middle of-the-village of-the-place enjoying the-pleasantness of-lively
fontium et rivorum decurrentium amplectentes affinitatem,
springs and streams running-down embracing the-nearness
curiam honestam muro cingi fecimus, domum fortem
a-court fine with-a-wall to-be-girded we-caused a-house strong
et defensabilem in curia, granchias, et quæque necessaria
and defensible in the-court barns and whatever necessary
ibidem construi multis expensis effecimus. Et ad superioris
there to-be-built at-many expenses we-brought-about and for of-the-upper
Belsæ relevandam ariditatem, vivario multitudine piscium
Beauce relieving the-dryness with-a-fishpond with-a-multitude of-fish
copioso fere in circuitu perlustravimus. Duas carrucas in
abundant almost in circuit we-surrounded two plow-teams in
eadem terra, unam in nova, alteram in antiqua statuimus.
the-same land one in the-new the-other in the-old we-set
Et quæ tam parvi constabat, ut ad quinquaginta vel
and which so little stood-at that to fifty or
eo amplius annonarum modios singulis annis reddere
than-that more of-grain measures in-single years to-render
valeat, augmentavimus. Nam et illum priorem censum,
it-can we-have-increased for also that former quitrent
quem parvissimum reddebant, remittentes, totius terræ
which very-small they-rendered remitting of-the-whole land
campipartem, præter carrucam de feodo majoris, nobis
the-field-share besides the-plow-team of the-fief of-the-mayor for-us
retinuimus. Qui ex hoc ipso garrulitatem rusticorum et
we-kept who from this very the-chatter of-the-peasants and
mutatæ consuetudinis molestias omnino se sedare spopondit.
of-changed custom the-troubles wholly himself to-settle pledged

De Monarvilla

11 · MONNERVILLE AND ROUVRAY

Monnerville, crushed by the exactions of the lord of Méréville, is freed when Hugh of Méréville renounces his customs for two measures of grain a year, and it yields a hundred measures, not ten pounds. At Rouvray, ruined by Le Puiset, Suger refuses Hugh of Le Puiset as a partner, builds a court and tower, and gives eighty pounds a year to the church's building.

Succedit et alia prope illam beati Dionysii villa, quæ
follows also another near that of-blessed Denis village which
dicitur Monarvilla, villa omnium facta miserrima, quæ
is-called Monnerville a-village of-all made most-wretched which
sub jugo castri Merevillæ conculcata non minus quam
under the-yoke of-the-castle of-Méréville trampled not less than
Sarracenorum depressione mendicabat; cum ejusdem castri
of-the-Saracens by-the-oppression begged since of-the-same castle
dominus, quotienscumque vellet, in eadem hospicium cum
the-lord as-often-as he-wished in it lodging with
quibuscumque vellet raperet, rusticorum bona pleno
whomever he-wished seized of-the-peasants the-goods with-full
ore devoraret, talliam et annonam tempore messis pro
mouth devoured tallage and grain at-the-time of-harvest as
consuetudine asportaret, lignaria sua bis aut ter in
custom carried-off woodpiles his twice or thrice in
anno carrucarum villæ dispendio aggregaret, porcorum,
the-year of-the-plow-teams of-the-village at-the-cost gathered of-pigs
agnorum, anserum, gallinarum, importabiles quasque molestias
of-lambs of-geese of-hens unbearable all troubles
pro consuetudine tolleret. Quæ cum tanta oppressione per
as custom took which since by-so-great oppression for

multa tempora in solitudinem fere jam redigeretur, audacter
many times into desert almost now was-being-reduced boldly
resistere, et molestias hujusmodi ab hæreditate sancta
to-resist and troubles such from the-inheritance holy
constanter exterminare elegimus. Cumque eum in causam
steadfastly to-banish we-chose and-when him into court
traheremus, et ipse sibi jure hæreditario patris et
we-dragged and he for-himself by-right hereditary of-father and
avi atque atavi consuetudines illas excusaret, ad
of-grandfather and of-great-grandfather customs those excused to
hoc, auxilio Dei, et hominum atque amicorum nostrorum
this by-the-help of-God and of-men and friends our
consilio, res processit, quod Hugo castri dominus,
by-the-counsel the-matter proceeded that Hugh of-the-castle the-lord
favore conjugis et filiorum, assensu domini regis Ludovici,
by-the-favor of-wife and sons by-the-assent of-the-lord king Louis
a quo se habere dicebat, beato Dionysio in perpetuum
from whom himself to-hold he-said to-blessed Denis in perpetuity
omnes omnino consuetudines, injustitiam suam recognoscendo,
all wholly customs injustice his by-acknowledging
relaxavit, remisit, manu propria jurejurando abjuravit, sicut
released remitted by-hand his-own by-oath abjured as
plenius in carta domini regis Ludovici invenitur. Nos
more-fully in the-charter of-the-lord king Louis is-found we
autem, ad ejus hominium ecclesiæ nostræ retinendum, duos
moreover for his homage to-church our to-be-kept two
Stampenses modios annonæ, unum frumenti et alterum avenæ,
Étampes measures of-grain one of-wheat and the-other of-oats
in curia nostra per manum monachi aut servientis nostri
in court our by the-hand of-a-monk or of-servant our
concessimus. Quo quidem prædicta villa eruta tormento,
we-granted from-which indeed the-aforesaid village rescued torment

cum prius vix nobis valeret decem aut quindecim libras,
whereas before scarcely to-us it-was-worth ten or fifteen pounds
centum Stampenses modios annonæ per singulos annos,
a-hundred Étampes measures of-grain through single years
qui sæpius centum libras valent secundum precium annonæ,
which more-often a-hundred pounds are-worth according-to the-price of-grain
per manus ministrorum reddere nobis consuevit.
by the-hands of-officers to-render to-us has-been-wont
Possessionem nihilominus quæ dicitur Rubridum, depressione
the-possession nonetheless which is-called Rouvray by-the-oppression
angariarum castri Puteoli omnino destitutam, emendare
of-the-exactions of-the-castle of-Le-Puiset wholly destitute to-amend
elaborantes, cum quadam die Hugo dominus Puteoli post
laboring when on-a-certain day Hugh lord of-Le-Puiset after
ruinam castri etiam nos super hoc convenisset, ut incultam
the-ruin of-the-castle even us about this had-approached that the-untilled
terram, depressione castri in solitudinem redactam, sub
land by-the-oppression of-the-castle into desert reduced under
medietate lucri ego et ipse excoleremus, licet hoc quidam
half of-the-profit I and he should-cultivate though this some
compendiosum approbarent, recusavimus; et quod cum eo
profitable approved we-refused and what with him
noluimus, per nos efficere ad commodum ecclesiæ
we-would-not through ourselves to-accomplish for the-advantage of-the-church
elaboravimus. Nec eum admittere socium in restitutione terræ
we-labored nor him to-admit as-partner in the-restoration of-the-land
sustinuimus, quem destructorem more antecessorum
we-endured whom as-destroyer in-the-manner of-predecessors
suorum gravissime persenseramus. Easdem enim consuetudines
his most-heavily we-had-felt the-same for customs
quas de Monarvilla enumeravimus, videlicet talliam et
which about Monnerville we-listed namely tallage and

annonam porcorum, ovium, agnorum, anserum, gallinarum,
grain of-pigs of-sheep of-lambs of-geese of-hens
pullorum, lignorum, ab eadem terra more antecessorum
of-chickens of-wood from the-same land in-the-manner of-predecessors
suorum abripuerat, et ex hoc ipso tam nobis quam
his he-had-snatched and from this very as-much to-us as
sibi infructuose jacentem omnino inutilem reddiderat.
to-himself fruitlessly lying wholly useless he-had-rendered
Nos igitur, miseriæ terræ et damno ecclesiæ nostræ
we therefore to-the-misery of-the-land and the-loss of-church our
condescendentes, in eadem sterili terra curtem ædificavimus,
condescending in the-same barren land a-court we-built
turrimque super portam ad repellendos raptores ereximus;
and-a-tower over the-gate for repelling robbers we-raised
tres carrucas ibidem posuimus; villam quæ Villana dicitur
three plow-teams there we-placed the-village which Villaine is-called
restituimus; incomposita terræ composuimus, usque adeo
we-restored the-disordered-things of-the-land we-ordered so far
eam meliorando, ut cum vix consueverit viginti libras
it by-improving that whereas scarcely it-had-been-wont twenty pounds
singulis annis, postea nobis centum libras, sæpius vero
in-single years afterward to-us a-hundred pounds more-often but
centum et viginti reddidit. Nos vero, sanctis Martyribus pro
a-hundred and twenty it-has-rendered we but to-the-holy Martyrs for
tantis beneficiis jure devoti, de eodem fructu laboris nostri
so-great benefits by-right devoted from the-same fruit of-labor our
ædificationi ecclesiæ eorum singulis annis quater viginti libras,
for-the-building of-church their in-single years four-times twenty pounds
usque ad operis expletionem, carta et sigillo assignavimus.
right to of-the-work the-completion by-charter and seal we-assigned

Removimus etiam ab eadem terra quandam consuetudinem
we-removed also from the-same land a-certain custom
malam vice comitis Stampensis, quæ palagium vocatur.
bad of-the-vis- -count of-Étampes which palagium is-called

De Tauriaco

12 · TOURY

Toury, chief of the abbey's Beauce villages, was nearly abandoned under the lords of Le Puiset when Suger came there as a young provost. With the churches of the region he appealed to the king, Le Puiset was destroyed, and as abbot he walls Toury, raises its revenue from twenty pounds to eighty, and pays to marry the girl who inherited the land's advocacy to a young man of his household, on terms that its holders owe the abbey homage.

Tauriacus igitur, famosa beati Dionysii villa, caput quidem
Toury therefore the-famous of-blessed Denis village head indeed
aliarum, et propria ac specialis sedes beati Dionysii,
of-the-others and own and special seat of-blessed Denis
peregrinis et mercatoribus, seu quibuscumque viatoribus
to-pilgrims and merchants or whatever travelers
alimenta cibariorum in media strata, lassis etiam
the-nourishment of-foods in the-middle-of the-highway to-the-weary also
quietem quiete ministrans, intolerabilibus dominorum præfati
rest quietly supplying by-the-unbearable of-the-lords of-the-aforesaid
castri Puteoli angariis usque adeo miserabiliter premebatur, ut,
castle Le-Puiset exactions so far wretchedly was-pressed that
cum illuc temporibus antecessoris nostri bonæ memoriæ Adæ
when thither in-the-times of-predecessor our of-good memory Adam
abbatis, ut præpositus terræ providerem, satis adhuc juvenis
abbot that as-provost of-the-land I-might-provide quite still young

accessissem, jam colonis pene destituta langueret, rapacitati
I-had-come already of-tenants almost destitute it-languished to-the-greed
Puteolensium, data esca populis Æthiopum, omnino
of-the-men-of-Le-Puiset given as-food to-the-peoples of-the-Ethiopians wholly
pateret. Nec enim ipsa domus propria beati Dionysii
lay-open nor for the-very house own of-blessed Denis
seipsam aliquando tuebatur; quin ipse dominus per
itself ever protected but the-very lord through
satellites suos eam frangeret, quæcumque reperta sacrilego
henchmen his it broke whatever found with-sacrilegious
spiritu asportaret, adjacentes villas frequentibus hospiciis
spirit carried-off the-adjoining villages with-frequent lodgings
confunderet, annonam et talliam sibi primum, deinde
confounded grain and tallage for-himself first then
dapifero suo, deinde præposito suo, rusticorum vectigalibus
for-seneschal his then for-provost his of-the-peasants by-the-carriages
ad castrum deferri cogeret. Vix qui aderant sub
to the-castle to-be-brought he-compelled scarcely those-who were-there under
tam nefandæ oppressionis mole vivebant. Cum ergo fere
so unspeakable of-oppression the-mass lived when therefore almost
per biennium ibidem demorando, his et aliis malis, et
for two-years there by-staying by-these and other evils and
humanæ compassionis doloribus, et ecclesiæ nostræ dispendio
of-human compassion by-the-pains and of-church our by-the-loss
defatigarer, nec nos solum, verum etiam omnes ecclesiæ quæ in
I-was-wearied nor we alone but also all churches which in
partibus illis terram habentes æque premebantur, convenimus,
parts those land having equally were-pressed we-assembled
et ut jugum importabile et tyrannidem nequissimi castri
and that the-yoke unbearable and tyranny of-the-most-wicked castle
evitare possemus, diligenti deliberatione contulimus. Hinc
to-avoid we-might with-diligent deliberation we-conferred hence

emersit quod labore nostro venerabilis episcopus Carnotensis
it-emerged that by-labor our the-venerable bishop of-Chartres
Ivo pro parte sua, capitulum Beatæ Mariæ pro sua, abbas
Ivo for part his the-chapter of-Blessed Mary for its the-abbot
Sancti Petri pro sua, ecclesia Sancti Johannis de Valleta pro
of-Saint Peter for his the-church of-Saint John of the-Vale for
sua, episcopus Aurelianis pro sua, ecclesia Sancti Aniani pro
its the-bishop at-Orléans for his the-church of-Saint Aignan for
sua, abbas Sancti Benedicti pro sua, archiepiscopus Senonis pro
its the-abbot of-Saint Benedict for his the-archbishop at-Sens for
sua, et nos pro nostra gloriosum regem adivimus Ludovicum,
his and we for ours the-glorious king approached Louis
ecclesiarum depopulationem, pauperum et orphanorum
of-the-churches the-devastation of-the-poor and orphans
deplorationem, ecclesiarum eleemosynis antecessorum suorum
the-lament of-the-churches from-the-alms of-predecessors his
et suis exhæredationem lacrimabiliter exposuimus. Qui, ut
and his-own the-disinheritance tearfully we-set-out who as
erat vir nobilissimæ industriæ, plenus pietate, ecclesiarum
he-was a-man of-most-noble industry full of-piety of-the-churches
illustris defensor, auxiliari spopondit; et quod ecclesias et
illustrious defender to-help pledged and that churches and
ecclesiarum bona deinceps destrui a præfato nequam
of-churches goods thereafter to-be-destroyed by the-aforesaid wicked-one
nullo modo pateretur jurejurando firmavit. Quod quidem
in-no way he-would-allow by-oath he-confirmed which indeed
egregie factum, quo labore, quibus expensis, quam graviter
excellently done with-what labor with-what expenses how heavily
expletum fuerit, in gestis præfati regis enucleatius invenitur.
completed it-was in the-deeds of-the-aforesaid king more-clearly is-found

Destructo siquidem radicitus pro merito suæ iniquitatis
destroyed indeed from-the-roots for the-deserts of-its iniquity
Puteolo castro, terra Sanctorum, tam nostra quam
Le-Puiset the-castle the-land of-the-Saints as-much ours as
aliæ, pristinam adeptæ libertatem, quæ bello aruerant,
others the-former having-gained freedom which by-war had-dried-up
pace floruerunt: sterilitate reposita, fœcunditatem cultæ
in-peace flourished barrenness laid-aside fertility cultivated
reddiderunt. Cum autem post decessum antecessoris nostri
rendered when moreover after the-death of-predecessor our
bonæ memoriæ Adæ abbatis ad hujus sanctæ amministrationis
of-good memory Adam abbot to of-this holy administration
sedem tam immeritus quam absens assumptus essem,
the-seat as undeserving as absent taken-up I-had-been
pristinæ virtutis et laboris non immemor, quia diutius
of-former valor and labor not unmindful because long
in illa demoratus fueram præpositura, devotius ad
in that stayed I-had provostship more-devoutly to
hanc amplificandam accessi. In curte, quam palo et
this to-be-enlarged I-came in the-court which with-stake and
vimine firmaram, castrum bene muratum erexi, turris
wicker I-had-strengthened a-castle well walled I-raised of-a-tower
propugnaculum principali portæ supererigi feci; domos
the-bulwark over-the-principal gate to-be-built-on I-caused houses
aptas et propugnabiles constitui; libertatem villæ, immo
fit and defensible I-set-up the-freedom of-the-village nay
totius terræ, intemeratam conservavi. Unde mihi aliquando
of-the-whole land inviolate I-kept whence to-me once
contigit quod, cum Aurelianum cum militari manu post
it-happened that when to-Orléans with a-military band after
dominum regem festinarem, et præpositum Puteoli priora
the-lord king I-was-hastening and the-provost of-Le-Puiset the-former

mala reciprocantem reperissem, turpiter captum tenui, et
evils renewing I-had-found shamefully captured I-held and
ad Sanctum Dionysium vinctum cum dedecore transmisi.
to Saint Denis bound with disgrace I-sent
Verum, quia ecclesiarum bona industria prælatorum pace
but because of-the-churches the-goods by-the-industry of-prelates in-peace
concrescere et confoveri debent, culturas nostras, quas ibidem
to-grow and to-be-cherished ought the-tillages our which there
habebamus dominicas, retentis earumdem decimis, colonis
we-had demesne retained of-the-same the-tithes for-the-tenants
qui ibidem inhabitarent censuales fecimus, quarum censum,
who there might-dwell rent-paying we-made of-which the-quitrent
ne oblivioni tradatur, scripto mandari præcepimus. Et ut
lest to-oblivion it-be-handed to-writing to-be-committed we-ordered and that
quanti constet nostro labore incrementum possessionis hujus
of-how-much stands by-our labor the-increase of-possession this
æstimetur, de præpositura, quæ non plus quam viginti libras
be-reckoned from the-provostship which not more than twenty pounds
valere solebat, quater viginti libras singulis annis habemus.
to-be-worth was-wont four-times twenty pounds in-single years we-have
Cæterarum vero consuetudinum cotidianus usus multo
of-the-other but customs the-daily use much
melioratus rerum incrementum facillime disserere poterit.
improved of-things the-increase most-easily to-set-out shall-be-able
Antiquam vero ejusdem terræ advocationem, ad Firmitatem
the-ancient but of-the-same land advocacy to La-Ferté
Balduini antiquitus pertingentem, qua terra ipsa immaniter
Baudouin anciently reaching by-which the-land itself monstrously
longævitate temporum premebatur, cum nulla alia refellendi
by-the-length of-times was-pressed since no other of-refuting
succederet via, contigit advocationem illam ad quandam
succeeded way it-happened advocacy that to a-certain

puellam, filiam filiæ Adæ Pigverensis, hæreditario
girl the-daughter of-the-daughter of-Adam of-Pithiviers by-hereditary
jure pertingere. Quo cognito, amicorum nostrorum consilio,
right to-reach which learned of-friends our by-the-counsel
multo sumptu eam pro voluntate nostra nuptui tradere
at-much cost her at will our in-marriage to-give
quæsivimus. Ad sedandas ergo terræ illius inquietudines,
we-sought for to-be-calmed therefore of-land that the-disquiets
nolentes more solito indigenarum molestiis eam affligi,
unwilling in-manner wonted of-the-natives by-the-troubles it to-be-afflicted
cuidam domestico nostro juveni puellam cum advocationibus
to-a-certain household-man our young the-girl with the-advocacies
dari fecimus; centum libras denariorum beati Dionysii
to-be-given we-caused a-hundred pounds of-pennies of-blessed Denis
tam matrimonio quam patri et matri puellæ, favore
as-much to-the-marriage as to-the-father and mother of-the-girl by-the-favor
domini regis Ludovici, de cujus feodo advocatio constabat,
of-the-lord king Louis of whose fief the-advocacy stood
tali pacto contulimus, ut pro pecunia ista et alia, videlicet
on-such agreement we-conferred that for money this and other namely
triginta librarum, quas dominus rex inde habuit, tam
of-thirty pounds which the-lord king thence had as-much
ipsi quam successores eorum nobis et successoribus nostris
they as successors their to-us and successors our
hominium, et servitium, et justiciam, ubi eos submoneremus,
homage and service and justice where them we-summoned
exequerentur. Quod si ad hoc deficerent, totum advocationis
should-perform that if in this they-failed the-whole of-the-advocacy
feodum, ac si proprium nostrum esset, eorum et parentum
fief as if own our it-were their and of-parents

ipsorum concessione, ac domini regis favore, donec nobis
their by-the-concession and of-the-lord king by-favor until to-us
satisfacerent in plenitudine, retinere liceret.
they-satisfied in fullness to-retain it-might-be-allowed
Feodos vero quos ex fisco proprio emimus, ad faciendas
the-fiefs but which from treasury own we-bought for making
stationes singulis annis per duos menses in eodem castro
garrison-duties in-single years for two months in the-same castle
Tauriaco, subter intitulare curavimus.
Toury below to-entitle we-have-taken-care

De Poionis Villa

13 · POINVILLE

Suger has Bérard of Essenville, from whom his kinsman Geoffrey the Red holds Poinville, hold it in fief of the abbey.

Similiter et Poionis Villam, quam habebat Gaufredus Ruffus
likewise also Poin- -ville which had Geoffrey the-Red
a cognato suo Berardo de Essenvilla, ut a nobis idem
from kinsman his Bérard of Essenville that from us the-same
Berardus tanquam homo noster in feodo haberet, conduximus.
Bérard as man our in fief should-hold we-arranged

De Feins et Vendrovillare

14 · FAINS AND VENDREVILLE

Fains and Vendreville, Hubert of Saint Valery's old gift to Saint-Denis, recovered from Galeran of Breteuil for about a hundred and fifty marks, go to the almonry for the poor under King Louis's confirmation.

Aliam etiam possessionem, quæ dicitur Feins et Vendrovillare,
another also possession which is-called Fains and Vendreville
cum aliis pertinentibus villis, a Galeranno de Bretoilo et
with other belonging villages from Galeran of Breteuil and
uxore ejus Juditha et strenuo viro filio ejus Ebrardo, qui
wife his Judith and the-vigorous man son his Évrard who
in expeditione Hierosolymitana occubuit, multo sumptu fere
in the-expedition to-Jerusalem fell at-much cost almost
centum quinquaginta marcarum argenti comparatam, sive
a-hundred fifty marks of-silver bought or
restitutam, (dicebatur quippe quod beati Dionysii antiquo
restored it-was-said indeed that of-blessed Denis in-ancient
tempore ex dono Huberti de Sancto Galarico extiterat),
time from the-gift of-Hubert of Saint Valery it-had-been
eleemosynæ beati Dionysii contulimus; sperantes de Dei
to-the-almonry of-blessed Denis we-conferred hoping from of-God
misericordia, quod ea pauperibus attributa eleemosyna
mercy that that to-the-poor assigned alms
divinæ retributionis beneficium nobis ab omnipotenti Deo
of-divine requital the-benefit for-us from almighty God
misericorditer impetrabit. Dixit enim quod sicut aqua
mercifully shall-obtain he-said for that as water
extinguit ignem, ita eleemosyna extinguit peccatum. Et ut
quenches fire so alms quenches sin and that

in sempiternum necessitatibus pauperum firmius deserviat,
for ever to-the-needs of-the-poor more-firmly it-may-serve
præcepto regis Ludovici, quod in archivis publicis repositum
by-the-precept of-king Louis which in the-archives public stored
continetur, firmari fecimus.
is-contained to-be-confirmed we-caused

De Belna

15 · BEAUNE-LA-ROLANDE

Beaune in the Gâtinais, rich but ruined by neglect and leased for thirty pounds, is relieved when King Louis gives up two of his three yearly lodgings there and fixes the third at eight pounds. Suger recovers lost lands, replants vineyards, and resettles empty villages.

Sane inter alias una de melioribus beati Dionysii possessionibus
truly among others one of the-better of-blessed Denis possessions
in pago Guastinensi Belna dinoscitur, quæ etiam spatiosa
in the-district of-the-Gâtinais Beaune is-known which also spacious
fere quatuor leugarum spatio, frumenti et vini opulentia
almost of-four leagues in-extent of-grain and of-wine in-wealth
ferax, quorumcumque fructuum mirabiliter capax, si non
fertile of-whatever fruits wonderfully capable if not
vexetur a servientibus domini regis, seu nostris, omnibus
it-be-harassed by the-servants of-the-lord king or ours with-all
bonis exuberat. Quæ, per incuriam procuratorum raro
goods abounds which through the-neglect of-the-stewards with-sparse
inculta habitatore, ad tantam declinaverat inopiam, ut, cum ad
untilled inhabitant to such had-declined want that though to
cameram calciamentorum ecclesiæ hujus pertineret, nullo modo
the-chamber of-the-footwear of-church this it-belonged in-no way

ea persolvere valeret. Inde erat quod, cum in manu abbatis
it to-pay-in-full it-could thence it-was that since in the-hand of-the-abbot
pro defectu debiti remaneret, singulis annis servientibus
for default of-the-debt it-remained in-single years to-the-servants
ejusdem terræ pro triginta libris totaliter eam locabat. Quam
of-the-same land for thirty pounds wholly it he-leased which
cum dissipatam et pene in solitudinem redactam in novitate
when scattered and almost into desert reduced in the-newness
prælationis nostræ reperissemus, charissimo domino nostro
of-prelacy our we-had-found to-the-dearest lord our
regi Francorum Ludovico, cujus nobilitati tam devote quam
king of-the-Franks Louis whose nobility as devoutly as
fideliter deservire satagebamus, tantum ecclesiæ detrimentum
faithfully to-serve we-were-busy so-great of-the-church loss
exposuimus. Qui etiam in hac terra intolerabiles et pene
we-set-out who also in this land unbearable and almost
consumptivas consuetudines habebat, videlicet tres in anno
consuming customs had namely three in the-year
procurationes, unam de collecta rusticorum, sufficientem
procurations one from the-collection of-the-peasants sufficient
tam sibi quam suis amministrantibus, duas de propriis
as-much for-himself as for-his attendants two from the-own
redditibus Sancti Dionysii, qua calamitate terra penitus
revenues of-Saint Denis by-which calamity the-land utterly
consumebatur. Qui, ut erat eximiæ liberalitatis, ecclesiæ
was-consumed who as he-was of-exceptional liberality of-the-church
tantum detrimentum et pauperum angarias miseratus,
so-great loss and of-the-poor exactions pitying
amoris et servicii nostri benivolus, procurationem illam de
of-love and service our well-disposed procuration that from
dominicatura ecclesiæ et nobis in perpetuum relaxavit. Illam
the-demesne of-the-church also to-us in perpetuity released that

vero, quæ fiebat de collecta rusticorum, octo librarum
but which was-made from the-collection of-the-peasants at-eight pounds
debito singulis annis sub præcepto regiæ majestatis firmavit.
owed in-single years under precept of-royal majesty he-fixed
Cujus exhilarati beneficio, usurpatas et alienatas tam
whose gladdened by-the-benefit the-usurped and alienated as-much
a majore quam ab aliis terras nobis retraximus; clausos
by the-mayor as by others lands to-us we-drew-back the-closes
vinearum, videlicet apud Sanctum Lupum, a viginti annis
of-vines namely at Saint Loup from twenty years
aratris redditos replantari fecimus; alias vineas juxta Belnam
to-plows given-back to-be-replanted we-caused other vines near Beaune
pene destructas restitui fecimus; alias a quodam homine
almost destroyed to-be-restored we-caused others from a-certain man
nostro viginti libris Aurelianensis monetæ emimus; villas
our for-twenty pounds of-Orléans money we-bought villages
omnino rapinis exhospitatas rehospitari fecimus.
wholly by-plunderings emptied-of-tenants to-be-re-tenanted we-caused

De decima de Barvilla

16 · THE BARVILLE TITHE AND BEAUNE'S HOUSES

Suger recovers the Barville tithe, held for a century at a nominal rent. The old house at Beaune collapses on a day when he happens to be absent, which he takes as a mercy, and he builds new houses, a barn, and fishponds, so that Beaune now often yields over two hundred pounds, not thirty.

Inter alia decimam quandam de Barvilla, quam milites
among other-things a-tithe certain of Barville which knights
quidam a centum annis, sicut dicebant, sub censu duorum
certain from a-hundred years as they-said under quitrent of-two
solidorum habebant, quæ nobis quotannis viginti aut triginta
shillings held which to-us yearly twenty or thirty
annonæ modiis valet, sive quæque perdita prout melius potuimus
of-grain measures is-worth or whatever lost-things as better we-could
ad opus ecclesiæ retraximus. Cumque dominicæ domus satis
for the-work of-the-church we-drew-back and-when the-demesne houses quite
vilissimæ ex toto corruissent, hoc potissimum ad has, quæ
most-worthless from whole had-collapsed this chiefly to these which
modo sunt facetæ et propugnabiles, construendas excitavit:
now are elegant and defensible to-be-built roused
quod cum constituissem determinare causas nostras in eadem
that when I-had-resolved to-determine cases our in the-same
domo, una dierum, nutu divino me absente, tam miserabiliter
house on-one of-the-days by-nod divine me absent so wretchedly
corruit, ut etiam lectum in quo jacerem si adessem, et
it-collapsed that even the-bed in which I-would-lie if I-were-present and
plancatum solarii, et tonnas inferioris promptuarii, et vasa
the-planking of-the-upper-floor and the-tuns of-the-lower storeroom and vessels
vinaria omnino confregerit, et sub tanta ruina, quod divina
wine wholly it-shattered and under so-great ruin that divine

propitiatio mihi pepercerit omnibus fidem fecerit. Granchiam
propitiation me had-spared to-all proof made a-barn
peroptimam ibidem extruximus, et stagna duo, quæ multa
very-excellent there we-built and ponds two which with-much
piscium copia multo tempore illuc adventantibus sufficientiam,
of-fish abundance for-much time thither to-those-coming sufficiency
si bene serventur, ministrabunt. Quæ quidem terra quantum
if well they-be-kept shall-supply which indeed land how-much
auxilio Dei sit meliorata, et de quanta miseria fuerit
by-the-help of-God has-been improved and from how-great misery it-was
suscitata, certum constat argumentum, quod cum prius triginta
raised certain stands proof that whereas before thirty
libras, nunc sæpius plus quam ducentas tantum persolvat.
pounds now more-often more than two-hundred so-much it-pays

De Axone burgo, qui nunc est Corboilus

17 · ESSONNES

The borough of Essonnes, given to the martyrs by ancient kings, is carried off by a tyrant to the castle of Corbeil.

Axonem burgum quidem Sancti Dionysii super fluvium Issonam
Essonnes a-borough indeed of-Saint Denis on the-river Essonne
antiqua regum liberalitate sanctis Martyribus collatum,
by-the-ancient of-kings liberality to-the-holy Martyrs conferred
sicut in antiquis eorum cartis continetur, atrocitas cujusdam
as in ancient their charters is-contained the-atrocity of-a-certain
tyranni in castrum Corboilum transtulit: et unde sanctos
tyrant into the-castle Corbeil transferred and whence the-holy
Martyres in terra, inde se de cœlo exhæredare elaboravit.
Martyrs on earth thence himself from heaven to-disinherit he-labored

De cella constructa in loco qui dicitur Campis

18 · THE CELL AT NOTRE-DAME-DES-CHAMPS

The bishops of Paris give Essonnes' mother church to Cluny; left is a tiny ruined chapel of Notre-Dame-des-Champs, where candles burn and the sick are healed. Suger sends monks; miracles multiply.

Igitur post multa annorum curricula, fere ducentorum
therefore after many of-years courses almost of-two-hundred
aut plus, cum mater ecclesia Axonæ, quæ parrochialis
or more when the-mother church of-Essonnes which parochial
est Corboili, sola quasi statua eodem in loco remansisset,
is at-Corbeil alone as-if a-statue the-same in place had-remained
eam etiam episcopi Parisienses ex æmulatione ingenitæ
it even the-bishops Parisian from rivalry of-the-inborn
monasterii libertatis beato Dionysio abstulerunt, et ut hoc
of-the-monastery freedom from-blessed Denis took-away and that this
ipsum fortiter defenderetur, Cluniaco et Cluniaci membris,
very strongly might-be-defended to-Cluny and of-Cluny to-the-members
videlicet Sancto Martino de Campis et ecclesiæ de Gornaco
namely to-Saint Martin of the-Fields and to-the-church of Gournay
contulerunt. Ipsi vero tyranni Corboilensis castri, in malitia
conferred the-very but tyrants of-the-Corbeil castle in malice
sua congelati, tam miserabiliter omnia sibi subjugaverunt
their frozen so wretchedly all-things to-themselves subjugated
ut vix quicquam reliqui præter vacuum terræ fundum
that scarcely anything of-remainder besides the-empty of-land ground
dimiserint, et in proprios usus, tanquam proprii essent
they-left and into their-own uses as-if of-own it-were
juris, ausu sacrilego redegerint. Supererat et quædam
right with-daring sacrilegious they-reduced there-remained also a-certain

capella in honore, ut ferebatur, beatæ Mariæ, qua nullam
chapel in the-honor as was-said of-blessed Mary than-which none
conspicatus sum minorem, semiruta, in loco qui dicitur
seen I-have smaller half-ruined in the-place which is-called
Campis, in qua et antiquum altare, quod supra ex solitudine
the-Fields in which also an-ancient altar which on-it from the-solitude
concretam herbam oves et capræ frequenter depascebant. Ubi
grown grass sheep and goats often grazed where
testimonio multorum sæpe in die sabbati, sanctitatem
by-the-testimony of-many often on the-day of-the-sabbath the-sanctity
loci significantes, candelæ videbantur ardere. Quo facto
of-the-place signifying candles were-seen to-burn by-which fact
excitati indigenæ infirmi, et post etiam alienigenæ multi
roused the-natives sick and after also foreigners many
illuc in spe sanitatis concurrebant, et sanabantur. Cum
thither in hope of-health ran-together and were-healed when
autem divino nutu locus ille a multis tam propinquis
moreover by-divine nod place that by many as-much near
quam remotis frequentaretur, destinati sunt illuc fratres
as distant was-frequented sent were thither brothers
nostri venerabiles viri bonæ memoriæ Herveus prior et
our venerable men of-good memory Hervé the-prior and
Odo Torcetensis, qui et Domino nostro et ejus beatæ
Odo of-Torcy who both the-Lord our and his blessed
Genitrici deservirent, locellumque illum divino cultui adaptare
Mother might-serve and-little-place that to-divine worship to-fit
et exaltare operam darent. Ubi statim tanta miraculorum
and to-exalt effort might-give where at-once so-great of-miracles
copia sub ammiratione omnium in brevi effloruit, ut
abundance under the-wonder of-all in short flowered that
et ab omnibus amaretur, ab omnibus prædicaretur, et a
both by all it-was-loved by all it-was-proclaimed and by

quibuscumque augmentaretur. Multitudo siquidem languentium,
whomever it-was-enlarged the-multitude indeed of-the-sick
et qui vexabantur a spiritibus immundis, nec non cæcorum,
and who were-harassed by spirits unclean and also of-the-blind
claudorum et aridorum incommoditas ibidem deponebatur.
of-the-lame and of-the-withered the-affliction there was-laid-down
Quorum miraculorum, cum innumera operante beata Dei
of-which miracles when countless working the-blessed of-God
Genitrice locum celebrem personarent, duo inpræsentiarum,
Mother the-place famous made-resound two at-present
quæ visu aut auditu cognovimus, paginæ præsenti ad
which by-sight or by-hearing we-have-known to-the-page present for
honorem ejusdem loci accommodare curavimus.
the-honor of-the-same place to-fit we-have-taken-care

Miraculum de muta

19 · THE MUTE GIRL

A twelve-year-old girl who has never spoken keeps vigil in the chapel with a noble widow. During the Te Deum she sees a glorious queen pass before her and call her by name, answers "Lady," and speaks thereafter as if she always had.

Erat quædam nobilis matrona, multis annis viduata, videlicet
there-was a-certain noble matron for-many years widowed namely
mater venerabilis viri abbatis Corbeiæ Roberti monachi
the-mother of-the-venerable man the-abbot of-Corbie Robert monk
nostri: quæ, cum loca Sanctorum ob remedium animæ suæ
our who when the-places of-the-Saints for the-remedy of-soul her
frequentare consuevisset, cum quadam puella jam duodenne,
to-frequent had-been-wont with a-certain girl already twelve-year-old

quæ nunquam fuerat locuta, illuc devenit. Nocte vero
who never had spoken thither came on-the-night but
sabbati in eadem ecclesiola cum ipsa muta pernoctans,
of-the-sabbath in the-same little-church with the-very mute-girl spending-the-night
dum pro se et pro suis divinas sollicitaret aures, ubi
while for herself and for her-own the-divine she-was-assailing ears when
fratres incœperunt Te Deum laudamus, visum est, sicut
the-brothers began Thee God we-praise seen it-was as
referebat, eidem puellæ quasi in extasim raptæ, quod
she-related to-the-same girl as-if into ecstasy snatched that
quædam gloriosa regina pulchra ut luna, electa ut sol,
a-certain glorious queen fair as the-moon chosen as the-sun
cicladibus regiis vestita, auro gemmisque pretiosis coronata,
in-robes royal clad with-gold and-gems precious crowned
a sinistro cornu altaris ad dextrum contendens, ante eam
from the-left horn of-the-altar to the-right making-her-way before her
transibat. Quæ cum eam nomine proprio (Lancendis enim
was-passing who when her by-name own Lancendis for
vocabatur) pie satis advocasset, audiente tam præfata
she-was-called kindly enough had-called hearing as-much the-aforesaid
matrona quam aliis multis, clara voce, lingua inusitata,
matron as others many with-clear voice with-tongue unaccustomed
«Domina» respondit. Nec deinceps minus loqui aut scivit
Lady she-answered nor thereafter less to-speak either she-knew
aut potuit, quam si toto tempore vitæ suæ locuta fuisset.
or could than if the-whole time of-life her spoken she-had
Quod stupendum miraculum qui aderant summo præconio
which astounding miracle those-who were-present with-highest proclamation
attollentes, per diversas regiones adjacentes reportaverunt.
extolling through various regions adjoining carried-back
Qui vero prius eam per quinquennium mutam, et post per
we-who but before her for five-years mute and after for

quinquennium loquacem cognovimus, locum ipsum sanctum
five-years talkative have-known the-place itself holy
et exaltare et diligere jure debuimus.
both to-exalt and to-love by-right have-been-bound

De hydropica

20 · THE DROPSICAL WOMAN AND THE NEW PRIORY

A woman swollen with dropsy, whose stench drives people from the chapel, is kept there by the brothers' mercy, and one night the Virgin drains her and restores her. Suger builds a priory for twelve monks, furnishes it with books and vestments, and endows it with plow-teams, vineyards, presses, livestock, and rents.

Secundare dignum duximus et aliud, sicut promisimus,
to-add-second fitting we-have-thought also another as we-promised
miraculum. Hydropica quædam tumida more
miracle a-dropsical-woman certain swollen in-the-manner
prægnantis, nec minus præ dolore clamosa voce
of-a-pregnant-woman nor less for pain loud with-voice
insaniens (premebatur enim humore aquatico intolerabiliter),
raving she-was-pressed for by-humor watery unbearably
manibus amicorum ad sanctam Mariam præfato loco
by-the-hands of-friends to holy Mary in-the-aforesaid place
portata est. Quæ cum per multos dies ante sanctum altare
carried was who when for many days before the-holy altar
delituisset, ipso suæ putredinis et corrupti elementi
had-lain-hidden by-the-very of-her putrefaction and of-corrupted element
fœtore adventantes multos reiciebat. Cumque jam nulla spes
stench those-coming many drove-back and-when now no hope
succederet sanitatis (tumor enim et sanies ipsam etiam
came of-health the-swelling for and pus the-very even

faciem jam fere in informitatem confuderat), murmurabant
face already almost into shapelessness had-confounded murmured
multi tam sani quam infirmi, suppliciter postulantes ut ab
many as-much healthy as sick suppliantly demanding that from
eadem ecclesiola exponeretur. Verum fratres nostri venerandi
the-same little-church she-be-put-out but brothers our venerable
viri maluerunt sustinere misericordes ejus ingratam præsentiam,
men preferred to-endure merciful her unwelcome presence
quam immisericordes absentiam. Contigit igitur quadam nocte
than merciless the-absence it-happened therefore on-a-certain night
dominica (in his enim potissimum divina manus operabatur)
of-the-Lord's-day on these for chiefly the-divine hand worked
illam hydropicam, quod non consueverat, obdormisse: cum
that dropsical-woman which not she-had-been-used to-have-fallen-asleep when
subito gloriosa imperatrix Virgo Maria invisibiliter ad uterum
suddenly the-glorious empress the-Virgin Mary invisibly to the-womb
humore refluo exhaustum, tam gracile quam nitidum
with-the-humor flowing-back drained as slender as sleek
cito restituit. Videres, et qui aderant tam fratres
quickly restored you-might-see and those-who were-present as-much brothers
nostri quam alii multi viderunt tantam effusi humoris et
our as others many saw such of-poured-out humor and
decursi flegmatis in terra abundantiam, ut cum scutellis
of-run-down phlegm on the-ground abundance that with dishes
et situlis et ollis illa asportare statim oporteret. Quanto
and buckets and pots it to-carry-off at-once it-was-necessary by-how-much
autem qui aderant ob rei magnitudinem stupuerunt,
moreover those-who were-present for of-the-thing the-greatness were-stunned
tanto devotius laudes omnipotenti Deo et ejus Genitrici
by-so-much more-devoutly praises to-almighty God and his Mother
reddiderunt. Te Deum laudamus deplorando cantaverunt,
they-rendered Thee God we-praise weeping they-sang

et ut Deus omnipotens sicut incœperat honorem Genitricis
and that God almighty as he-had-begun the-honor of-Mother
suæ ibidem continuaret suppliciter efflagitaverunt.
his there might-continue suppliantly they-begged
His igitur et aliis miraculorum et prodigiorum signis
by-these therefore and other of-miracles and of-prodigies signs
præfatum locum insignem, divina dispositione, ob amorem
the-aforesaid place notable by-divine disposition for love
Dei Genitricis honorare et exaltare amplectentes, ædificatum
of-God of-the-Mother to-honor and to-exalt embracing built
iri instanter incœpimus; et, ut conventus fratrum ibidem
to-be urgently we-began and that a-convent of-brothers there
Deo deserviret, duodecim fratres cum priore suo constituimus,
God might-serve twelve brothers with prior their we-set-up
claustrum, refectorium, dormitorium, cæterasque officinas
a-cloister refectory dormitory and-the-other offices
regulares extruximus. Ecclesiam ornamentis, sacerdotalibus
regular we-built the-church with-ornaments priestly
indumentis, palliis et palliorum cappis decenter adaptavimus.
garments palls and of-silk copes fittingly we-furnished
Textus duos, videlicet antiquum textum cotidianum et
gospel-books two namely the-ancient book daily and
gradalem Karoli imperatoris, a matre ecclesia illuc
the-gradual of-Charles the-emperor from the-mother church thither
deferri fecimus. Bibliothecam honestam tribus voluminibus
to-be-brought we-caused a-Bible fine in-three volumes
posuimus. Nec minus circa victualia fratrum solliciti, duas
we-placed nor less about the-provisions of-the-brothers solicitous two
carrucas in propria terra prope locum locavimus. Clausum
plow-teams in own land near the-place we-placed a-close
vinearum aptum magnæ abbatiæ et bene valentem eis
of-vines fit for-a-great abbey and well worth for-them

plantavimus, vinearum copiam multis modis adquisivimus.
we-planted of-vines abundance in-many ways we-acquired
Torcularia quatuor penes se, in proprio fere quater
presses four by themselves on own almost four-times
viginti modios vini valentia, absque sumptu aliquo ipsi
twenty measures of-wine worth without cost any to-the-very
loco ædificavimus, usque adeo de copia eis providentes,
place we-built so far with abundance for-them providing
ut quandoque ducentos quinquaginta, quandoque trecentos
that sometimes two-hundred fifty sometimes three-hundred
modios vini large recipiant. Prata etiam sufficienter in
measures of-wine amply they-receive meadows also sufficiently in
propriis cespitibus circumfodi fecimus; hortos satis habiles
own turves to-be-dug-round we-caused gardens quite fit
pulmentorum seminibus satis fecimus. Erat autem quædam
for-pottage with-seeds sown we-made there-was moreover a-certain
altera beati Dionysii a multis jam temporibus destituta,
other of-blessed Denis for many now times destitute
et in solitudinem redacta, uno etiam carens cultore, quæ
and into desert reduced one even lacking cultivator which
forsitan a vicinis villis alieno cultore annonæ modium
perhaps from neighboring villages by-another's cultivator of-grain a-measure
aut minus reddere consueverant, aut duos aut tres de nucibus
or less to-render they-had-been-wont or two or three of nuts
sextarios, in qua tres carrucas in curia nova, et granchiam
sesters in which three plow-teams in a-court new and a-barn
novam eis instituimus. Oves et vaccas et nutrituram
new for-them we-set-up sheep and cows and livestock
ad opus eorum, propter pascuorum ubertatem et terrarum
for the-use their because-of of-the-pastures the-richness and of-the-lands
emendationem, ibidem locavimus. Aliam etiam beati Dionysii
the-improvement there we-placed another also of-blessed Denis

possessionem prope Brunetum, ex qua sæpe decem modios
possession near Brunoy from which often ten measures
annonæ, et vini fere decem, et fœnum pabulo jumentorum
of-grain and of-wine almost ten and hay for-fodder of-beasts
recipiunt, de proprio obligavimus. De molendino etiam a
they-receive from our-own we-pledged from the-mill also for
sexaginta fere annis perdito, quicquid recuperavimus, eis
sixty almost years lost whatever we-recovered to-them
dimisimus; ea tamen conditione, ut in sequenti die festi
we-gave-up on-that yet condition that on the-following day of-the-feast
beati Dionysii viginti solidos refectorio beati Dionysii
of-blessed Denis twenty shillings to-the-refectory of-blessed Denis
persolvant. In eadem etiam villa centum solidos inter censum
they-pay in the-same also village a-hundred shillings between quitrent
et talliam habent. Corboilo vero in circuitu suî decem
and tallage they-have at-Corbeil but in the-circuit of-itself ten
et septem libras de proprio censu, præter alios redditus
and seven pounds of own quitrent besides other revenues
et venditionum, et nundinarum, et aliarum consuetudinum;
both of-sales and of-fairs and of-other customs
nec non molendinum, et furnum, et octo modios avenæ
and also a-mill and an-oven and eight measures of-oats
cum gallinis, et præbendam integram Sancti Exuperii.
with hens and a-prebend whole of-Saint Exupère

De Marogilo

21 · MAREUIL AND THE EXCHANGE FOR LA CELLE

Suger pays a thousand shillings to Ansold of Cornillon for the road toll that oppressed Mareuil. He also records how estates the abbey lost when the kingdom was divided, Herny and other lands near Metz among them, were exchanged for La Celle, where he places brothers in hope of more.

In pago Meldensi, villa quæ dicitur Marogilum, occasione
in the-district of-Meaux the-village which is-called Mareuil by-occasion
cujusdam viaturæ quam Ansoldus de Cornello fere usque ad
of-a-certain road-toll which Ansold of Cornillon almost right to
ipsas villæ domus possidebat, gravissime infestabatur: cum
the-very of-the-village houses possessed most-heavily was-harassed since
nec agricolæ nec alii quilibet villam exire tuto auderent, quin
neither farmers nor others any the-village to-leave safely dared but
occasionibus multis viaturæ a servientibus Ansoldi raperentur,
on-occasions many of-the-road-toll by the-servants of-Ansold they-were-seized
et ad curiam ejus intercepti ducerentur, nec minus de pecoribus
and to court his intercepted were-led nor less for the-cattle
villam exeuntibus redimerentur. Nos ergo mille solidos pro
the-village leaving they-were-ransomed we therefore a-thousand shillings for
pace ejusdem villæ, ut eandem nobis dimitteret viaturam,
the-peace of-the-same village that the-same to-us he-should-give-up road-toll
ei in Hierosolymitanam expeditionem proficiscenti donavimus;
to-him on the-Jerusalem expedition setting-out we-gave
et, ut beati Dionysii deinceps constaret, per manum episcopi
and that of-blessed Denis thereafter it-should-stand by the-hand of-the-bishop
Meldensis Manassæ et ecclesiæ ejusdem, nec non et sigillo
of-Meaux Manasses and of-the-church of-the-same and also even by-the-seal

comitis Theobaldi, annuente ejus uxore et filio, nobis firmari
of-count Theobald assenting his wife and son for-us to-be-confirmed
fecimus. Eam enim, sicut confessus est, injuste occupaverat.
we-caused it for as confessed he-has unjustly he-had-occupied
Commutationis etiam cujusdam formam successoribus nostris
of-an-exchange also certain the-form to-successors our
innotescere cupientes, si forte Dei auxilio hoc ipsum in
to-become-known desiring if perhaps of-God by-the-help this very into
melius aliquando posset immutari, intitulare curavimus. Dum
better sometime it-could to-be-changed to-entitle we-have-taken-care while
nobile regnum Francorum in statu monarchiæ consisteret,
the-noble kingdom of-the-Franks in the-state of-monarchy stood
circumquaque sicut se regia potestas extendebat, per
round-about as itself royal power extended through
totam regni tetrarchiam, videlicet in Italia, Lotharingia,
the-whole of-the-kingdom tetrarchy namely in Italy Lorraine
Francia, Aquitania, ecclesia beati Dionysii magnis multisque
France Aquitaine the-church of-blessed Denis in-great and-many
possessionibus liberalitate regum abundabat. Verum quod
possessions by-the-liberality of-kings abounded but what
unitas illibatum conservabat, filialis divisio et corrumpere
unity unimpaired preserved the-filial division both to-corrupt
et diminuere elaboravit. Hinc est quod beatus Dionysius
and to-diminish labored hence it-is that blessed Denis
Hecelingas, Herbertingas, et Salonam, et quamplures alias
Herny Eberscbing and Salonnes and very-many other
possessiones amittens, villas etiam quæ in pago Metensi
possessions losing the-villages also which in the-district of-Metz
existunt, videlicet castrum Gomundas, Blistetot, et Cochilingas,
are namely the-castle Gomont Blittersdorf and Cocheren
perdidit. Pro quarum reclamatione cum sæpius apostolico
lost for whose reclaiming when more-often to-the-apostolic

conspectui insisteremus, tum pro injustitia sua, tum pro
sight we-pressed both for injustice its and for
incommoditate personarum suarum (qui enim eas auferebant
the-inconvenience of-persons its who for them took-away
male et pessime absque confessione moriebantur), quasi pro
badly and most-wretchedly without confession died as-if in
commutatione locum qui dicitur Cella cum appendiciis suis
exchange the-place which is-called La-Celle with appendages its
in cartis Ludovici imperatoris denominatis, plena libertate,
in the-charters of-Louis the-emperor named with-full freedom
beato Dionysio contulit, ubi fratres nostros ad serviendum Deo,
to-blessed Denis he-conferred where brothers our for serving God
in spe augmentationis et succedentis recuperationis, locavimus.
in hope of-increase and of-following recovery we-placed

De Calvo Monte

22 · CHAUMONT

Suger obtains the church of Saint-Pierre at Chaumont from the archbishop of Rouen and the king, places twelve monks and a prior there, has it consecrated, and assigns it wine from the abbey's tithes.

Ecclesiam quoque Sancti Petri in castro Calvo Monte sitam,
the-church also of-Saint Peter in the-castle Chau- -mont situated
tam abbatiam quam ipsas canonicas, canonicis decedentibus,
as-much the-abbey as the-very canonries the-canons dying
tam a Rothomagensi archiepiscopo Hugone quam a
as-much from the-Rouen archbishop Hugh as from
domino rege Francorum Ludovico obtinere elaboravimus:
the-lord king of-the-Franks Louis to-obtain we-have-labored

necnon et duodecim fratres cum tredecimo priore, ad
and-also even twelve brothers with a-thirteenth the-prior for
exaltationem ejusdem ecclesiæ et divini cultus propagationem,
the-exaltation of-the-same church and of-divine worship the-spreading
reverenter locavimus, et eandem ecclesiam ab eodem
reverently we-placed and the-same church by the-same
reverendo archiepiscopo consecrari, et ante eam cimiterium
reverend archbishop to-be-consecrated and before it the-cemetery
benedici, Deo annuente, obtinuimus. Quæ siquidem nova quasi
to-be-blessed God assenting we-obtained which indeed new as-if
nobile membrum capiti suo ecclesiæ beati Dionysii copulata,
a-noble member to-head its the-church of-blessed Denis joined
quanto transeuntibus successoribus nostris a Vilcassino
by-how-much to-the-passing successors our from the-Vexin
ad Normanniam, vel etiam pro conservatione reliquarum
to Normandy or even for the-keeping of-the-other
possessionum, in eodem pago demorantibus apta sive idonea
possessions in the-same district staying apt or suitable
existit, tanto de propriis ut de acquisitis eam locupletare
it-is by-so-much from own-things as from acquired it to-enrich
tanquam novam plantam et confovere jure decertabit.
as a-new plant and to-cherish by-right he-shall-strive
Fratribus vero ibidem Deo deservientibus, quia vineis egent,
to-the-brothers but there God serving because of-vines they-lack
de decimis quas nobis dedit rex Ludovicus apud Cergiacum,
from the-tithes which to-us gave king Louis at Cergy
unoquoque anno viginti modios vini, et de decima quam
each year twenty measures of-wine and from the-tithe which
nos acquisivimus apud Ablegiacum medietatem confirmavimus.
we acquired at Ableiges the-half we-confirmed

De Bernevalle

23 · BERNEVAL AND OTHER VILLAGES

At Berneval on the Norman coast, his first provostship, Suger recovers the parish churches for the treasurer to renew the church's hangings, adds the village of Carrières, and raises the rents of Morigny, Lilly, Fleury, and Montfosseau.

In ea autem quæ dicitur Bernevallis possessione, super
in that moreover which is-called Berneval possession on
Normannici littus maris, in qua etiam primam alicujus
of-the-Norman the-shore sea in which also the-first of-any
præposituræ ab antecessore meo suscepi obedientiam, quam
provostship from predecessor my I-received obedience which
etiam in tempore strenuissimi regis Henrici, adhuc satis
also in the-time of-the-most-vigorous king Henry still quite
juvenis, ab oppressione exactorum regiorum, quos dicunt
young from the-oppression of-the-collectors royal whom they-call
graffiones, multo labore multisque placitis emancipaveram,
graffiones with-much labor and-many pleas I-had-freed
parrochiales ecclesias, quas Rogerius presbyter et frater
the-parochial churches which Roger the-priest and brother
ejus Gaufredus hæreditario jure sibi vendicabant, ad
his Geoffrey by-hereditary right to-themselves claimed to
dominicaturam ecclesiæ in novitate prælationis nostræ
the-demesne of-the-church in the-newness of-prelacy our
retraximus, easque et redditus earum thesaurario, ad
we-drew-back and-them and the-revenues their to-the-treasurer for
renovandas et augmentandas ecclesiæ hujus palliaturas, in
renewing and increasing of-church this the-hangings in
sempiternum contulimus. Et quia fere nullos redditus ad
perpetuity we-conferred and because almost no revenues for

hoc supplendum habebat, aliam quandam villam in partibus
this supplying he-had another certain village in parts
istis, quæ dicitur Quadraria nuper ædificata, adjunximus. Et
these which is-called Carrières lately built we-added and
hæc quidem quatuor marcas, ecclesiæ vero septem libras,
this indeed four marks to-the-church but seven pounds
si tamen meliorari non poterit, persolvit. Redditus vero
if yet to-be-improved not it-shall-be-able pays revenues but
alios consuetudinarios præfatæ villæ Bernevallis, tam in
other customary of-the-aforesaid village Berneval as-much in
censibus quam in aliis, fere usque ad quindecim libras,
quitrents as in others almost right to fifteen pounds
sicut credimus, augmentari fecimus. Consuetudinem autem
as we-believe to-be-increased we-caused the-custom moreover
quam vulgo dicunt aquariam, quamque in tempore bonæ
which commonly they-call aquaria and-which in the-time of-good
memoriæ antecessoris nostri a præposito nostro, qui eam
memory of-predecessor our from provost our who it
occupaverat, excutere adjuvimus, festivo piissimi regis
had-seized to-shake-out we-helped to-the-festive of-the-most-pious king
Dagoberti anniversario refectioni fratrum assignavimus.
Dagobert anniversary for-the-refection of-the-brothers we-assigned
Villas etiam Moriniacum, Liliacum et Floriacum, cum
the-villages also Morigny Lilly and Fleury since
non consuevissent reddere plus quam septem aut decem
not they-had-been-wont to-render more than seven or ten
libras, ut triginta aut ad minus viginti quinque reddant
pounds that thirty or at least twenty five they-render
elaboravimus. Idem et de Monte Fusceoli.
we-have-labored the-same also of Châteauneuf- -sur-Epte

De ecclesiæ ornatu

24 · THE FIRST PAINTING OF THE CHURCH

Turning to the buildings, Suger first has the old walls repaired and painted in gold and precious colors by the best painters he can find, a work he had longed to do since his schooldays.

His igitur reddituum incrementis taliter assignatis, ad
these therefore of-revenues increases thus assigned to
ædificiorum institutionem memorandam manum reduximus,
of-buildings the-founding to-be-recorded our-hand we-have-brought-back
ut et ex hoc ipso Deo omnipotenti tam a nobis quam
that both from this very to-God almighty as-much by us as
a successoribus nostris grates referantur, et eorum affectus
by successors our thanks be-rendered and their affection
ad hoc ipsum prosequendum et, si necesse sit, peragendum
for this very to-be-pursued and if necessary it-be to-be-completed
bono exemplo animetur. Neque enim aut penuria aliqua, aut
by-good example be-roused nor for either want any or
quodcumque impedimentum cujuscumque potestatis timendum
whatever hindrance of-whatever power to-be-feared
erit, si ob amorem sanctorum Martyrum de suo sibi
shall-be if for love of-the-holy Martyrs from their-own to-them
secure serviatur. Primum igitur quod Deo inspirante hujus
securely it-be-served the-first therefore that God inspiring of-this
ecclesiæ incœpimus opus, propter antiquarum maceriarum
church we-began work because-of of-the-ancient walls
vetustatem et aliquibus in locis minacem diruptionem, ascitis
the-age and some in places threatening collapse summoned
melioribus quos invenire potui de diversis partibus pictoribus,
the-best whom to-find I-could from various parts painters

eos aptari et honeste depingi tam auro quam preciosis
them to-be-fitted and handsomely to-be-painted as-much with-gold as with-precious
coloribus devote fecimus. Quod, quia etiam in scholis addiscens
colors devoutly we-caused which because even in the-schools learning
hoc facere si unquam possem appetebam, libentius complevi.
this to-do if ever I-could I-longed more-gladly I-completed

De ecclesiæ primo augmento

25 · THE ENLARGEMENT BEGUN

On feast days the church is so crowded that women run to the altar over men's heads. Suger begins to enlarge it at the old entrance, pulling down an addition said to be Charlemagne's, enlarging the body of the church and its entrance, tripling the doors, and raising high towers.

Verum, cum jam hoc ipsum multo sumptu compleretur,
but when already this very at-much cost was-being-completed
inspirante divino nutu, propter eam quam sæpe diebus festis,
inspiring divine nod because-of that which often on-days festal
videlicet in festo beati Dionysii et in Indicto, et in aliis
namely on the-feast of-blessed Denis and at the-Lendit and on others
quamplurimis, et videbamus et sentiebamus importunitatem
very-many both we-saw and felt inconvenience
(exigebat enim loci angustia ut mulieres super capita
required for of-the-place the-narrowness that women over the-heads
virorum, tanquam super pavimentum, ad altare dolore
of-men as-if over a-pavement to the-altar with-pain
multo et clamoso tumultu currerent), ad augmentandum
much and loud tumult should-run for enlarging
et amplificandum nobile manuque divina consecratum
and amplifying the-noble and-by-hand divine consecrated

monasterium, virorum sapientum consilio, religiosorum
monastery of-men wise by-the-counsel of-religious
multorum precibus, ne Deo sanctisque Martyribus displiceret,
many by-prayers lest to-God and-the-holy Martyrs it-should-displease
adjutus, hoc ipsum incipere aggrediebar; tam in capitulo
aided this very to-begin I-undertook as-much in chapter
nostro quam in ecclesia divinæ supplicans pietati, ut qui
our as in church the-divine supplicating piety that he-who
initium est et finis, id est Alpha et Omega, bono
the-beginning is and the-end that is Alpha and Omega to-a-good
initio bonum finem salvo medio concopularet, ne virum
beginning a-good end with-a-safe middle might-join lest a-man
sanguinum ab ædificio templi refutaret, qui hoc ipsum
of-bloods from the-building of-the-temple he-should-reject who this very
toto animo magis quam Constantinopolitanas gazas
with-whole mind more than Constantinopolitan treasures
obtinere præoptaret. Accessimus igitur ad priorem valvarum
to-obtain desired we-approached therefore to the-former of-the-doors
introitum; et deponentes augmentum quoddam, quod a
entrance and taking-down an-addition certain which by
Karolo Magno factum perhibebatur honesta satis occasione
Charles the-Great made was-said by-a-fitting enough occasion
(quia pater suus Pipinus imperator extra in introitu valvarum
because father his Pepin the-emperor outside at the-entrance of-the-doors
pro peccatis patris sui Karoli Martelli prostratum se
for the-sins of-father his Charles Martel face-down himself
sepeliri, non supinum, fecerat), ibidem manum apposuimus,
to-be-buried not face-up had-caused there our-hand we-applied
et quemadmodum apparet, et in amplificatione corporis
and as appears both in the-enlarging of-the-body

ecclesiæ, et introitus et valvarum triplicatione, turrium
of-the-church and of-the-entrance and of-the-doors by-the-tripling of-towers
altarum et honestarum erectione, instanter desudavimus.
high and handsome by-the-raising urgently we-sweated

De dedicatione

26 · THE DEDICATION OF THE WEST CHAPELS

The archbishop of Rouen dedicates the upper oratory of Saint Romanus, and the bishops of Meaux and Senlis the lower chapels of Saint Hippolytus and Saint Nicholas; their procession goes out by Saint Eustace's door and in by a gate moved from the old work.

Oratorium sancti Romani, ad famulandum Deo sanctisque ejus
the-oratory of-Saint Romanus for serving God and-the-holy his
angelis, dedicari a venerabili viro Rothomagensi archiepiscopo
angels to-be-dedicated by the-venerable man the-Rouen archbishop
Hugone et aliis quamplurimis episcopis obtinuimus. Qui
Hugh and other very-many bishops we-obtained which
locus quam secretalis, quam devotus, quam habilis divina
place how secluded how devout how fit divine-things
celebrantibus, qui ibidem Deo deserviunt, ac si jam in parte
for-those-celebrating who there God serve as if already in part
dum sacrificant eorum in cœlis sit habitatio, cognorunt.
while they-sacrifice their in the-heavens be dwelling have-come-to-know
Eadem etiam dedicationis celebritate, in inferiori testitudine
at-the-same also of-dedication celebration in the-lower vault
ecclesiæ dedicata sunt hinc et inde duo oratoria, ex una
of-the-church dedicated were hence and thence two oratories on one
parte sancti Hippoliti sociorumque ejus, et ex altera sancti
side of-Saint Hippolytus and-of-companions his and on the-other of-Saint

Nicolai, a venerabilibus viris Manasse Meldensi episcopo
Nicholas by venerable men Manasses of-Meaux bishop
et Petro Silvanectensi. Quorum trium una et gloriosa
and Peter of-Senlis of-which three one and glorious
processio, cum per ostium sancti Eustachii egrederetur, ante
procession when through the-door of-Saint Eustace went-out before
principales portas transiliens cum ingenti cleri decantantis
the-principal gates passing with a-huge of-clergy chanting
et populi tripudiantis turba, episcopis præeuntibus et
and of-people dancing crowd the-bishops going-before and
sanctæ insistentibus consecrationi, per singularem atrii
to-the-holy applying-themselves consecration through the-single of-the-atrium
portam de antiquo in novum opus transpositam tertio
gate from the-old into the-new work transferred thirdly
ingrediebantur. Et ad honorem omnipotentis Dei festivo opere
they-entered and to the-honor of-almighty God the-festal work
completo, cum in superiore parte elaborare accingeremur,
completed when in the-upper part to-labor we-girded-ourselves
aliquantulum fatigatos recreabant; et ne laboris aut penuriæ
a-little wearied they-refreshed and lest of-labor or of-want
alicujus timore deprimeremur gratantissime sollicitabant.
any by-fear we-be-pressed-down most-gladly they-urged

De portis fusilibus et deauratis

27 · THE BRONZE DOORS

Suger has the main doors cast and gilded with the Passion and Resurrection, sets a mosaic over the left door, has the year of consecration inscribed in gilded letters, and adds verses for the doors: the noble work should brighten minds and lead them through true lights to the true light, where Christ is the door.

Valvas siquidem principales, accitis fusoribus et electis
the-doors indeed principal summoned founders and chosen
sculptoribus, in quibus passio Salvatoris et resurrectio vel
sculptors on which the-passion of-the-Savior and resurrection or
ascensio continetur, multis expensis, multo sumptu in earum
ascension is-contained at-many expenses at-much cost in their
deauratione, ut nobili porticui conveniebat, ereximus. Necnon
gilding as to-the-noble portico was-fitting we-raised and-also
et alias in dextera parte novas, in sinistra vero antiquas sub
even others on the-right side new on the-left but old under
musivo, quod et novum contra usum hic fieri et in arcu
the-mosaic which also new against custom here to-be-made and in the-arch
portæ imprimi elaboravimus. Turrim etiam et superiora
of-the-door to-be-set we-labored the-tower also and the-upper
frontis propugnacula, tam ad ecclesiæ decorem quam
of-the-front battlements as-much for of-the-church the-beauty as
et utilitatem, si opportunitas exigeret, variari condiximus;
also the-utility if occasion should-require to-be-varied we-agreed
litteris etiam cupro deauratis consecrationis annum intitulari,
in-letters also of-copper gilded of-the-consecration the-year to-be-inscribed
ne oblivioni traderetur præcepimus hoc modo:
lest to-oblivion it-be-handed we-ordered in-this manner

Ad decus ecclesiæ, quæ fovit et extulit illum,
to the-glory of-the-church which cherished and exalted him
Sugerius studuit ad decus ecclesiæ.
Suger strove to the-glory of-the-church
Deque tuo tibi participans martyr Dionysi,
and-from yours to-you sharing martyr Denis
Orat ut exores fore participem Paradisi.
he-prays that you-obtain to-be a-sharer of-Paradise
Annus millenus et centenus quadragenus
the-year thousandth and hundredth fortieth
Annus erat Verbi, quando sacrata fuit.
the-year was of-the-Word when consecrated it-was

Versus etiam portarum hi sunt:
the-verses also of-the-doors these are

Portarum quisquis attollere quæris honorem,
of-the-doors whoever to-extol you-seek the-honor
Aurum nec sumptus, operis mirare laborem,
the-gold nor the-expense of-the-work marvel-at the-labor
Nobile claret opus, sed opus quod nobile claret
noble shines the-work but the-work which noble shines
Clarificet mentes ut eant per lumina vera
let-it-brighten minds that they-may-go through lights true
Ad verum lumen, ubi Christus janua vera.
to the-true light where Christ the-door true

Quale sit intus in his determinat aurea porta.
what-kind it-is within in these determines the-golden door
Mens hebes ad verum per materialia surgit,
the-mind dull to the-true through material-things rises
Et demersa prius hac visa luce resurgit.
and drowned before this seen light rises-again

Et in superliminari:
and on the-lintel

Suscipe vota tui, judex districte, Sugeri;
receive the-prayers of-your judge strict Suger
Inter oves proprias fac me clementer haberi.
among sheep your-own make me mercifully to-be-held

De augmento superioris partis

28 · THE NEW CHOIR

In the same year Suger begins the new choir, the chamber of propitiation, and finishes it in three years and three months, crypt, vaults, and roof. He adapts the earlier epitaph, adds verses on the new part shining with new light, and starts the transepts.

Eodem vero anno, tam sancto et tam fausto opere exhilarati,
in-the-same but year so holy and so auspicious by-a-work gladdened
ad inchoandam in superiori parte divinæ propitiationis cameram,
for beginning in the-upper part of-divine propitiation the-chamber
in qua jugis et frequens redemptionis nostræ hostia absque
in which continual and frequent of-redemption our the-victim without
turbarum molestia secreto immolari debeat, acceleravimus. Et
of-crowds trouble in-secret to-be-sacrificed ought we-hastened and
quemadmodum in scripto consecrationis ejusdem superioris
as in the-writing of-the-consecration of-the-same upper
operis invenitur, Deo cooperante et nos et nostra prosperante,
work is-found God co-working and us and our-things prospering
cum fratribus et conservis nostris tam sanctum, tam gloriosum,
with brothers and fellow-servants our so holy so glorious
tam famosum opus ad bonum perduci finem misericorditer
so famous a-work to a-good to-be-brought end mercifully
obtinere meruimus; tanto Deo sanctisque Martyribus obnoxii,
to-obtain we-have-deserved so-much to-God and-the-holy Martyrs beholden
quanto nostris temporibus et laboribus tam diu differendo
as for-our times and labors so long by-deferring
agenda reservavit. Quis enim ego sum, aut quæ domus
the-things-to-be-done he-reserved who for I am or what the-house
patris mei, qui tam nobile, tam gratum ædificium vel
of-father my that so noble so pleasing a-building either

inchoasse præsumpserim, vel perfecisse speraverim, nisi, divinæ
to-have-begun I-should-presume or to-have-finished should-hope unless of-divine
misericordiæ et sanctorum auxilio Martyrum fretus, totum
mercy and of-the-holy on-the-help Martyrs relying wholly
me eidem operi et mente et corpore applicuissem? Verum
myself to-the-same work both in-mind and in-body I-had-applied but
qui dedit velle, dedit et posse: et quia bonum opus fuit
he-who gave to-will gave also to-be-able and because the-good work was
in voluntate, ex Dei adjutorio stetit in perfectione. Quod
in the-will from of-God help it-stood in completion which
quidem gloriosum opus quantum divina manus in talibus
indeed glorious work how-much the-divine hand in such-things
operosa protexerit, certum est etiam argumentum, quod in
laboring protected certain is also proof that in
tribus annis et tribus mensibus totum illud magnificum opus,
three years and three months whole that magnificent work
et in inferiore cripta et in superiore voltarum sublimitate,
both in the-lower crypt and in the-upper of-vaults loftiness
tot arcuum et columnarum distinctione variatum, etiam
of-so-many arches and of-columns by-distinction varied even
operturæ integrum supplementum admiserit. Unde etiam
of-the-roof whole completion admitted whence also
epitaphium prioris consecrationis, una sola sublata dictione,
the-epitaph of-the-former consecration one sole taken-away word
hujus etiam annalem terminum concludit, hoc modo:
of-this also the-yearly term concludes in-this manner

Annus millenus et centenus quadragenus
the-year thousandth and hundredth fortieth
Quartus erat Verbi, quando sacrata fuit.
fourth was of-the-Word when consecrated it-was

Quibus etiam epitaphii versibus hos adjungi delegimus:
to-which also of-the-epitaph verses these to-be-joined we-chose

Pars nova posterior dum jungitur anteriori,
the-part new rear while is-joined to-the-front
Aula micat medio clarificata suo.
the-hall gleams in-the-middle brightened its
Claret enim claris quod clare concopulatur,
shines for with-the-bright what brightly is-coupled
Et quod perfundit lux nova, claret opus
and what floods light new shines the-work
Nobile, quod constat auctum sub tempore nostro,
noble which stands enlarged in time our
Qui Sugerus eram, me duce dum fieret.
who Suger I-was me as-leader while it-was-done

Promptus igitur urgere successus meos, cum nihil mallem
ready therefore to-press successes my since nothing I-would-prefer
sub cœlo quam prosequi matris ecclesiæ honorem, quæ
under heaven than to-pursue of-mother church the-honor which
puerum materno affectu lactaverat, juvenem offendentem
as-a-boy with-maternal affection had-suckled as-a-youth offending
sustinuerat, ætate integrum potenter roboraverat, inter
had-borne in-age full mightily had-strengthened among
Ecclesiæ et regni principes solemniter locaverat, ad
of-the-Church and of-the-kingdom princes solemnly had-placed to
executionem operis nos ipsos contulimus, et cruces
the-carrying-out of-the-work us ourselves we-betook and the-transepts
collaterales ecclesiæ ad formam prioris et posterioris
collateral of-the-church to the-form of-the-former and of-the-later
operis conjungendi attolli et accumulari decertavimus.
work to-be-joined to-be-raised and to-be-heaped-up we-strove

De continuatione utriusque operis

29 · THE NAVE BETWEEN THE TWO WORKS

Persuaded to press on with the front tower, Suger turns instead to the nave, to join the new west and east works while keeping the walls Christ himself was said to have consecrated, so that the work will not be left unfinished between them. The Lord who provided seven hundred pounds for the windows will not fail the rest.

Quo facto, cum quorumdam persuasione ad turrim anterioris
which done when of-certain-men by-the-persuasion to the-tower of-the-front
partis prosecutionem studium nostrum contulissemus, jam in
part the-pursuit zeal our we-had-brought already in
altera parte peracta, divina, sicut credimus, voluntas ad hoc
the-other part completed the-divine as we-believe will to this
ipsum nos retraxit, ut mediam ecclesiæ testitudinem, quam
very us drew-back that the-middle of-the-church vault which
dicunt navim, innovare et utrique innovato operi conformare
they-call the-nave to-renew and to-each renewed work to-conform
et coæquare aggrederemur: reservata tamen quantacumque
and to-make-equal we-should-undertake reserved yet whatever
portione de parietibus antiquis, quibus summus pontifex
portion of the-walls old to-which the-supreme pontiff
Dominus Jesus Christus testimonio antiquorum scriptorum
the-Lord Jesus Christ by-the-testimony of-ancient writings
manum apposuerat, ut et antiquæ consecrationis reverentia,
a-hand had-applied that both of-the-ancient consecration the-reverence
et moderno operi juxta tenorem cœptum congrua
and to-the-modern work according-to the-tenor begun fitting
cohærentia servaretur. Cujus immutationis summa hæc fuit,
coherence might-be-kept of-which change the-sum this was
quod, si interpolate in navi ecclesiæ occasione turrium
that if interruptedly in the-nave of-the-church on-occasion of-the-towers

ageretur, aut temporibus nostris aut successorum nostrorum,
it-were-done either in-times our or of-successors our
tardius aut nunquam quocumque infortunio, sicut dispositum
later or never by-whatever misfortune as arranged
est, perficeretur. Nulla enim rerum importunitas rerum
it-is it-would-be-completed no for of-things trouble of-things
auctores urgeret, quin novi et antiqui operis copula
the-authors would-press but of-the-new and old work the-coupling
longam sustineret expectationem. Sed quia jam incœptum
a-long would-endure waiting but because already begun
est in alarum extensione, aut per nos aut per quos
it-is in of-the-aisles the-extension either through us or through whom
Dominus elegerit, ipso auxiliante, perficietur. Præteritorum
the-Lord shall-choose himself helping it-shall-be-completed of-past-things
enim recordatio futurorum est exhibitio. Qui enim inter
for the-remembering of-future-things is the-showing he-who for among
alia majora etiam admirandarum vitrearum operarios,
other greater-things also of-admirable windows workers
materiem saphirorum locupletem, promptissimos sumptus fere
material of-sapphires rich most-ready expenses almost
septingentarum librarum aut eo amplius administraverit,
of-seven-hundred pounds or than-that more has-supplied
peragendorum supplementis liberalissimus Dominus deficere
of-the-things-to-be-done in-the-completions the-most-liberal Lord to-fail
non sustinebit. Est etenim initium et finis.
not shall-allow he-is for the-beginning and the-end

De ornamentis ecclesiæ

30 · THE ORNAMENTS

Suger turns to the ornaments God has given the church in his time, confessing that Saint Denis obtained so much from God that Suger could have done a hundred times more for his church, had human frailty and the changes of times and manners not stood in the way.

Ornamentorum etiam ecclesiæ descriptionem, quibus manus
of-the-ornaments also of-the-church the-description with-which the-hand
divina administrationis nostræ tempore ecclesiam suam
divine of-administration our in-the-time church its
sponsam vocatam exornavit, ne veritatis æmula subrepat
bride called adorned lest of-truth the-rival creep-in
oblivio et exemplum auferat agendi, intitulare dignum
oblivion and the-example take-away of-doing to-entitle fitting
duximus. Dominum nostrum ter beatum Dionysium tam
we-have-thought lord our thrice blessed Denis so
largum, tam benignum et confitemur et prædicamus, ut
generous so kind both we-confess and proclaim that
tot et tanta credamus apud Deum effecisse, tot et
so-many and so-great we-believe with God to-have-effected so-many and
tanta impetrasse, ut centupliciter quam fecerimus ecclesiæ
so-great to-have-obtained that a-hundredfold than we-have-done for-church
illius profecisse potuissemus, si fragilitas humana, si varietas
his to-have-profited we-could-have if frailty human if the-variety
temporum, si mobilitas morum non restitisset. Quæ tamen
of-times if the-fickleness of-manners not had-resisted which yet
ei, Deo donante, reservavimus, hæc sunt.
for-him God granting we-have-reserved these are

De tabula aurea superiori

31 · THE GOLDEN ALTAR FRONTAL

For the front panel before Saint Denis's body Suger uses some forty-two marks of gold and a wealth of gems, and kings, princes, and bishops add their own rings. He regilds the saints' tomb and protects it, and records the verses on both.

In tabula illa, quæ ante sacratissimum corpus ejus assistit,
on panel that which before the-most-sacred body his stands
circiter quadraginta duas marcas auri posuisse nos æstimamus,
about forty two marks of-gold to-have-put us we-reckon
gemmarum preciosarum multiplicem copiam, jacinctorum,
of-gems precious manifold abundance of-jacinths
rubetorum, saphirorum, smaragdinum, topaziorum, necnon et
of-rubies of-sapphires of-emeralds of-topazes and-also even
opus discriminantium unionum quantam nos reperire nunquam
a-work of-varying pearls as-great-as we to-find never
præsumpsimus. Videres reges et principes, multosque viros
presumed you-might-see kings and princes and-many men
præcelsos imitatione nostra digitos manuum suarum exanulare,
very-exalted by-imitation of-us the-fingers of-hands their to-unring
et anulorum aurum et gemmas, margaritasque preciosas,
and of-the-rings the-gold and gems and-pearls precious
ob amorem sanctorum Martyrum, eidem tabulæ infigi
for love of-the-holy Martyrs in-the-same panel to-be-set
præcipere. Nec minus etiam archiepiscopi et episcopi, ipsos
to-order nor less also archbishops and bishops the-very
suæ desponsationis anulos ibidem sub tuto reponentes,
of-their betrothal rings there under safety laying-away
Deo et Sanctis ejus devotissime offerebant. Venditorum
to-God and Saints his most-devoutly offered of-sellers

etiam gemmariorum tanta de diversis regnis et nationibus
also jewelers so-great from various kingdoms and nations
ad nos turba confluebat, ut non plus emere quæreremus
to us a-crowd flowed-together that not more to-buy we-sought
quam illi vendere sub amministratione omnium festinarent.
than they to-sell under the-supply of-all hastened
Versus etiam ejusdem tabulæ hi sunt:
the-verses also of-the-same panel these are

Magne Dionysi, portas aperi Paradisi,
great Denis the-gates open of-Paradise
Suggeriumque piis protege præsidiis.
and-Suger with-pious protect defenses
Quique novam cameram per nos tibi constituisti,
and-you-who a-new chamber through us for-yourself have-set-up
In camera cœli nos facias recipi,
in the-chamber of-heaven us make to-be-received
Et pro præsenti, cœli mensa satiari.
and instead-of the-present of-heaven at-the-table to-be-sated
Significata magis significante placent.
the-things-signified more than-the-signifier please

Quia igitur sacratissima dominorum nostrorum corpora in volta
because therefore the-most-sacred of-lords our bodies in the-vault
superiore quam nobilius potuimus locari oportuit, quadam
upper as more-nobly we-could to-be-placed it-was-needful a-certain
de collateralibus tabulis sanctissimi eorum sarcofagi nescimus
of the-side panels of-the-most-holy their sarcophagus we-know-not
qua occasione erepta, quindecim marcas auri reponendo,
by-what occasion snatched-away fifteen marks of-gold by-replacing
ulteriorem frontem ejusdem et operturam superiorem undique
the-further front of-the-same and the-covering upper everywhere

inferius et superius deaurari quadraginta ferme unciis
below and above to-be-gilded with-forty about ounces
elaboravimus. Tabulis etiam cupreis fusilibus et deauratis, atque
we-labored with-panels also copper cast and gilded and
politis lapidibus impactis propter interiores lapideas voltas,
polished stones set-in because-of the-interior stone vaults
necnon et januis continuis ad arcendos populorum tumultus,
and-also even with-doors continuous for keeping-off of-peoples the-tumults
ita tamen ut venerabiles personæ, sicut decuerit, ipsa
so yet that venerable persons as is-fitting the-very
sanctorum corporum continentia vasa cum magna devotione
of-the-holy bodies containing vessels with great devotion
et lacrymarum profusione videre valeant, circumcingi fecimus.
and of-tears pouring to-see may-be-able to-be-surrounded we-caused
Eorumdem vero sanctorum tumulorum hi sunt versus:
of-the-same but holy tombs these are the-verses

Sanctorum cineres ubi cœlicus excubat ordo,
of-the-saints the-ashes where the-heavenly keeps-watch order
Plebs rogat et plorat, clerus canit in decachordo,
the-people asks and weeps the-clergy sings on the-ten-stringed
Spiritibus quorum referuntur vota piorum;
to-the-spirits of-whom are-brought the-prayers of-the-pious
Cumque placent illis, mala condonantur eorum.
and-when they-please them the-evils are-forgiven their
Corpora sanctorum sunt hic in pace sepulta,
the-bodies of-the-saints are here in peace buried
Qui post se rapiant nos orantes prece multa.
who after them may-snatch us praying with-prayer much

Hic locus egregium venientibus extat asylum;
this place an-excellent to-those-coming stands asylum
Hic fuga tuta reis, subjacet ultor eis.
here flight safe for-the-guilty lies-under the-avenger for-them

De Crucifixo aureo

32 · THE GREAT GOLD CROSS

Suger seeks gems for a great cross where Saint Denis long lay, and when he despairs of finding enough, monks from Cîteaux and Fontevrault bring him a hoard from King Henry's treasure, which he buys for four hundred pounds, far less than its worth. Goldsmiths from Lorraine work two years on the foot and column, and Pope Eugenius consecrates the cross at Easter and sets a relic of the True Cross in it.

Adorandam vivificam crucem, æternæ victoriæ Salvatoris nostri
the-to-be-adored life-giving cross of-eternal victory of-Savior our
vexillum salutiferum, de quo dicit Apostolus: Mihi autem
the-banner health-bringing of which says the-Apostle for-me moreover
absit gloriari nisi in cruce Domini mei Jesu Christi, quanto
far-be-it to-glory except in the-cross of-Lord my Jesus Christ by-how-much
gloriosum non tantum hominibus quantum etiam ipsis
glorious not so-much to-men as also to-the-very
angelis, filii hominis signum apparens in extremis in cœlo,
angels of-the-son of-man the-sign appearing at the-last-days in heaven
tanto gloriosius ornatum iri tota mentis devotione
by-so-much more-gloriously adorned to-be with-whole of-mind devotion
si possemus inniteremur, jugiter eam cum apostolo Andræa
if we-could we-would-strive continually it with the-apostle Andrew
salutantes: «Salve crux, quæ in corpore Christi dedicata es,
greeting hail cross who in the-body of-Christ dedicated are

et ex membris ejus tanquam margaritis ornata.» Verum
and with members his as-if with-pearls adorned but
quia sicut voluimus non potuimus, quam melius potuimus
because as we-wished not we-could as better we-could
voluimus, et perficere Deo donante elaboravimus. Hinc
we-wished and to-complete God granting we-labored hence
est quod preciosarum margaritarum gemmarumque copiam
it-is that of-precious pearls and-gems abundance
circumquaque per nos et per nuncios nostros quæritantes,
round-about through ourselves and through envoys our seeking
quam preciosiorem in auro et gemmis tanto ornatui
as more-precious in gold and gems for-so-great adornment
materiam invenire potuimus præparando, artifices peritiores
material to-find we-could by-preparing craftsmen more-skilled
de diversis partibus convocavimus, qui et diligenter et
from various parts we-called-together who both diligently and
morose fabricando crucem venerabilem ipsarum ammiratione
painstakingly by-fashioning the-cross venerable of-those by-the-wonder
gemmarum retro attollerent, et ante, videlicet in conspectu
gems at-the-back should-raise and in-front namely in the-sight
sacrificantis sacerdotis, adorandam Domini Salvatoris imaginem
of-the-sacrificing priest the-to-be-adored of-the-Lord Savior image
in recordatione passionis ejus tanquam et adhuc patientem
in remembrance of-passion his as-if also still suffering
in cruce ostentarent. Eodem sane loco beatus Dionysius
on the-cross should-display in-the-same truly place blessed Denis
quingentis annis et eo amplius, videlicet a tempore
for-five-hundred years and than-that more namely from the-time
Dagoberti usque ad nostra tempora, jacuerat. Unum jocosum,
of-Dagobert right to our times had-lain one amusing
sed miraculum nobile, quod super his ostendit nobis Dominus,
but miracle noble which about these showed us the-Lord

sub silentio præterire nolumus. Cum enim hærerem penuria
under silence to-pass-over we-do-not-wish when for I-was-stuck in-want
gemmarum, nec super hoc sufficienter mihi providere valerem
of-gems nor about this sufficiently for-me to-provide I-could
(raritas enim eas cariores facit), ecce duorum ordinum trium
rarity for them dearer makes behold of-two orders of-three
abbatiarum, videlicet Cistellensis et alterius abbatiæ ejusdem
abbeys namely of-Cîteaux and of-another abbey of-the-same
ordinis et Fontis Ebraldi, camerulam nostram ecclesiæ
order and of-Font- -evrault little-chamber our to-the-church
inhærentem intrantes, gemmarum copiam, videlicet jacinctorum,
adjoining entering of-gems abundance namely of-jacinths
saphirorum, rubetorum, smaragdinum, topaziorum, quantam
of-sapphires of-rubies of-emeralds of-topazes as-great-as
per decennium invenire minime sperabamus, emendam nobis
in ten-years to-find least we-hoped to-be-bought to-us
obtulerunt. Qui autem eas habebant, a comite Theobaldo
offered who moreover them held from count Theobald
sub eleemosyna obtinuerant, qui a thesauris avunculi sui
as alms had-obtained who from the-treasures of-uncle his
regis Henrici defuncti, quas in mirabilibus cuppis toto
king Henry dead which in wondrous cups for-the-whole
tempore vitæ suæ congesserat, per manum Stephani fratris
time of-life his he-had-heaped-up by the-hand of-Stephen brother
sui regis anglici receperat. Nos autem onere quærendarum
his king English had-received we moreover of-the-burden of-seeking
gemmarum exonerati, gratias Deo referentes, quater centum
gems unburdened thanks to-God rendering four-times hundred
libras, cum plus satis valerent, pro eis dedimus.
pounds though more by-far they-were-worth for them we-gave

Nec eas solum, verum etiam multam et sumptuosam aliarum
nor those only but also a-great and costly of-other
gemmarum et unionum copiam ad perfectionem tam sancti
gems and pearls abundance for the-completion of-so holy
ornamenti apposuimus. De auro vero obrizo, circiter quater
an-ornament we-applied of gold but refined about four-times
viginti marcas nos posuisse, si bene recordor, meminimus.
twenty marks us to-have-put if well I-recall we-remember
Pedem vero quatuor Evangelistis comptum, et columnam
the-foot but with-four Evangelists adorned and the-column
cui sancta insidet imago, subtilissimo opere smaltitam,
on-which the-holy sits image with-most-subtle work enameled
et Salvatoris historiam cum antiquæ legis allegoriarum
and of-the-Savior the-story with of-the-old law of-allegories
testimoniis designatis, et capitello superiore mortem Domini
testimonies marked and with-the-capital upper the-death of-the-Lord
cum suis imaginibus ammirante, per plures aurifabros
with its images admiring through several goldsmiths
Lotharingos, quandoque quinque, quandoque septem, vix
Lorrainers sometimes five sometimes seven scarcely
duobus annis perfectam habere potuimus. Tanti igitur
in-two years completed to-have we-could of-so-great therefore
et tam sancti instrumenti ornatum altius honorare et
and so holy instrument the-adornment more-highly to-honor and
exaltare misericordia Salvatoris nostri accelerans, domnum
to-exalt the-mercy of-Savior our hastening the-lord
papam Eugenium ad celebrandum sanctum Pascha, sicut mos
pope Eugenius for celebrating holy Easter as custom
est Romanis pontificibus in Galliis demorantibus, ob honorem
is for-Roman pontiffs in the-Gauls staying for the-honor
sancti apostolatus beati Dionysii, quod etiam de Calixto et
of-the-holy apostolate of-blessed Denis which also of Calixtus and

Innocentio illius prædecessoribus vidimus, ad nos adduxit: qui
Innocent his predecessors we-saw to us brought who
eundem crucifixum ea die solenniter consecravit. De titulo
the-same crucifix on-that day solemnly consecrated of the-title
veræ crucis Domini, quæ omnem et universalem excedit
of-the-true cross of-the-Lord which every and universal exceeds
margaritam, de capella sua portionem in eo assignavit; publice
pearl from chapel his a-portion in it he-assigned publicly
coram omnibus, quicumque inde aliquid raperent, quicumque
before all whoever thence anything should-snatch whoever
ausu temerario in eum manum inferrent, mucrone
with-daring rash upon it a-hand should-lay with-the-blade
beati Petri et gladio Spiritus sancti anathematizavit. Nos
of-blessed Peter and with-the-sword of-the-Spirit holy he-anathematized we
autem idem anathema inferius in cruce intitulari fecimus.
moreover the-same anathema below on the-cross to-be-inscribed we-caused

Suger encloses the main altar in gold on all four sides and sets inscriptions on it. Gazing at its gems lifts him in contemplation from the material to the immaterial, as if to a region between earth and heaven. He defends costly vessels for the Eucharist against critics, opens the holy altar before the bishops to show its relics, and raises a cross said to hold Queen Nanthild's necklace between the altar and Charles the Bald's tomb.

Principale igitur beati Dionysii altare, cui tantum anterior
the-principal therefore of-blessed Denis altar for-which only the-front
tabula a Karolo Calvo imperatore tertio speciosa et preciosa
panel from Charles the-Bald emperor the-third beautiful and precious
habebatur, quia eidem ad monasticum propositum oblati
was-had because to-it to the-monastic life offered
fuimus, ornatum iri acceleravimus, et utrique lateri aureas
we-were adorned to-be we-hastened and to-each side golden
apponendo tabulas, quartam etiam preciosiorem, ut totum
by-applying panels a-fourth also more-precious that whole
circumquaque altare appareret aureum, attollendo circumcingi
round-about the-altar might-appear golden by-raising to-be-surrounded
fecimus. Collateralibus quidem candelabra viginti marcarum auri
we-caused on-the-sides indeed the-candlesticks of-twenty marks of-gold
regis Ludovici Philippi, ne quacumque occasione raperentur,
of-king Louis of-Philip lest on-any occasion they-be-snatched
ibidem deponentes, jacinctos, smaragdines, quascumque gemmas
there placing jacinths emeralds whatever gems
preciosas apposuimus, et apponendas diligenter quæritare
precious we-applied and to-be-applied diligently to-seek
decrevimus. Quorum quidem versus hi sunt. In dextro latere:
we-decided of-which indeed the-verses these are on the-right side

Has aræ tabulas posuit Sugerius abbas,
these of-the-altar panels placed Suger the-abbot
Præter eam quam rex Karolus ante dedit.
besides that which king Charles before gave
Indignos venia fac dignos, Virgo Maria.
the-unworthy by-pardon make worthy Virgin Mary
Regis et abbatis mala mundet fons pietatis.
of-the-king and of-the-abbot the-evils may-cleanse the-fount of-piety

In sinistro latere:
on the-left side

Si quis præclaram spoliaverit impius aram,
if anyone the-glorious shall-despoil impious altar
Æque damnatus pereat Judæ sociatus.
equally damned may-be-perish to-Judas joined

Ulteriorem vero tabulam, miro opere sumptuque profuso,
the-further but panel with-wondrous work and-cost lavish
quoniam barbari et profusiores nostratibus erant artifices, tam
since foreign and more-lavish than-our-own were the-craftsmen as-much
forma quam materia mirabili, anaglifo opere, ut a quibusdam
in-form as in-material with-wondrous relief work that by some
dici possit «materiam superabat opus,» extulimus. Multa
to-be-said it-could the-material surpassed the-work we-raised many-things
de acquisitis, plura de quibus ecclesiæ ornamentis, quæ perdere
of acquired more of which of-the-church ornaments which to-lose
timebamus, videlicet pede decurtatum calicem aureum,
we-feared namely in-the-foot shortened a-chalice golden
et quædam alia ibidem configi fecimus. Et quoniam
and certain other-things there to-be-fixed we-caused and since

tacita visus cognitione materiei diversitas, auri, gemmarum,
by-silent of-sight knowledge of-the-material the-diversity of-gold of-gems
unionum, absque descriptione facile non cognoscitur, opus quod
of-pearls without description easily not is-known the-work which
solis patet litteratis, quod allegoriarum jocundarum jubare
to-only lies-open the-lettered which of-allegories delightful with-the-radiance
resplendet, apicibus litterarum mandari fecimus. Versus etiam
shines-back in-characters of-letters to-be-committed we-caused verses also
idipsum loquentes, ut enucleatius intelligantur, apposuimus:
that-very-thing speaking that more-clearly they-be-understood we-added

Voce sonans magna Christo plebs clamat: Osanna!
with-voice sounding great to-Christ the-people cries Hosanna
Quæ datur in cœna tulit omnes hostia vera.
who is-given at the-supper bore all the-victim true
Ferre crucem properat qui cunctos in cruce salvat.
to-bear the-cross hastens he-who all on the-cross saves
Hoc quod Abram pro prole litat, Christi caro signat.
this which Abraham for offspring sacrifices of-Christ the-flesh signifies
Melchisedech libat quod Abram super hoste triumphat.
Melchizedek pours-offering because Abraham over the-enemy triumphs
Botrum vecte ferunt qui Christum cum cruce quærunt.
the-cluster on-a-pole carry who Christ with the-cross seek

Hæc igitur tam nova quam antiqua ornamentorum
these therefore as-much new as ancient of-ornaments
discrimina ex ipsa matris ecclesiæ affectione crebro
distinctions from the-very of-mother church affection often
considerantes, dum illam ammirabilem sancti Eligii cum
considering while that admirable of-Saint Eligius with
minoribus crucem, dum incomparabile ornamentum, quod
the-smaller cross while the-incomparable ornament which

vulgo crista vocatur, aureæ aræ superponi contueremur,
commonly the-crest is-called on-the-golden altar to-be-set we-were-gazing
corde tenus suspirando: Omnis, inquam, lapis preciosus
from-the-heart deep sighing every I-say stone precious
operimentum tuum, sardius, topazius, jaspis, crisolitus, onix
the-covering your sardius topaz jasper chrysolite onyx
et berillus, saphirus, carbunculus et smaragdus. De quorum
and beryl sapphire carbuncle and emerald of whose
numero, præter solum carbunculum, nullum deesse, imo
number except only the-carbuncle none to-be-lacking nay
copiosissime abundare, gemmarum proprietatem cognoscentibus
most-abundantly to-abound of-gems the-property to-those-knowing
cum summa ammiratione claret. Unde, cum ex dilectione
with highest wonder is-clear whence when from love
decoris domus Dei aliquando multicolor gemmarum
of-the-beauty of-the-house of-God sometimes the-many-colored of-gems
speciositas ab exintrinsecis me curis devocaret, sanctarum
loveliness from external me cares called-away of-holy
etiam diversitatem virtutum, de materialibus ad immaterialia
also the-diversity virtues from material-things to immaterial
transferendo, honesta meditatio insistere persuaderet, videor
by-transferring worthy meditation to-persist persuaded I-seem
videre me quasi sub aliqua extranea orbis terrarum plaga,
to-see myself as-if in some strange of-the-circle of-lands region
quæ nec tota sit in terrarum fæce, nec tota in cœli
which neither wholly be in of-the-earth dregs nor wholly in of-heaven
puritate demorari, ab hac etiam inferiori ad illam superiorem
purity to-dwell from this also lower to that higher
anagogico more Deo donante posse transferri. Conferre
in-anagogical manner God granting to-be-able to-be-transferred to-confer
consuevi cum Hierosolymitanis, et gratantissime addiscere,
I-have-been-wont with men-of-Jerusalem and most-gladly to-learn

quibus Constantinopolitanæ patuerant gazæ et Sanctæ Sophiæ
to-whom the-Constantinopolitan had-lain-open treasures and of-Saint Sophia
ornamenta, utrum ad comparationem illorum hæc aliquid
the-ornaments whether in comparison of-those these anything
valere deberent. Qui cum hæc majora faterentur, visum
to-be-worth ought who when these greater confessed seen
est nobis quod timore Francorum ammiranda quæ antea
it-was to-us that from-fear of-the-Franks the-admirable-things which before
audieramus caute reposita essent; ne stultorum aliquorum
we-had-heard cautiously stored-away had-been lest of-fools some
impetuosa rapacitate, Græcorum et Latinorum ascita
by-the-impetuous greed of-Greeks and of-Latins the-adopted
familiaritas in seditionem et bellorum scandala subito
familiarity into sedition and of-wars scandals suddenly
moveretur. Astucia enim præcipue Græcorum est. Unde fieri
be-moved cunning for chiefly of-the-Greeks is whence to-happen
potuit ut majora sint quæ hic sub tuto reposita apparent,
it-could that greater are which here under safety stored appear
quam ea quæ non tuto propter scandala ibidem relicta
than those which not safely because-of scandals there left
apparuerunt. Ammiranda siquidem et fere incredibilia a viris
appeared admirable-things indeed and almost incredible from men
veridicis quampluribus, et ab episcopo Laudunensi Hugone,
truthful very-many and from the-bishop of-Laon Hugh
in celebratione missæ, de Sanctæ Sophiæ ornamentorum
in the-celebration of-mass about of-Saint Sophia of-the-ornaments
prærogativa, necnon et aliarum ecclesiarum audieramus. Quæ
the-prerogative and-also even of-other churches we-had-heard which
si ita sunt, imo quia eorum testimonio ita esse credimus,
if so they-are nay since their by-testimony so to-be we-believe
tam inæstimabilia quam incomparabilia multorum judicio
as-much inestimable as incomparable of-many by-the-judgment

exponerentur. Abundet unusquisque in suo sensu, mihi
should-be-displayed let-abound each-one in his-own sense to-me
fateor hoc potissimum placuisse, ut quæcumque cariora,
I-confess this chiefly to-have-pleased that whatever dearer
quæcumque carissima, sacrosantæ Eucharistiæ amministrationi
whatever dearest of-the-most-holy Eucharist to-the-ministration
super omnia deservire debeant. Si libatoria aurea, si
above all to-serve ought if libation-vessels golden if
fialæ aureæ, et si mortariola aurea ad collectam sanguinis
bowls golden and if little-mortars golden for the-gathering of-the-blood
hircorum aut vitulorum aut vaccæ ruffæ, ore Dei aut
of-goats or of-calves or of-a-heifer red by-the-mouth of-God or
prophetæ jussu, deserviebant; quanto magis ad susceptionem
of-the-prophet by-the-order served how-much more for the-receiving
sanguinis Jesu Christi vasa aurea, lapides preciosi, quæque
of-the-blood of-Jesus Christ vessels golden stones precious whatever
inter omnes creaturas carissima, continuo famulatu, plena
among all creatures dearest in-continual service with-full
devotione exponi debent. Certe nec nos nec nostra his
devotion to-be-displayed ought surely neither we nor ours to-these
deservire sufficimus. Si de sanctorum Cherubim et Seraphim
to-serve suffice if from of-the-holy Cherubim and Seraphim
substantia nova creatione nostra mutaretur, insufficientem
substance by-new creation ours were-changed an-insufficient
tamen et indignum tantæ et tam ineffabili hostiæ exhiberet
yet and unworthy to-so-great and so ineffable victim it-would-show
famulatum. Tantam tamen propiciationem pro peccatis nostris
service so-great yet propitiation for sins our
habemus. Opponunt etiam qui derogant, debere sufficere
we-have object also those-who disparage to-be-bound to-suffice
huic amministrationi mentem sanctam, animum purum,
for-this ministration a-mind holy a-spirit pure

intentionem fidelem. Et nos quidem hæc interesse præcipue,
an-intention faithful and we indeed these to-matter chiefly
proprie, specialiter approbamus. In exterioribus etiam sacrorum
properly especially approve in the-outward also of-sacred
vasorum ornamentis, nulli omnino æque ut sancti sacrificii
vessels ornaments to-nothing wholly equally as of-the-holy sacrifice
servitio, in omni puritate interiori, in omni nobilitate exteriori,
to-the-service in all purity inward in all nobility outward
debere famulari profitemur. In omnibus enim universaliter
to-be-bound to-serve we-profess in all-things for universally
decentissime nos oportet deservire Redemptori nostro, qui
most-fittingly us it-behooves to-serve Redeemer our who
in omnibus universaliter absque exceptione aliqua nobis
in all-things universally without exception any for-us
providere non recusavit; qui naturæ suæ nostram sub uno
to-provide not refused who to-nature his ours under one
et ammirabili individuo univit, qui nos in parte dexteræ suæ
and admirable individual united who us on the-side of-the-right his
locans, regnum suum veraciter possidere promisit, Dominus
placing kingdom his truly to-possess promised the-Lord
noster qui vivit et regnat per omnia secula seculorum.
our who lives and reigns through all the-ages of-ages
Altare etiam quod testimonio antiquorum sanctum nominatur
the-altar also which by-the-testimony of-the-ancients holy is-named
altare (sic enim consuevit dicere gloriosus rex Ludovicus
altar so for was-wont to-say the-glorious king Louis
Philippi ab infantia sua, dum hic nutriretur, se a
of-Philip from infancy his while here he-was-raised himself from
senioribus loci didicisse), quia cum vetustate, tum defectu
the-elders of-the-place to-have-learned because both by-age and by-lack
fidelis custodiæ, tum etiam propter frequentem motionem quæ
of-faithful keeping and also because-of the-frequent moving which

fit nobilissimi apparatus occasione, qui diversi diversis,
happens of-the-most-noble array on-occasion which various on-various
excellentes excellentioribus festis apponuntur, minus honeste
excellent on-more-excellent feasts are-set less handsomely
comptum apparebat, ob reverentiam sanctarum reliquiarum
adorned it-appeared for reverence of-the-holy relics
renovare excepimus. Sacratus siquidem lapis porphireticus
to-renew we-undertook the-consecrated indeed stone of-porphyry
qui superest aræ, non minus qualitativo colore quam
which is-on-top of-the-altar not less in-quality of-color than
quantitativa magnitudine satis aptus, concavo ligno auro
in-quantity of-size quite fit with-a-hollow wood with-gold
operto, ipsa vetustate interpolata admodum disrupto,
covered by-the-very age interrupted very broken
cingebatur. Cujus concavi faceta compositione in anteriori
was-girded of-whose hollow by-the-elegant composition in the-front
parte locatum brachium sancti Jacobi apostoli, idipsum
part placed the-arm of-Saint James the-apostle that-very-thing
litteris interius attestantibus, pervia candidissimi cristalli
by-letters within attesting through-the-open of-the-most-white crystal
apertione credebatur. Nec minus in dextera parte uniformiter
opening was-believed nor less in the-right part uniformly
litterarum apparitione, brachium prothomartyris Stephani
of-letters by-the-appearance the-arm of-the-protomartyr Stephen
recondi, in sinistra vero æque sancti Vincentii levitæ et
to-be-stored in the-left but equally of-Saint Vincent levite and
martyris brachium titulus interius perorabat. Nos igitur
martyr the-arm the-title within declared we therefore
tantarum et tam sanctarum reliquiarum protectione muniri
of-so-great and so holy relics by-the-protection to-be-fortified
appetentes, eas videre, eas deosculari, si Deo displicere non
desiring them to-see them to-kiss if God to-displease not

timerem, gratantissime multo temporum processu rapiebar.
I-feared most-gladly by-long of-times course I-was-carried-away
Assumens igitur ex devotione audaciam, et antiquitati
taking therefore from devotion daring and for-antiquity
honorem veritatis conservans, modum et diem detegendi ipsas
the-honor of-truth preserving the-manner and the-day of-uncovering the-very
sanctas reliquias elegimus, sacratissima videlicet die martyris
holy relics we-chose the-most-sacred namely day of-the-martyr
beatorum martyrum dominorum nostrorum, octavo scilicet
of-the-blessed martyrs lords our eighth namely
idus octobris. Aderant siquidem diversarum provinciarum
ides of-October were-present indeed of-various provinces
archiepiscopi et episcopi, qui gratantissime, quasi ex debito
archbishops and bishops who most-gladly as-if from the-debt
apostolatus Galliarum, ad tantæ solemnitatis celebrationem
of-the-apostolate of-the-Gauls to of-so-great solemnity the-celebration
pia vota deferre accesserant: archiepiscopi scilicet Lugdunensis,
pious vows to-bring had-come archbishops namely of-Lyons
Remensis, Turonensis et Rothomagensis; episcopi vero
of-Reims of-Tours and of-Rouen bishops but
Suessionensis, Belvacensis, Silvanectensis, Meldensis, Redonensis,
of-Soissons of-Beauvais of-Senlis of-Meaux of-Rennes
Aletensis et Venetensis; abbatum etiam et monachorum,
of-Alet and of-Vannes of-abbots also and of-monks
sive clericorum, atque optimatum conventus; sed et populi
or of-clerics and of-magnates a-gathering but also of-people
promiscui sexus turba innumerabilis. Decantata igitur, eadem
of-mixed sex a-crowd countless sung therefore on-the-same
solemnitatis die, Tertia, cum jam in conspectu omnium
of-solemnity day Terce when now in the-sight of-all
assistentium celeberrima tantæ diei ordinaretur processio,
standing-by the-most-solemn of-so-great day was-being-ordered procession

tanta certæ rei veritatis fiducia, solo patrum
with-so-great of-certain thing truth confidence by-the-sole of-the-fathers
testimonio et titulo referti, ac si jam omnia vidissemus,
testimony and title filled as if already all-things we-had-seen
archiepiscopos et episcopos, abbates et autenticas assistentes
the-archbishops and bishops abbots and authentic standing-by
personas ad efferendam aram ascivimus; quod eam aperire,
persons for carrying-out the-altar we-summoned that it to-open
quod sanctissimarum reliquiarum thesaurum videre vellemus,
that of-the-most-holy relics the-treasure to-see we-wished
exposuimus. Dicebant ergo quidam ex familiaribus nostris,
we-explained said therefore some of intimates our
consulte quidem, quod et personæ et ecclesiæ famæ tutius
advisedly indeed that both of-the-person and of-the-church for-the-fame safer
fuisset, si secreto utrum ita esset ut litteræ loquebantur
it-would-have-been if in-secret whether so it-was as the-letters spoke
videretur. Quibus ilico, fidei fervore excitus, responsum
it-were-seen to-whom at-once of-faith by-the-fervor roused answer
reddidi, magis mihi placere, si ita est ut legitur, ab omnibus
I-gave more me to-please if so it-is as it-is-read by all
contuentibus scire, quam, si secreto inspexissem, omnes non
looking-on to-know than if in-secret I-had-looked all not
contuentes dubitare. Deferentes igitur in medium præfatam
looking-on to-doubt carrying therefore into the-middle the-aforesaid
aram, ascitis aurifabris qui locellos illos, quibus sanctissima
altar summoned goldsmiths who little-boxes those in-which the-most-holy
brachia continebantur, ubi supersedebant cristallini lapides,
arms were-contained where sat-above crystal stones
titulos eorum offerentes, diligenter aperirent, sicut sperabamus,
the-titles their presenting diligently should-open as we-hoped
omnia plenarie, Deo annuente, videntibus cunctis, invenimus.
all-things fully God assenting seeing all we-found

Causam etiam repositionis reliquiarum in eisdem locellis
the-cause also of-the-storing of-the-relics in the-same little-boxes
invenimus, videlicet quod Karolus imperator tertius, qui
we-found namely that Charles emperor the-third who
eidem altari subjacet gloriose sepultus, ad tuitionem
under-the-same altar lies gloriously buried for the-protection
animæ et corporis, de theca imperiali eas sibi assumi et
of-soul and of-body from the-case imperial them for-himself to-be-taken and
penes se reponi imperiali edicto assignaverit. Argumentum
beside himself to-be-stored by-imperial edict assigned the-proof
etiam, anuli sui depressione signatum, quod valde omnibus
also of-ring his by-the-impression sealed which greatly all
placuit, ibidem reperimus. Nec enim sine causa ante
pleased there we-found nor for without cause before
sanctum illud altare septem lampades in vasis argenteis,
holy that altar seven lamps in vessels silver
quæ nos quidem dissoluta refecimus, incessanter tam
which we indeed broken have-remade unceasingly as-much
die quam nocte in sempiternum ardere constituisset,
by-day as by-night for ever to-burn would-he-have-established
nisi maximam spem et corporis et animæ in sanctarum
unless the-greatest hope both of-body and of-soul in of-the-holy
reliquiarum repositione credidisset. Sumptibus enim illarum
relics the-storing he-had-believed for-the-costs for of-those
et anniversarii sui, et suorum refectioni, possessionem
and of-anniversary his and of-his-own for-the-refection possession
suam quæ dicitur Ruoilum, cum appendiciis, sigillis aureis
his which is-called Rueil with appendages by-seals golden
confirmavit. Hinc est etiam quod in solemnitatibus diversis
he-confirmed hence it-is also that on solemnities various
fere sexaginta, magni et honesti cerei sex, quales alibi in
almost sixty great and handsome candles six such-as elsewhere in

ecclesia aut raro aut nunquam apponuntur, circa idem altare
the-church either rarely or never are-set around the-same altar
accenduntur. Hinc est etiam quod quotiens altare beati
are-lit hence it-is also that as-often-as the-altar of-blessed
Dionysii, totiens et idem altare nobili apparatu adornatur.
Denis so-often also the-same altar with-noble array is-adorned
Crucem etiam mirabilem quantitatis suæ, quæ superposita est
the-cross also wondrous of-size its which set-over is
inter altare et tumulum ejusdem Karoli, in cujus medio
between the-altar and the-tomb of-the-same Charles in whose middle
fama retinuit confixum nobilissimum monile Nantildis reginæ,
report has-held fixed the-most-noble necklace of-Nanthild queen
uxoris Dagoberti regis ecclesiæ fundatoris, aliud vero in
wife of-Dagobert king of-the-church founder the-other but on
frontem sancti Dionysii (tamen huic minori nullum æquipollere
the-front of-Saint Denis yet to-this smaller none to-be-equal
peritissimi artifices testantur), erigi fecimus, maxime
the-most-skilled craftsmen testify to-be-raised we-caused chiefly
ob reverentiam sanctissimæ boiæ ferreæ, quæ, in carcere
for reverence of-the-most-holy collar iron which in the-prison
Glaucini sacratissimo collo beati Dionysii innexa, cultum et
of-Glaucinus to-the-most-sacred neck of-blessed Denis bound worship and
venerationem tam a nobis quam ab omnibus promeruit.
veneration as-much from us as from all has-earned
Ea etiam parte, abbas venerabilis Corbeiæ bonæ memoriæ
on-that also side the-abbot venerable of-Corbie of-good memory
Robertus, hujus sanctæ ecclesiæ professus et ab infantia
Robert of-this holy church professed and from infancy
nutritus, quem eidem Corbeiensi monasterio abbatem
raised whom over-the-same Corbie monastery as-abbot
præesse Deo donante exhibuimus, tabulam argenteam optime
to-preside God granting we-presented a-panel silver excellently

deauratam, pro recognitione professionis suæ et multorum
gilded for the-acknowledgment of-profession his and of-many
ecclesiæ beneficiorum gratiarum actione, fieri fecit.
of-the-church benefits of-thanks in-the-giving to-be-made caused

34 · THE CHOIR, WINDOWS, AND VESSELS

Suger rebuilds the choir stalls, restores the ivory pulpit and Dagobert's throne, and has the new windows painted, recording the verses on their allegories of Moses and Christ. He appoints masters to care for the glass and gold, and lists the precious vessels he has acquired, among them Eleanor's crystal vase and a porphyry vase turned into an eagle, before confessing that his late penance needs the prayers of the whole Church.

Chorum etiam fratrum, quo valde gravabantur qui assidue
the-choir also of-the-brothers by-which greatly were-burdened who constantly
ecclesiæ insistebant servitio, frigiditate marmoris et cupri
of-the-church applied-to the-service by-the-coldness of-marble and of-copper
aliquantisper infirmum, in hanc quæ nunc apparet formam,
somewhat weak into this which now appears form
laboribus eorum compatientes, mutavimus, et propter conventus
with-labors their sympathizing we-changed and because-of of-the-convent
augmentationem, Deo auxiliante, augmentare elaboravimus.
the-increase God helping to-enlarge we-labored
Pulpitum etiam antiquum, quod ammirabile tabularum
the-pulpit also ancient which admirable of-panels
eburnearum subtilissima nostrisque temporibus inreparabili
ivory by-the-most-subtle and-in-our times irreparable
sculptura, et antiquarum historiarum descriptione humanam
carving and of-ancient stories depiction human
æstimationem excedebat, recollectis tabulis quæ in arcarum
estimation exceeded gathered-again the-panels which in of-chests

et sub arcarum repositione diutius fœdabantur, refici,
and under of-chests the-storing long were-befouled to-be-remade
dextraque parte restitutis animalibus cupreis, ne tanta
and-on-the-right side restored animals copper lest so-great
tamque mirabilis deperiret materia, ad proferendam superius
and-so wondrous should-perish material for bringing-forth above
sancti Evangelii lectionem, erigi fecimus. In novitate
of-the-holy Gospel the-reading to-be-raised we-caused in the-newness
siquidem sessionis nostræ, impedimentum quoddam, quo
indeed of-session our a-hindrance certain by-which
medium ecclesiæ muro tenebroso secabatur, ne speciositas
the-middle of-the-church by-a-wall dark was-cut lest the-loveliness
ecclesiæ magnitudinis talibus fuscaretur repagulis, de medio
of-the-church of-greatness by-such be-darkened barriers from the-midst
sustolli feceramus.
to-be-removed we-had-caused
Nec minus nobilem gloriosi regis Dagoberti cathedram,
nor less the-noble of-the-glorious king Dagobert chair
in qua, ut perhibere solet antiquitas, reges Francorum,
in which as to-report is-wont antiquity the-kings of-the-Franks
suscepto regni imperio, ad suscipienda optimatum
received of-the-kingdom the-rule for receiving of-magnates
suorum hominia primum sedere consueverant, tum pro
their the-homages first to-sit had-been-wont both for
tanti excellentia officii, tum etiam pro operis ipsius
of-so-great the-excellence office and also for of-the-work itself
precio, antiquatam et disruptam refici fecimus.
the-value grown-old and broken to-be-remade we-caused
Aquilam vero in medio chori ammirantium tactu
the-eagle but in the-middle of-the-choir of-the-admiring by-the-touch
frequenti dedeauratam reaurari fecimus.
frequent ungilded to-be-regilded we-caused

Vitrearum etiam novarum præclaram varietatem, ab ea
of-windows also new the-splendid variety from that
prima quæ incipit a Stirps Jesse in capite ecclesiæ, usque
first which begins with the-Stem of-Jesse in the-head of-the-church right
ad eam quæ superest principali portæ in introitu ecclesiæ,
to that which is-above the-principal door at the-entrance of-the-church
tam superius quam inferius, magistrorum multorum de
as-much above as below of-masters many from
diversis nationibus manu exquisita, depingi fecimus. Una
various nations by-hand exquisite to-be-painted we-caused one
quarum de materialibus ad immaterialia excitans, Paulum
of-which from material-things to immaterial rousing Paul
apostolum molam vertere, prophetas saccos ad molam
the-apostle a-mill to-turn the-prophets sacks to the-mill
apportare repræsentat. Sunt itaque ejus materiæ versus isti:
to-carry represents are and-so of-its subject the-verses these

Tollis agendo molam de furfure, Paule, farinam.
you-take by-working the-mill from the-bran Paul the-flour
Mosaicæ legis intima nota facis.
of-the-Mosaic law the-inmost-things known you-make
Fit de tot granis verus sine furfure panis,
is-made from so-many grains true without bran bread
Perpetuusque cibus noster et angelicus.
and-perpetual food our and angelic

Item in eadem vitrea, ubi aufertur velamen de facie
likewise in the-same window where is-taken-away the-veil from the-face
Moysi:
of-Moses

Quod Moyses velat, Christi doctrina revelat.
what Moses veils of-Christ the-teaching unveils
Denudant legem qui spoliant Moysen.
they-bare the-law who despoil Moses

In eadem vitrea, super arcam fœderis:
in the-same window over the-ark of-the-covenant

Fœderis ex arca Christi cruce sistitur ara;
of-the-covenant from the-ark of-Christ by-the-cross is-set the-altar
Fœdere majori vult ibi vita mori.
by-a-covenant greater wishes there life to-die

Item in eadem, ubi solvunt librum leo et agnus:
likewise in the-same where unseal the-book the-lion and the-lamb

Qui Deus est magnus, librum Leo solvit et Agnus.
who God is great the-book Lion unseals and Lamb
Agnus sive Leo fit caro juncta Deo.
Lamb or Lion becomes flesh joined to-God

In alia vitrea, ubi filia Pharaonis invenit Moysen in
in another window where the-daughter of-Pharaoh finds Moses in
fiscella:
the-basket

Est in fiscella Moyses puer ille, puella
is in the-basket Moses the-boy that girl
Regia, mente pia quem fovet Ecclesia.
royal with-mind pious whom cherishes the-Church

In eadem vitrea, ubi Moysi Dominus apparuit in igne
in the-same window where to-Moses the-Lord appeared in the-fire
rubi:
of-the-bush

Sicut conspicitur rubus hic ardere, nec ardet,
as is-seen the-bush here to-burn nor burns
Sic divo plenus hoc ardet ab igne, nec ardet.
so with-the-divine filled this burns with fire nor burns

Item in eadem vitrea, ubi Pharao cum equitatu suo in
likewise in the-same window where Pharaoh with cavalry his in
mare demergitur:
the-sea is-drowned

Quod baptisma bonis, hoc militiæ Pharaonis,
what baptism for-the-good this for-the-army of-Pharaoh
Forma facit similis, causaque dissimilis.
the-form makes like and-the-cause unlike

Item in eadem, ubi Moyses exaltat serpentem æneum:
likewise in the-same where Moses raises the-serpent bronze

Sicut serpentes serpens necat æneus omnes,
as the-serpents the-serpent kills bronze all
Sic exaltatus hostes necat in cruce Christus.
so raised-up the-enemies kills on the-cross Christ

In eadem vitrea, ubi Moyses accipit legem in monte:
in the-same window where Moses receives the-law on the-mountain

Lege data Moysi, juvat illam gratia Christi.
the-law given to-Moses helps it the-grace of-Christ
Gratia vivificat, littera mortificat.
grace gives-life the-letter kills

Unde, quia magni constant mirifico opere sumptuque profuso
whence because greatly they-cost by-wondrous work and-cost lavish
vitri vestiti, et saphirorum materia, tuitioni et refectioni
of-glass clothed and of-sapphires material for-the-protection and repair
earum ministerialem magistrum, sicut etiam ornamentis aureis
their an-official master as also for-the-ornaments golden
et argenteis peritum aurifabrum constituimus, qui et præbendas
and silver a-skilled goldsmith we-have-appointed who both prebends
suas et quod eis super hoc visum est, videlicet ab altari
their and what to-them about this seen it-was namely from the-altar
nummos et a communi fratrum horreo annonam suscipiant,
coins and from the-common of-the-brothers granary grain should-receive
et ab eorum providentia numquam se absentent.
and from their care never themselves absent

Septem quoque candelabra, quoniam ea quæ Karolus
seven also candlesticks since those which Charles
imperator beato Dionysio contulerat sua vetustate dissipata
the-emperor to-blessed Denis had-conferred by-their age broken
apparebant, opere smaltito et optime deaurato componi
appeared with-work enameled and excellently gilded to-be-made
fecimus.
we-caused

Vasa etiam, tam de auro quam preciosis lapidibus, ad
vessels also as-much of gold as of-precious stones for
Dominicæ mensæ servicium, præter illa quæ reges Francorum
of-the-Lord's table the-service besides those which the-kings of-the-Franks
et devoti ecclesiæ eidem officio deputataverunt, beato
and the-devout of-the-church to-the-same office have-assigned for-blessed
Dionysio debita devotione adquisivimus: magnum videlicet
Denis with-due devotion we-acquired a-great namely
calicem aureum septies viginti unciarum auri, gemmis
chalice golden of-seven-times twenty ounces of-gold with-gems
preciosis, scilicet jacinthis et topaziis ornatum, pro alio
precious namely jacinths and topazes adorned for another
qui tempore antecessoris nostri vadimonio perierat, restitui
which in-the-time of-predecessor our in-pledge had-been-lost to-be-restored
elaboravimus.
we-labored

Aliud etiam vas preciosissimum de lapide prasio, ad formam
another also vessel most-precious of stone prase to the-form
navis exsculptum, quod rex Ludovicus Philippi per decennium
of-a-ship carved which king Louis of-Philip for ten-years
fere vadimonio amiserat, cum nobis ad videndum oblatum
almost in-pledge had-lost when to-us for seeing offered
fuisset, ejusdem regis concessione sexaginta marcis argenti
it-had-been of-the-same king by-the-grant for-sixty marks of-silver

comparatum, cum quibusdam floribus coronæ imperatricis
bought with certain flowers of-the-crown of-the-empress
beato Dionysio obtulimus. Quod videlicet vas, tam pro
to-blessed Denis we-offered which namely vessel as-much for
preciosi lapidis qualitate quam integra sui quantitate
of-the-precious stone the-quality as whole its quantity
mirificum, inclusorio sancti Eligii opere constat ornatum,
wondrous by-the-enclosing of-Saint Eligius work stands adorned
quod omnium aurificum judicio preciosissimum æstimatur.
which of-all goldsmiths by-the-judgment most-precious is-reckoned
Vas quoque aliud, quod instar justæ berilli aut cristalli
a-vessel also another which like a-jug beryl or crystal
videtur, cum in primo itinere Aquitaniæ regina noviter
appears when on the-first journey of-Aquitaine the-queen newly
desponsata domino regi Ludovico dedisset, pro magno
betrothed to-the-lord king Louis had-given as a-great
amoris munere nobis rex, nos vero sanctis Martyribus
of-love gift to-us the-king we but to-the-holy Martyrs
dominis nostris ad libandum divinæ mensæ affectuosissime
lords our for pouring-offerings of-the-divine table most-affectionately
contulimus. Cujus donationis seriem in eodem vase, gemmis
conferred of-which gift the-sequence on the-same vessel with-gems
auroque ornato, versiculis quibusdam intitulavimus:
and-gold adorned with-little-verses certain we-have-inscribed

Hoc vas sponsa dedit Aanor regi Ludovico,
this vessel as-bride gave Eleanor to-king Louis
Mitadolus avo, mihi rex, sanctisque Sugerus.
Mitadolus to-the-grandfather to-me the-king and-to-the-saints Suger

Comparavimus etiam præfati altaris officiis calicem
we-bought also of-the-aforesaid altar for-the-offices a-chalice
preciosum, de uno et continuo sardonice, quod est de
precious of one and continuous sardonyx which is of
sardio et onice, quo uno usque adeo sardii rubor a
sard and onyx in-which one so far of-the-sard the-red from
nigredine onichini proprietatem variando discriminat, ut
the-blackness of-the-onyx the-property by-varying differs that
altera in alteram proprietatem usurpare inniti æstimetur.
the-one into the-other property to-encroach to-strive be-thought
Vas quoque aliud, huic ipsi materia, non forma persimile,
a-vessel also another to-this very in-material not in-form very-like
ad instar amphoræ adjunximus, cujus versiculi sunt isti:
in the-likeness of-an-amphora we-added whose little-verses are these

Dum libare Deo gemmis debemus et auro,
since to-pour-offerings to-God with-gems we-ought and gold
Hoc ego Sugerius offero vas Domino.
this I Suger offer vessel to-the-Lord

Lagenam quoque præclaram, quam nobis comes Blesensis
a-flagon also splendid which to-us the-count of-Blois
Theobaldus in eodem vase destinavit, in quo ei rex
Theobald in the-same vessel sent in which to-him the-king
Siciliæ illud transmiserat, et aliis in eodem officio
of-Sicily it had-sent-over also with-others in the-same office
gratanter apposuimus.
gladly we-placed
Vascula etiam cristallina, quæ in capella nostra quotidiano
little-vessels also crystal which in chapel our for-daily
servitio altaris assignaveramus, ibidem reposuimus.
service of-the-altar we-had-assigned there we-stored

Nec minus porphyriticum vas sculptoris et politoris manu
nor less a-porphyry vessel of-sculptor and polisher by-the-hand
ammirabile factum, cum per multos annos in scrinio
admirable made when for many years in a-chest
vacasset, de amphora in aquilæ formam transferendo,
it-had-lain-idle from an-amphora into of-an-eagle the-form by-transferring
auri argentique materia, altaris servicio adaptavimus,
of-gold and-silver with-the-material of-the-altar for-the-service we-adapted
et versus hujusmodi eidem vasi inscribi fecimus:
and verses of-this-kind on-the-same vessel to-be-inscribed we-caused

Includi gemmis lapis iste meretur et auro.
to-be-enclosed with-gems stone this deserves and with-gold
Marmor erat, sed in his marmore carior est.
marble it-was but in these than-marble dearer it-is

Pro quibus omnibus Deo omnipotenti et sanctis Martyribus
for which all to-God almighty and the-holy Martyrs
grates referimus, quod sanctissimo altari, cui sub
thanks we-render that to-the-most-holy altar to-which under
præceptione sanctæ regulæ nos a puero offerri voluit,
the-precept of-the-holy rule us from boyhood to-be-offered he-willed
unde ei honorifice serviremus, copiose largiri non renuit.
whence to-him honorably we-might-serve abundantly to-bestow not he-refused
Quia ergo divina beneficia non occultare, sed prædicare
because therefore the-divine benefits not to-hide but to-proclaim
utile et honestum cognovimus, palliorum quod divina manus
useful and honorable we-have-known of-palls which the-divine hand
tempore amministrationis nostræ huic sanctæ ecclesiæ contulit
in-the-time of-administration our on-this holy church conferred
augmentum designavimus; implorantes ut in anniversario,
the-increase we-have-marked imploring that on the-anniversary

ad propiciandam divinæ majestatis excellentiam et fratrum
for propitiating of-divine majesty the-excellence and of-the-brothers
devotionem ampliandam, et successorum abbatum exemplum,
the-devotion enlarging and of-the-succeeding abbots as-an-example
exponantur. Nec enim pro tot et tantis commissis,
they-be-displayed nor for in-return-for so-many and so-great things-committed
vel enormitate scelerum meorum, tam sera quam rara
or the-enormity of-crimes my as-much late as rare
satisfacere pœnitentia sufficit, nisi universalis Ecclesiæ
to-make-amends penance suffices unless of-the-universal Church
suffragiis innitamur.
on-the-supports we-lean

SUGER OF SAINT-DENIS

De Consecratione

On the Consecration of Saint-Denis

Divine reason harmonizes things that seem opposed, and those who share in it set the spiritual above the bodily. Since God's mercy alone saves, Suger offers an account of the consecration of the church and the translation of the saints, so that thanks may be rendered to God and the saints' intercession won.

Divinorum humanorumque disparitatem unius et singularis
of-divine-things and-of-human the-disparity of-one and singular
summæque rationis vis admirabilis contemperando coæquat:
and-highest reason the-power admirable by-tempering makes-equal
et quæ originis inferioritate et naturæ contrarietate
and things-which of-origin by-inferiority and of-nature by-contrariety
invicem repugnare videntur, ipsa sola unius superioris moderatæ
each-other to-oppose seem it alone of-one higher well-tempered
armoniæ convenientia grata concopulat. Cujus profecto summæ
harmony by-the-agreement pleasing couples of-which surely highest
et æternæ rationis participatione qui gloriosi effici
and eternal reason by-participation those-who glorious to-be-made
innituntur, crebro in solio mentis argutæ quasi pro
strive often on the-throne of-the-mind keen as-if on
tribunali residentes, de concertatione continua similium et
a-tribunal sitting about the-contest continual of-like and
dissimilium, et contrariorum inventioni et judicio insistunt;
unlike and contrary-things to-the-finding and judging apply-themselves
in æternæ sapientiæ rationis fonte, charitate ministrante,
in of-eternal wisdom of-reason the-fount charity ministering
unde bello intestino et seditioni interiori obsistant, salubriter
whence war internal and sedition inward they-may-resist healthfully
exhauriunt, spiritualia corporalibus, æterna deficientibus
they-draw spiritual-things to-bodily eternal to-failing

præponentes. Corporeæ sensualitatis exteriorum sensuum
preferring of-bodily sensuality of-the-outer senses
molestias et gravissimas angarias postponunt: ab earum
the-troubles and most-grievous exactions they-put-after from their
oppressione seipsos sublevantes, solidissimam mentis aciem
oppression themselves raising the-most-solid of-mind edge
in spem æternæ infigentes remunerationis, æternitati tantum
into the-hope of-eternal fixing reward to-eternity only
studiose obsequuntur. Carnalia desideria in admirationem et
zealously they-defer carnal desires to the-wonder and
spectaculum aliorum obliviscuntur; summæ rationis hoc modo,
spectacle of-others they-forget of-highest reason in-this way
et æternæ beatitudinis consortio, promittente unigenito
and of-eternal blessedness with-the-fellowship promising the-only-begotten
Dei filio: In patientia possidebitis animas vestras, se
of-God Son in patience you-shall-possess souls your themselves
gloriosæ conscientiæ merito uniri gratulantur. Quod tamen
of-glorious conscience by-merit to-be-united they-rejoice which yet
conditionis primæ corruptione depressa et graviter sauciata
of-condition first by-the-corruption pressed-down and heavily wounded
humanitas, præsentia potius amplectens quam futura
humanity present-things rather embracing than future-things
expectans, nullo modo sustineret, si non etiam rationis
awaiting in-no way would-endure if not also of-reason
et intelligentiæ humanæ rationabilis summæ et divinæ
and understanding human the-reasonable of-highest and divine
caritatis copiosa administratio hoc ipsum effectui mancipare
charity abundant administration this very to-effect to-bind
misericorditer suppeditaret. Unde legitur: Misericordia ejus
mercifully supplied whence it-is-read the-mercy his
super omnia opera ejus. Ex quo quidem cum aliis audacter
over all works his from which indeed with others boldly

et veraciter profitemur, quod quanto sola misericordia
and truly we-profess that by-how-much alone mercy
salvos nos facit per lavacrum regenerationis et renovationis
saved us makes through the-washing of-regeneration and of-renewal
Spiritus sancti, tanto nos gratissimo purificatæ mentis
of-the-Spirit holy by-so-much we with-the-most-welcome of-purified mind
holocausto pro toto velle et posse justitiam nostram,
holocaust for the-whole willing and being-able righteousness our
quantumcumque et ipse dederit, supplici ei devotione
however-much also he-himself shall-have-given with-suppliant to-him devotion
offerre elaboremus: ut ipse qui potest ut Deus, qui debet
to-offer we-should-labor that he-himself who can as God who ought
ut creator, si non resistimus, disparitatem istam periculosam
as creator if not we-resist disparity this perilous
in nobis parificet, contrarietatis intestinæ inimicitias, quas
in us may-make-equal of-contrariety internal the-enmities which
in amicitiæ ejus amissione prima prævaricatione incurrimus,
in of-friendship his the-loss by-the-first transgression we-incurred
ea ineffabili caritate qua divinitatem suam captivatæ
by-that ineffable charity by-which divinity his to-captive
humanitati nostræ ineffabiliter et inseparabiliter univit,
humanity our ineffably and inseparably be-united
dissolvat, sopita carnalitatis gravissima molestia, tumultuque
may-dissolve lulled of-carnality the-most-grievous trouble and-the-tumult
vitiorum sedato, pacato habitaculo interiora repugnantia
of-vices calmed pacified the-dwelling the-inward resisting-things
pacificet; ut mente et corpore expediti, gratam ei
may-pacify that in-mind and body unencumbered a-welcome to-him
offerentes servitutem, beneficiorum etiam immensorum ejus
offering service of-benefits also immense his
circa nos et nobilem cui nos præferri sustinuit ecclesiam
toward us and the-noble over-which us to-be-set he-allowed church

replicare et prædicare valeamus largitatem. Ne, si muti in
to-unfold and to-proclaim we-may-be-able the-largess lest if mute in
laudem ejus extiterimus, beneficiorum ejus ob hoc defectum
praise his we-have-been of-benefits his for this the-loss
incurramus, et vocem illam terribiliter audiamus: Non est
we-incur and voice that terribly we-hear not was
inventus qui rediret et daret gloriam Deo.
found (one)-who returned and gave glory to-God
Justificati igitur ex fide, pace nostra interiori, secundum
justified therefore from faith with-peace our inward according-to
Apostolum, pacem apud Deum habentes; unum et inter multos
the-Apostle peace with God having one and among many
singulare divinæ largitatis beneficium, more eorum qui ad
singular of-divine largess benefit in-the-manner of-those who for
gratificandum impertita dona donatoribus suis ultro
showing-gratitude imparted gifts to-givers their of-their-own-accord
referunt, in medium proferentes, gloriosam et dignam sanctæ
bring-back into the-midst bringing-forth the-glorious and worthy of-holy
hujus ecclesiæ consecrationem, pretiosissimorum nostrorum
this church consecration of-the-most-precious our
dominorum et apostolorum Dionysii, Rustici et Eleutherii,
lords and apostles Denis Rusticus and Eleutherius
et aliorum sanctorum quorum prompto innitimur patrocinio,
and of-other saints whose on-ready we-lean patronage
sacratissimam translationem ad successorum notitiam stylo
the-most-sacred translation to of-successors the-knowledge with-the-pen
assignare elaboravimus; qua de causa, quo ordine, quam
to-assign we-have-labored what for reason in-what order how
solemniter, quibus etiam personis idipsum actum sit
solemnly by-what also persons that-very-thing done was
reponentes, ut et divinæ propitiationi pro tanto munere
setting-down that both to-divine propitiation for so-great a-gift

condignas pro posse nostro gratiarum actiones referamus,
worthy for power our of-thanks actions we-may-render
et sanctorum protectorum nostrorum, tam pro impensa
and of-the-holy protectors our as-much for the-bestowed
tanti operis cura quam pro tantæ solemnitatis adnotatione,
of-so-great work care as for of-so-great solemnity the-recording
opportunam apud Deum obtineamus intercessionem.
a-timely with God we-may-obtain intercession

2 · DAGOBERT'S CHURCH AND ITS CROWDING

King Dagobert, after the martyrs appear to him in a vision, builds them a church rich in gold and marble but too small. On feast days it is so crowded that people are crushed and the monks flee with the relics through the windows. As abbot, Suger resolves to enlarge it, begins the front and its twin towers, finds a new quarry near Pontoise, and records how nobles and commoners drag the columns by ropes.

Gloriosus et famosus rex Francorum Dagobertus, vir
the-glorious and famous king of-the-Franks Dagobert a-man
etsi in regni administratione magnanimitate regia
although in of-the-kingdom administration by-high-spirit royal
conspicuus, nihilominus tamen Ecclesiæ Dei devotus,
conspicuous nonetheless yet to-the-Church of-God devoted
cum ad declinandam patris sui Clotharii intolerabilem iram
when for avoiding of-father his Clothar the-unbearable wrath
Catulliacum vicum aufugisset, et sanctorum Martyrum ibidem
to-Catulliacum the-hamlet had-fled and of-the-holy Martyrs there
quiescentium effigies venerandas, tanquam pulcherrimos viros
resting the-images venerable as most-handsome men
niveis vestibus comptos, servitium suum requirere et auxilium
in-snowy garments adorned service his to-require and help

promittere incunctanter voce et opere comperisset, basilicam
to-promise unhesitatingly by-voice and deed he-had-learned a-basilica
sanctorum regia munificentia fabricatum iri affectu
of-the-saints by-royal munificence built to-be with-affection
mirabili imperavit. Quam cum mirifica marmorearum
wondrous he-commanded which when with-wondrous of-marble
columnarum varietate componens, copiosis purissimi auri
columns variety composing with-abundant of-purest gold
et argenti thesauris inæstimabiliter locupletasset, ipsiusque
and silver treasures inestimably he-had-enriched and-its
parietibus et columnis et arcubus auro tectas vestes,
on-walls and columns and arches with-gold covered garments
margaritarum varietatibus multipliciter exornatas, suspendi
of-pearls with-varieties manifoldly adorned to-be-hung
fecisset, quatinus aliarum ecclesiarum ornamentis præcellere
had-caused so-that of-other churches in-ornaments to-excel
videretur, et omnimodis incomparabili nitore vernans, et
it-might-seem and in-every-way with-incomparable sheen blooming and
omni terra pulchritudine compta inæstimabili decore
with-every earthly beauty adorned with-inestimable grace
splendesceret, hoc solum ei defuit quod quam oporteret
might-shine this alone to-it was-lacking that which it-would-befit
magnitudinem non admisit. Non quod aliquid ejus devotioni
size not it-admitted not that anything his to-devotion
aut voluntati deesset, sed quod forsitan tunc temporis in
or will was-lacking but that perhaps then of-time in
primitiva ecclesia nulla adhuc aut major aut æqualis existeret,
the-primitive church none yet either greater or equal existed
aut quod brevior fulgorantis auri et splendorem gemmarum
or because smaller of-flashing gold and the-splendor of-gems

propinquitati arridentium oculorum acutius delectabiliusque
to-the-nearness of-smiling eyes more-keenly and-more-delightfully
refundendo, ultra satis quam si major fabricaretur irradiaret.
by-pouring-back beyond enough than if larger it-were-built it-would-shine
Hujus brevitatis egregiæ grata occasione, numerositate
of-this smallness excellent by-the-pleasing occasion the-number
fidelium crescente, et ad suffragia sanctorum crebro confluente,
of-the-faithful growing and to the-supports of-the-saints often flocking
tantas præfata basilica sustinere consuevit molestias, ut
such the-aforesaid basilica to-endure was-wont troubles that
sæpius, in solemnibus videlicet diebus, admodo plena per
more-often on solemn namely days very full through
omnes valvas turbarum sibi occurrentium superfluitatem
all doors of-the-crowds to-it running the-overflow
refunderet, et non solum intrantes non intrare, verum etiam
it-poured-back and not only those-entering not to-enter but also
qui jam intraverant præcedentium expulsus exire compelleret.
who already had-entered of-those-going-before by-the-thrust to-go-out it-forced
Videres aliquando, (mirabile visu) quod innitentibus ingredi
you-might-see sometimes wondrous to-see that to-those-striving to-enter
ad venerationem et deosculationem sanctarum reliquiarum
for the-veneration and kissing of-the-holy relics
Clavi et Coronæ Domini tanta congestæ multitudinis
of-the-Nail and of-the-Crown of-the-Lord so-great of-the-packed multitude
opponebatur repugnantia, ut inter innumera populorum millia
was-opposed resistance that among countless of-peoples thousands
ex ipsa suî compressione nullus pedem movere valeret,
from the-very of-itself compression no-one a-foot to-move could
nullus aliud ex ipsa suî constrictione quam sicut statua
no-one other from the-very of-itself constriction than as a-statue
marmorea stare, stupere, quod unum supererat vociferare.
marble to-stand to-be-stunned what one-thing remained to-cry-out

Mulierum autem tanta et tam intolerabilis erat angustia, ut
of-the-women moreover so-great and so unbearable was the-distress that
in commixtione virorum fortium sicut prelo depressæ, quasi
in the-mingling of-men strong as-if by-a-press pressed-down as-if
imaginata morte exsanguem faciem exprimere, more
imagined by-death a-bloodless face to-show in-the-manner
parturientium terribiliter conclamare, plures earum miserabiliter
of-women-in-labor terribly to-cry-out several of-them wretchedly
decalcatas, pio virorum suffragio super capita hominum
trampled by-the-pious of-men help over the-heads of-men
exaltatas, tanquam pavimento adhærentes incedere, multas
raised as-if to-a-pavement clinging to-walk many
etiam extremo singultantes spiritu in prato fratrum,
also with-the-last gasping breath in the-meadow of-the-brothers
cunctis desperantibus, anhelare. Fratres etiam insignia
all despairing to-pant the-brothers also the-insignia
Dominicæ passionis adventantibus exponentes, eorum angariis
of-the-Lord's passion to-those-arriving displaying their to-pressures
et contentionibus succumbentes, nullo divertere habentes,
and strivings succumbing no-way to-turn-aside having
per fenestras cum reliquiis multoties effugerunt. Quod cum
through the-windows with the-relics many-times escaped which when
scholaris puer inter fratres erudirer audiebam, extra
a-school boy among the-brothers I-was-being-taught I-heard outside
juvenis dolebam, maturus corrigi affectuose appetebam.
as-a-youth I-grieved-at mature to-be-corrected affectionately I-desired
Cum autem placuit illi, qui me segregavit ex utero
when moreover it-pleased him who me separated from the-womb
matris meæ, et vocavit per gratiam suam, meritis etiam
of-mother my and called through grace his merits even
repugnantibus, parvitatem meam hujus sanctæ ecclesiæ tantæ
resisting smallness my of-this holy church to-so-great

præficere administrationi, sola Dei omnipotentis ineffabili
to-set-over administration by-sole of-God almighty ineffable
misericordia, præfatæ molestiæ correctioni, sanctorum
mercy of-the-aforesaid trouble to-the-correction of-the-holy
Martyrum dominorum nostrorum suffragio raptus, ad
Martyrs lords our by-the-support carried-away to
augmentationem præfati loci toto animo, tota mentis
the-enlargement of-the-aforesaid place with-whole spirit with-whole of-mind
affectione accelerare proposuimus: qui nunquam, si tanta, tam
affection to-hasten we-proposed who never if so-great so
necessaria, tam utilis et honesta non exigeret opportunitas,
necessary so useful and honorable not required occasion
manum supponere vel cogitare præsumeremus.
a-hand to-put-to or to-think would-presume
Quia igitur in anteriori parte, ab aquilone, principali
because therefore in the-front part from the-north at-the-principal
ingressu principalium valvarum, porticus artus hinc et inde
entrance of-the-principal doors the-portico narrow hence and thence
gemellis, nec altis, nec aptis multum, sed minantibus
by-twin neither high nor fit much but threatening
ruinam, turribus angebatur, ea in parte inito directæ
ruin towers was-straitened that in part with-begun of-the-straight
testitudinis et geminarum turrium robusto valde fundamento
vault and of-the-twin towers on-a-strong very foundation
materiali, robustissimo autem spirituali, de quo dicitur:
material most-strong moreover spiritual of which is-said
Fundamentum aliud nemo potest ponere præter id quod
foundation other no-one can to-lay besides that which
positum est, quod est Christus Jesus, laborare strenue Deo
laid is which is Christ Jesus to-labor vigorously God
cooperante incœpimus. Cujus inæstimabili freti consilio et
co-working we-began whose on-inestimable relying counsel and

irrefragabili auxilio, usque adeo in tanto tamque sumptuoso
irrefutable help so far in so-great and-so costly
opere profecimus, ut, cum primum pauca expendendo
a-work we-advanced that when at-first few-things by-spending
multis, exinde multa explendo nullis omnino indigeremus,
of-many thereafter many-things by-completing of-nothing at-all we-had-need
verum etiam habundando fateremur: Sufficientia nostra ex
but also by-abounding we-confessed sufficiency our from
Deo est. Materiæ autem validissimæ nova quadraria qualis
God is of-material moreover most-strong a-new quarry such
et quanta nunquam in partibus istis inventa fuerat, Deo
and so-great-as never in parts these found had-been God
donante, occurrit. Cementariorum, lathomorum, sculptorum,
granting appeared of-masons of-stonecutters of-sculptors
et aliorum operariorum solers succedebat frequentia, ut
and of-other workmen a-skilled came-up throng that
ex hoc et aliis Divinitas ab hoc quod timebamus
from this and other-things the-Divinity from this which we-feared
absolveret, et voluntatem suam nobis confortando et
might-free and will his to-us by-strengthening and
inopinata suppeditando ministraret. Conferebam de minimis
unexpected-things by-supplying might-provide I-compared from the-least
ad maxima, non plus Salomonianas opes templo quam
to the-greatest not more Solomonic riches for-the-temple than
nostras huic operi sufficere posse, nisi idem ejusdem
ours for-this work to-suffice to-be-able unless the-same of-the-same
operis auctor ministratoribus copiose præpararet. Identitas
work the-author for-the-ministers abundantly prepared the-identity
auctoris et operis sufficientiam facit operantis.
of-author and work sufficiency makes of-the-worker

In agendis siquidem hujusmodi, apprime de convenientia
in things-to-be-done indeed of-this-kind exceedingly about the-agreement
et cohærentia antiqui et novi operis sollicitus unde
and coherence of-the-old and new work anxious whence
marmoreas aut marmoreis æquipollentes haberemus columnas,
marble or to-marble equivalent we-might-have columns
cogitando, speculando, investigando per diversas partium
by-thinking by-pondering by-investigating through various of-parts
remotarum regiones, cum nullam offenderemus, hoc solum
remote regions when none we-came-upon this alone
mente laborantibus et animo supererat, ut ab urbe (Romæ
in-mind to-those-laboring and spirit remained that from the-city of-Rome
enim in palatio Diocletiani et aliis termis sæpe mirabiles
for in the-palace of-Diocletian and other baths often wondrous-ones
conspexeramus) ut per mare Mediterraneum tuta classe,
we-had-seen that over the-sea Mediterranean by-a-safe fleet
exinde per Anglicum, et per tortuosam fluvii Sequanæ
thence over the-English and through the-winding of-the-river Seine
reflexionem, eas magno sumptu amicorum, inimicorum etiam
bending them at-great cost of-friends of-enemies even
Sarracenorum proximorum conductu haberemus. Multis
Saracens nearest under-the-conduct we-might-have for-many
annis, multis temporibus cogitando, quæritando angebamur:
years for-many times by-thinking by-seeking we-were-distressed
cum subito larga Omnipotentis munificentia, laboribus
when suddenly the-generous of-the-Almighty munificence to-labors
nostris condescendens, quod nec cogitare nec opinari
our condescending what neither to-think nor to-suppose
liceret, decentes et peroptimas in admirationem omnium
was-allowed fitting and very-excellent-ones to the-wonder of-all
sanctorum Martyrum merito revelavit. Unde quanto
of-the-holy Martyrs by-the-merit revealed whence by-how-much

contra spem et humanam opinionem apto, et nullibi nobis
against hope and human opinion in-a-fit and nowhere to-us
gratiori loco miseratio divina dignata est conferre, tanto
more-welcome place pity divine deigned has to-confer by-so-much
majores gratiarum actiones pro tanti remedio laboris
greater of-thanks actions for of-so-great the-remedy labor
operæ pretium duximus rependendo referre. Locus quippe
of-effort worth we-have-thought by-repaying to-render the-place indeed
quadrariæ admirabilis prope Pontisaram, castrum terrarum
of-the-quarry admirable near Pontoise the-castle of-lands
nostrarum confinio collimitans, vallem profundam non natura,
our at-the-border bordering a-valley deep not by-nature
sed industria concavam, molarum cæsoribus suî quæstum
but by-industry hollow of-millstones for-cutters of-itself gain
ab antiquo offerebat; nihil egregium hactenus proferens,
from of-old offered nothing excellent hitherto bringing-forth
exordium tantæ utilitatis tanto et tam divino ædificio,
the-beginning of-so-great usefulness for-so-great and so divine a-building
quasi primitias Deo sanctisque Martyribus, ut arbitramur,
as-if first-fruits for-God and-the-holy Martyrs as we-think
reservabat. Quotiens autem columnæ ab imo declivo
it-was-reserving as-often-as moreover the-columns from the-bottom slope
funibus innodatis extrahebantur, tam nostrates quam loci
with-ropes tied were-drawn-out as-much our-people as of-the-place
affines bene devoti, nobiles et innobiles, brachiis, pectoribus
neighbors well devoted nobles and commoners with-arms chests
et lacertis, funibus adstricti vice trahentium animalium
and shoulders to-ropes bound in-the-place of-drawing animals
educebant; et per medium castri declivium diversi
drew-out and through the-middle of-the-castle slope various
officiales, relictis officiorum suorum instrumentis, vires proprias
officials left of-offices their the-instruments strength own

itineris difficultati offerentes, obviabant, quanta poterant ope
of-the-road to-the-difficulty offering met as-much as-they-could by-help
Deo sanctisque Martyribus obsequentes. Unde nobile quoddam
God and-the-holy Martyrs obeying whence a-noble certain
et dignum relatione contigit miraculum, quod nos ipsi ab
and worthy of-report happened miracle which we ourselves from
assistentibus addiscentes ad laudem Omnipotentis sanctorumque
those-present learning to the-praise of-the-Almighty and-of-saints
suorum calamo et atramento adsignare decrevimus.
his with-pen and ink to-assign we-decided

3 · TWO WONDERS OF THE BUILDING

On a rainy day, seventeen weak men and boys, calling on Saint Denis, haul from the quarry a column that a hundred or a hundred and forty men used to drag out. When the carpenters say no beams large enough can be found nearby, Suger searches the forest of Yveline himself and finds exactly the twelve he needs.

Quadam itaque die, cum imbrium refusione turbatum aera
on-a-certain and-so day when of-rains by-the-pouring the-troubled air
tenebrosa obtexisset opacitas, adventantibus ad quadrariam
dark had-covered gloom arriving at the-quarry
plaustris, qui adjutores esse consueverant operandi pro
with-wagons those-who helpers to-be had-been-wont of-working for
impluvii infestatione seipsos absentaverunt. Bubulcis vero
of-the-rain the-annoyance themselves absented the-oxherds but
querentibus et reclamantibus se otio vacare, operarios
complaining and protesting themselves in-idleness to-be-free the-workmen
præstolantes suspendere, usque adeo clamando institerunt,
waiting to-hold-up so far by-shouting they-pressed
quod quidam imbecilles et debiles cum pueris aliquibus
that certain feeble and weak-men with boys some

numero decem et septem, præsente, nisi fallor, sacerdote,
in-number ten and seven being-present unless I-am-mistaken a-priest
ad quadrariam acceleraverunt, unamque cordarum assumentes,
to the-quarry hastened and-one of-the-ropes taking
columnæ innectentes, aliam sudem in terra jacentem
to-the-column tying another a-stake on the-ground lying
dimiserunt. Neque enim erat qui ea trahere inniteretur.
they-left nor for was-there (one)-who with-it to-draw might-strive
Animatus itaque grex pusillus pio zelo: «Sancte, inquiunt,
spirited and-so the-flock little with-pious zeal Saint they-say
Dionysi, pro teipso vacantem accipiens sudem, si placet, nos
Denis for yourself the-free taking stake if it-pleases us
adjuva. Non enim nobis, si non poterimus, imputare poteris.»
help not for to-us if not we-shall-be-able to-impute you-shall-be-able
Moxque fortiter impingentes, quod centum quadraginta aut
and-at-once strongly pushing what a-hundred forty or
minus centum graviter ab ima valle extrahere consueverant,
less a-hundred heavily from the-bottom valley to-draw-out had-been-wont
ipsi non per se, quod impossibile esset, sed voluntate Dei
they not by themselves which impossible would-be but by-the-will of-God
et sanctorum quos invocabant suffragio extraxerunt, eamque
and of-the-saints whom they-invoked by-the-support drew-out and-it
ecclesiæ fabricam in plaustro destinaverunt. Unde per totam
for-the-church building on a-wagon they-sent whence through the-whole
propalatum est viciniam Deo omnipotenti hoc opus admodum
made-public it-was neighborhood to-God almighty this work greatly
placere, cum ad laudem et gloriam nominis sui his et
to-please since to the-praise and glory of-name his by-these and
hujusmodi intersigniis ejus operatoribus elegerit opem deferre.
such tokens his to-workers he-chose help to-bring

Secundatur et aliud nobile factum memoria dignum, relatione
is-seconded also another noble deed of-memory worthy in-report
conspicuum, auctoritate prædicandum. Peracto siquidem magna
conspicuous by-authority to-be-proclaimed completed indeed great
ex parte opere, et compactis novi et antiqui ædificii
in part the-work and joined of-the-new and old building
tabulatis, magnoque deposito quem diu habueramus timore,
the-floors and-the-great laid-aside which long we-had-had fear
propter illas patulas antiquarum maceriarum rimas, magnorum
because-of those gaping of-the-old walls cracks of-the-great
capitellorum et basium columnas deportantium disruptionem
capitals and bases the-columns bearing the-breaking
exhilarati, deaptare sollicitabamur. Cumque pro trabium
gladdened to-rearrange we-were-anxious and-when for of-beams
inventione tam nostros quam Parisienses lignorum artifices
the-finding as-much our as Parisian of-wood craftsmen
consuluissemus, responsum nobis est pro eorum existimatione
we-had-consulted answered to-us it-was by their reckoning
verum, in finibus istis propter silvarum inopiam minime
truly in borders these because-of of-woods the-scarcity by-no-means
inveniri posse, vel ab Autissiodorensi pago necessario
to-be-found to-be-able or from the-Auxerre district necessarily
devehi oportere. Cumque omnes in hoc ipso consonarent,
to-be-brought to-be-needful and-when all in this very agreed
nosque super hoc tam pro laboris magnitudine quam
and-we about this as-much for of-labor the-greatness as
pro operis longa delatione gravaremur, nocte quadam, a
for of-the-work the-long hauling were-burdened on-night a-certain from
matutinarum obsequio regressus, lecto cogitare cœpi meipsum
of-matins the-service having-returned in-bed to-think I-began myself
per omnes partium istarum silvas debere procedere,
through all of-parts these the-woods to-be-bound to-go

circumquaque perlustrare, moras istas et labores, si hic
round-about to-survey delays these and labors if here
inveniri possent, alleviare. Moxque rejectis curis aliis, summo
to-be-found they-could to-lighten and-at-once cast-off cares other at-highest
mane arripiens, cum carpentariis et trabium mensuris ad
morning setting-out with carpenters and of-beams the-measures to
silvam quæ dicitur Ivilina acceleravimus. Cumque per terram
the-wood which is-called Yveline we-hastened and-when through land
nostram Capreolensis vallis transiremus, accitis servientibus
our of-the-Chevreuse valley we-passed summoned servants
nostris nostrarum custodibus et aliarum silvarum peritis,
our of-our keepers and of-other woods those-skilled
adjurando fide et sacramento eos consuluimus, si ejus
by-adjuring by-faith and oath them we-consulted if of-that
mensuræ ibidem trabes invenire quocumque labore valeremus.
measure there beams to-find with-whatever labor we-could
Qui subridentes, si auderent, potius deriderent; admirantes
who smiling if they-dared rather they-would-laugh wondering
si nos plane nesciremus in tota terra nihil tale inveniri
if we plainly did-not-know in the-whole land nothing such to-be-found
posse, maxime cum Milo Capreolensis castellanus homo
to-be-able especially since Milo of-Chevreuse castellan man
noster, qui medietatem silvæ a nobis cum alio feodo
our who the-half of-the-wood from us with other fief
habet, cum sustinuisset tam a domino rege quam ab
holds since he-had-endured as-much from the-lord king as from
Amalrico de Monte Forti longo tempore guerras, ad tristegas
Amaury of Mont- -fort for-long time wars for towers
et propugnacula facienda nihil tale illibatum vel intactum
and bulwarks to-be-made nothing such unimpaired or untouched
præteriisset. Nos autem quicquid dicebant respuentes, quadam
had-passed-over we moreover whatever they-said rejecting with-a-certain

fidei nostræ audacia silvam perlustrare cœpimus, et versus
of-faith our daring the-wood to-survey we-began and toward
quidem primam horam trabem unam mensuræ sufficientem
indeed the-first hour a-beam one of-measure sufficient
invenimus. Quid ultra? usque ad nonam aut citius per
we-found what more right to None or sooner through
fruteta, per opacitatem silvarum, per densitatem spinarum,
thickets through the-gloom of-woods through the-density of-thorns
duodecim trabes (tot enim necessariæ erant) in admirationem
twelve beams so-many for necessary were to the-wonder
omnium præsertim circumstantium assignavimus, et ad
of-all especially of-those-standing-around we-marked and to
basilicam sanctam deportatas cum exultatione novi operis
the-basilica holy carried with exultation of-the-new work
operturæ superponi fecimus, ad laudem et gloriam Domini
on-the-roof to-be-set we-caused to the-praise and glory of-the-Lord
Jesu, qui sibi sanctisque Màrtyribus, a manibus raptorum
Jesus who for-himself and-the-holy Martyrs from the-hands of-robbers
protegens, sicut facere voluit, reservaverat. Nec igitur superflua,
protecting as to-do he-willed had-reserved nor therefore superfluous
neque minus continens id circa divina extitit largitio, quæ
nor less containing on-that account divine was largess which
in pondere et mensura omnia moderari, omnia dare constituit,
in weight and measure all-things to-govern all-things to-give has-ordained
cum ultra quam oportuit nulla ulterius invenire potuerit.
since beyond what was-needful none further to-find could

The new front and its chapels are consecrated by the archbishop of Rouen and two bishops, and Suger endows their lights. He then turns to the choir, deciding to keep the old consecrated stones and to raise the new chevet over the crypt so that the saints' shrines will be seen. On a Sunday in July the bishops and the king lay the first stones, and Suger assigns two hundred pounds a year to the work.

Tantis itaque et tam manifestis tantorum operum intersigniis
by-such and-so and so manifest of-so-great works tokens
constanter animati, ad præfati perfectionem ædificii
steadfastly spirited to of-the-aforesaid the-completion building
instanter properantes, quomodo et quibus personis, et quod
urgently hastening how and by-what persons and that
valde solemniter Deo omnipotenti consecraretur deliberantes,
very solemnly to-God almighty it-might-be-consecrated deliberating
accito egregio viro Hugone Rothomagensi archiepiscopo,
summoned the-excellent man Hugh of-Rouen archbishop
et aliis venerabilibus episcopis, Odone Belvacensi, Petro
and other venerable bishops Odo of-Beauvais Peter
Silvanectensi, ad id peragendum multimodam laudem,
of-Senlis for that completing manifold praise
magnoque diversarum personarum ecclesiasticarum, cleri et
and-with-great of-various persons ecclesiastical of-clergy and
populi maximo conventu, decantabamus. Qui in medio novi
of-people the-greatest gathering we-sang who in the-middle of-the-new
incrementi priorem in consistenti dolio benedicentes aquam,
addition the-first in a-standing tub blessing water
per oratorium sancti Eustachii cum processione exeuntes
through the-oratory of-Saint Eustace with procession going-out
per plateam quæ Panteria, eo quod inibi omnia emptioni
through the-square which the-Panterie by-this that there all-things by-buying

et venditioni teruntur, antiquitus vocitatur, per aliam, quæ
and selling are-worn of-old is-called through another which
in sacro cimeterio aperitur, æream portam revertentes, in
into the-sacred cemetery opens the-bronze door returning in
æternæ benedictionis et sanctissimi chrismatis delibutione,
of-eternal blessing and of-most-holy of-chrism by-the-anointing
veri corporis et sanguinis summi pontificis Jesu
of-the-true body and blood of-the-supreme pontiff Jesus
Christi exhibitione, quicquid tanto et tam sancto convenit
Christ by-the-showing whatever to-so-great and so holy befitted
ædificio devotissime compleverunt: pulcherrimum et angelica
a-building most-devoutly they-completed the-most-beautiful and of-angelic
mansione dignum superius oratorium, in honore sanctæ
dwelling worthy upper oratory in honor of-the-holy
Dei Genitricis semper virginis Mariæ, et sancti Michaelis
of-God Mother ever virgin Mary and of-Saint Michael
archangeli, omniumque Angelorum, sancti Romani ibidem
archangel and-of-all the-Angels of-Saint Romanus there
quiescentis aliorumque multorum sanctorum, quorum ibi
resting and-of-other many saints whose there
nomina subtitulata habentur, dedicantes; inferius vero in dextro
names written-below are-held dedicating below but on the-right
latere oratorium in honore sancti Bartholomæi multorumque
side an-oratory in honor of-Saint Bartholomew and-of-many
aliorum sanctorum; in sinistro autem, ubi sanctus requiescere
other saints on the-left moreover where Saint to-rest
perhibetur Hippolitus, oratorium in honore ejusdem et
is-said Hippolytus an-oratory in honor of-the-same and
sanctorum Laurentii, Sixti, Felicissimi, Agapiti, aliorumque
of-the-saints Lawrence Sixtus Felicissimus Agapitus and-of-others
multorum, ad laudem et gloriam Dei omnipotentis. Nos
many to the-praise and glory of-God almighty we

autem tantæ benedictionis pro fructu impensi laboris Dei
moreover of-so-great blessing for the-fruit of-bestowed labor of-God
dono participes effici toto affectu desiderantes, quasi
by-the-gift sharers to-be-made with-whole affection desiring as-if
pro dote, sicut solet fieri, ad expensas emendorum
for a-dowry as is-wont to-be-done for the-expenses of-to-be-bought
luminariorum, plateam quandam cimeterio collimitantem juxta
of-lights a-plot certain to-the-cemetery bordering near
ecclesiam sancti Michaelis, quam quater viginti libris a
the-church of-Saint Michael which four-times twenty for-pounds from
Willelmo Corneilensi emeramus, ejusdem contulimus oratoriis,
William of-Cormeilles we-had-bought of-the-same we-conferred to-the-oratories
ut in sempiternum inde censum habeant. De termino vero
that for ever thence quitrent they-may-have of the-date but
hæc est veritatis consistentia, sicut legitur, si tamen non
this is of-truth the-substance as is-read if yet not
obscuretur, in aureo super portas, quas ad honorem Dei
it-be-dimmed in the-golden over the-doors which to the-honor of-God
et sanctorum deauratas fieri fecimus, epitaphio:
and of-the-saints gilded to-be-made we-caused epitaph

Annus millesimus centenus et quadragenus
the-year thousandth hundredth and fortieth
Annus erat Verbi, quando sacrata fuit.
the-year was of-the-Word when consecrated it-was

Igitur post illam, quæ majestatis summæ opitulatione in
therefore after that which of-majesty highest by-the-help in
anteriore parte de oratorio sancti Romani et aliorum
the-front part concerning the-oratory of-Saint Romanus and of-others
celebrata est, consecrationem, nostra qua tam ex ipsa
celebrated was consecration our by-which as-much from the-very

suî prosperitate animabatur devotio, quam ipsa circa
of-itself prosperity was-roused devotion as the-very around
Sanctorum tanto tempore tam intolerabiliter opprimebat
of-the-Saints for-so-long time so unbearably pressed
coarctatio, votum nostrum illo convertit: ut præfato
narrowness vow our thither turned that to-the-aforesaid
vacantes operi, turriumque differendo prosecutionem in
being-free work and-of-the-towers by-deferring the-pursuit in
superiori parte, augmentationi matris ecclesiæ operam et
the-upper part to-the-enlargement of-mother church effort and
impensam pro toto posse, pro gratiarum actione, eo quod
expense for the-whole power for of-thanks the-giving by-this that
tantillo tantorum regum et abbatum nobilitati succedenti
to-so-small of-so-great kings and abbots to-the-nobility succeeding
tantum opus divina dignatio reservasset, quam decentius,
so-great a-work divine condescension had-reserved how more-fittingly
quam gloriosius rationabiliter effici posset, fieri
how more-gloriously reasonably to-be-done it-could to-be-made
inniteremur. Communicato siquidem cum fratribus nostris
we-might-strive shared indeed with brothers our
bene devotis consilio, quorum cor ardens erat de Jesu dum
well devoted counsel whose heart burning was about Jesus while
loqueretur eis in via, hoc Deo inspirante deliberando
he-spoke to-them on the-way this God inspiring by-deliberating
elegimus, ut propter eam quam divina operatio, sicut
we-chose that because-of that which divine working as
veneranda scripta testantur, propria et manuali extensione
venerable writings testify by-own and manual extension
ecclesiæ consecrationi antiquæ imposuit benedictionem,
of-the-church to-the-consecration ancient put blessing
ipsis sacratis lapidibus tanquam reliquiis deferremus, illam
to-the-very consecrated stones as to-relics we-should-defer that

quæ tanta exigente necessitate novitas inchoaretur, longitudinis
which so-great requiring necessity newness was-being-begun of-length
et latitudinis pulchritudine inniteremur nobilitare. Consulte
and of-breadth by-the-beauty we-should-strive to-ennoble advisedly
siquidem decretum est illam altiori inæqualem, quæ super
indeed decreed it-was that to-the-higher unequal which over
absidem sanctorum dominorum nostrorum corpora retinentem
the-apse of-the-holy lords our bodies holding
operiebat, removeri voltam usque ad superficiem criptæ cui
covered to-be-removed vault right to the-surface of-the-crypt to-which
adhærebat; ut eadem cripta superioritatem suî accedentibus
it-adhered that the-same crypt the-top of-itself to-those-approaching
per utrosque gradus pro pavimento offerret, et in eminentiori
by both stairs as pavement might-offer and in a-more-eminent
loco Sanctorum lecticas auro et preciosis gemmis adornatas
place of-the-Saints the-biers with-gold and precious gems adorned
adventantium obtutibus designaret. Provisum est etiam
of-those-arriving to-the-gazes might-display provided it-was also
sagaciter ut superioribus columnis et arcubus mediis, qui in
shrewdly that by-the-upper columns and arches middle which on
inferioribus in cripta fundatis superponerentur, geometricis et
the-lower in the-crypt founded were-set with-geometrical and
aritmeticis instrumentis medium antiquæ testitudinis ecclesiæ
arithmetical instruments the-middle of-the-old vault of-the-church
augmenti novi medio æquaretur, nec minus antiquarum
of-the-addition new to-the-middle be-equaled nor less of-the-old
quantitas alarum novarum quantitati adaptaretur; excepto illo
the-size aisles of-the-new to-the-size be-fitted excepted that
urbano et approbato in circuitu oratoriorum incremento,
elegant and approved in the-circuit of-oratories addition

quo tota sacratissimarum vitrearum luce mirabili et
by-which the-whole of-the-most-sacred windows with-light wondrous and
continua interiorem perlustrante pulchritudinem eniteret.
continuous the-inner pervading beauty might-shine-out
Ut autem sapienti consilio, dictante Spiritu sancto, cujus
when moreover by-wise counsel dictating the-Spirit holy whose
unctio de omnibus docet, luculento ordine designatum est
anointing about all-things teaches in-clear order designated it-was
quid prosequi proponeremus, collecto virorum illustrium tam
what to-pursue we-proposed gathered of-men illustrious as-much
episcoporum quam abbatum conventu, accita etiam domini
bishops as abbots a-gathering summoned also of-the-lord
ac serenissimi regis Francorum Ludovici præsentia, pridie
and most-serene king of-the-Franks Louis the-presence on-the-day-before
idus julii, die dominica, ordinavimus ornamentis decoram,
the-ides of-July on-the-day of-the-Lord we-ordered with-ornaments handsome
personis celebrem processionem. Quin etiam manibus
with-persons famous a-procession nay also in-the-hands
episcoporum et abbatum insignia Dominicæ Passionis,
of-bishops and abbots the-insignia of-the-Lord's Passion
videlicet clavum et coronam Domini, et brachium sancti
namely the-nail and crown of-the-Lord and the-arm of-the-holy
senis Simeonis, et alia sanctarum reliquiarum patrocinia
old-man Simeon and other of-holy relics patronages
præferentes, ad defossa faciendis fundamentis præparata loca
carrying-before to the-dug for-making foundations prepared places
humiliter et devote descendimus. Dein paraclyti Spiritus
humbly and devoutly we-went-down then of-the-paraclete Spirit
sancti consolatione invocata, ut bonum domus Dei
holy the-consolation invoked that the-good of-the-house of-God
principium bono fine concluderet, cum primum ipsi
beginning with-a-good end he-might-close when first themselves

episcopi ex aqua benedicta dedicationis factæ, proximo quinto
the-bishops from water blessed of-the-dedication made on-the-last fifth
idus junii, propriis confecissent manibus cementum, primos
ides of-June with-own had-prepared hands mortar the-first
lapides imposuerunt, hymnum Deo dicentes, et Fundamenta
stones they-laid a-hymn to-God saying and the-foundations
ejus usque ad finem psalmi solemniter decantantes. Ipse
of-it right to the-end of-the-psalm solemnly chanting himself
enim serenissimus rex intus descendens propriis manibus suum
for the-most-serene king inside going-down with-own hands his
imposuit; nos quoque, et multi alii tam abbates quam
laid we also and many others as-much abbots as
religiosi viri lapides suos imposuerunt; quidam etiam gemmas,
religious men stones their laid some also gems
ob amorem et reverentiam Jesu Christi, decantantes: Lapides
for love and reverence of-Jesus Christ chanting stones
preciosi omnes muri tui. Nos igitur tanta et tam festiva
precious all walls your we therefore by-so-great and so festive
tam sancti fundamenti positione exhilarati, de peragendo
of-so holy foundation laying gladdened about completing
solliciti, varietatem temporum, diminutionem personarum,
anxious the-variety of-times the-diminishing of-persons
et meî ipsius defectum pertimescentes, communi fratrum
and of-me myself the-failing greatly-fearing by-the-common of-the-brothers
consilio, assistentium persuasione, domini regis assensu,
counsel of-those-present by-persuasion of-the-lord king by-assent
annalem redditum his explendis constituimus, videlicet:
a-yearly revenue for-these to-be-completed we-set-up namely
centum quinquaginta libras de gazofilacio, id est de
a-hundred fifty pounds from the-treasury that is from
oblationibus altaris et reliquiarum, centum in Indicto et
the-offerings of-the-altar and of-the-relics a-hundred at the-Lendit and

quinquaginta in festo sancti Dionysii; quinquaginta etiam
fifty on the-feast of-Saint Denis fifty also
de possessione sita in Belsa, quæ dicitur Villana, prius
from the-possession situated in the-Beauce which is-called Villaine formerly
inculta, sed auxilio Dei et nostro labore composita et
untilled but by-the-help of-God and by-our labor ordered and
ad valens quater viginti aut centum librarum singulis annis
to worth four-times twenty or a-hundred pounds in-single years
adaptata. Quæ si quocumque infortunio his explendis
fitted which if by-whatever misfortune for-these to-be-completed
deficeret, alia Belsa nostra, quam dupliciter aut tripliciter
should-fail the-other Beauce our which doubly or triply
in redditibus augmentavimus, suppleret. Has autem ducentas
in revenues we-have-increased should-supply these moreover two-hundred
libras, præter ea quæ ad arcam gazofilacii devotione
pounds besides those which to the-chest of-the-treasury by-the-devotion
fidelium deportabuntur, vel quæcumque ipsi utrique operi
of-the-faithful shall-be-brought or whatever to-the-very each work
offerentur, tantum continuari ipsis operibus firmavimus,
shall-be-offered only to-be-continued for-the-very works we-have-fixed
donec totaliter absque illa quæstione et ipsa ædificia et
until wholly without that question both the-very buildings both
anteriora et superiora cum suis turribus omnino honorifice
the-front and the-upper with their towers wholly honorably
compleantur.
be-completed

For three years the work goes on summer and winter. The columns of the choir stand for the twelve apostles and the prophets. Gems pour in from the king, the nobles, and the bishops for the new altar. A storm shakes the new, unbraced arches, but the bishop of Chartres signs them with the arm of Saint Simeon and they stand, and white monks bring rams just when needed for the feast.

Insistentes igitur per triennium multo sumptu, populoso
pressing therefore for three-years at-much cost with-a-populous
operariorum conventu, æstate et hieme, operis perfectioni,
of-workmen gathering in-summer and winter of-the-work to-the-completion
ne nobis conqueri Deo Imperfectum meum viderunt oculi tui
lest to-us to-complain to-God the-unformed my have-seen eyes your
jure oporteret, admodum ipso cooperante proficiebamus;
by-right it-should-be-needful greatly him co-working we-advanced
instarque divinorum fundabatur exultationi universæ terræ
and-like of-divine-things was-founded for-the-joy of-the-whole earth
mons Syon, latera aquilonis, civitas Regis magni, cujus in
mount Zion the-sides of-the-north the-city of-the-King great whose in
medio Deus non commovebitur, sed peccatorum incitamentis
midst God not shall-be-moved but of-sins by-the-provocations
commotus, odorifero pœnitentium holocausto placari et
moved by-the-fragrant of-penitents holocaust to-be-appeased and
propitiari non dedignabitur. Medium quippe duodecim
to-be-propitiated not he-shall-disdain the-middle indeed of-the-twelve
Apostolorum exponentes numerum, secundario vero totidem
Apostles setting-out the-number secondarily but as-many
alarum columnæ Prophetarum numerum significantes, altum
of-the-aisles columns of-the-Prophets the-number signifying high
repente subrigebant ædificium, juxta Apostolum, spiritualiter
suddenly raised the-building according-to the-Apostle spiritually

ædificantem: Jam non estis, inquit, hospites et advenæ;
building now not you-are he-says guests and strangers
sed estis cives sanctorum et domestici Dei, superædificati
but you-are citizens of-the-saints and household of-God built-upon
super fundamentum Apostolorum et Prophetarum, ipso
upon the-foundation of-the-Apostles and Prophets himself
summo angulari lapide Christo Jesu, qui utrumque conjungit
the-highest corner stone Christ Jesus who each joins
parietem, in quo omnis ædificatio, sive spiritualis, sive
wall in whom every building whether spiritual or
materialis, crescit in templum sanctum in Domino. In quo
material grows into a-temple holy in the-Lord in whom
et nos quanto altius, quanto aptius materialiter ædificare
also we by-how-much higher by-how-much more-fitly materially to-build
instamus, tanto per nos ipsos spiritualiter coædificari
we-press by-so-much through us ourselves spiritually to-be-built-together
in habitaculum Dei in Spiritu sancto edocemur.
into a-dwelling of-God in the-Spirit holy we-are-taught
Interea siquidem potissimum de dominorum nostrorum
meanwhile indeed chiefly about of-lords our
sanctissimorum Martyrum et aliorum sanctorum, qui per
the-most-holy Martyrs and of-other saints who through
ecclesiam sparsi diversis colebantur oratoriis, translatione
the-church scattered in-various were-worshiped oratories the-translation
solliciti, sacratissimas eorum lecticas, præcipue dominorum,
anxious the-most-sacred their biers especially of-the-lords
ornatum iri votive animabamur; et ubi gloriosius
adorned to-be eagerly we-were-spirited and where more-gloriously
adventantium obtutibus et conspicabilius transferrentur
of-the-arriving to-the-gazes and more-visibly they-might-be-transferred
eligentes, aurifabrorum eleganti sive artis industria, sive auri
choosing of-goldsmiths by-the-elegant either of-art industry or of-gold

gemmarumque pretiosarum copia illustrem valde fieri
and-of-gems precious abundance illustrious very to-be-made
Deo cooperante elaboravimus. Et deforis quidem his
God co-working we-labored and outside indeed with-these
et hujusmodi pro ornatu nobilem, pro tuto vero intus
and such for ornament noble for safety but inside
fortissimorum lapidum muro non ignobilem circumquaque
of-most-strong stones by-a-wall not ignoble round-about
muniri; extra vero econtra, ne lapidum materia apparentium
to-be-fortified outside but in-turn lest of-stones the-material appearing
locus vilesceret, cupreis tabulis fusilibus et deauratis
the-place should-grow-cheap with-copper panels cast and gilded
decorari, non tamen sicut deceret, præparavimus. Exigit enim
to-be-adorned not yet as it-would-befit we-prepared requires for
tantorum patrum experta nobis et omnibus magnificentia,
of-so-great fathers known to-us and to-all the-magnificence
ut quorum venerandi spiritus Deo omnipotenti sicut sol
that whose venerable spirits to-God almighty as the-sun
fulgentes assistunt, nos miserrimi, qui eorum patrocinia
shining stand-by we most-wretched who their patronages
et sentimus et indigemus, sacratissimos cineres eorum
both feel and need the-most-sacred ashes their
pretiosiori qua possemus materia, videlicet auro obrizo,
with-more-precious as we-could material namely with-gold refined
jacinthorum, et smaragdinum, et aliarum gemmarum copia
of-jacinths and emeralds and of-other gems abundance
operæ pretium liquet operiri. Hoc autem unum egregie
of-effort worth it-is-clear to-be-covered this moreover one-thing excellently
fieri elegimus, ut ante corpora Sanctorum celeberrima
to-be-done we-chose that before the-bodies of-the-Saints a-most-famous
ad libandum Deo, quæ nunquam ibidem fuerat, erigeremus
for offering to-God which never there had-been we-should-raise

aram, ubi Summi Pontifices et personæ autenticæ suffragio
altar where the-Supreme Pontiffs and persons authentic by-the-support
eorum, qui seipsos holocaustum odoriferum Deo obtulerunt,
of-those who themselves as-a-holocaust fragrant to-God offered
placabiles et Deo acceptabiles hostias offerre mereantur.
pleasing and to-God acceptable victims to-offer may-deserve
Cui etiam cum tabulam auream, mediocrem tamen defectus
to-which also when a-panel golden moderate yet of-lack
pusillanimitate præponere proposuissem, tantam auri, tantam
by-the-faint-heartedness to-set-in-front I-had-proposed so-much of-gold so-much
gemmarum pretiosissimarum inopinatam et vix ipsis
of-gems most-precious unexpected and scarcely for-the-very
regibus existentem copiam ipsi sancti Martyres nobis
kings existing abundance the-very holy Martyrs to-us
propinaverunt, ac si nobis ore ad os loquerentur: «Velis
poured-out as if to-us mouth to mouth they-spoke will-you
nolis, optimam eam volumus;» ut eam aliter quam mirabilem
nill-you the-best it we-want that it otherwise than wondrous
et valde pretiosam tam opere quam materia efficere aut non
and very precious as-much in-work as in-material to-make either not
auderemus aut non valeremus. Neque enim ipsi pontifices,
we-dared or not we-could nor for the-very pontiffs
qui his egregie pro officii sui dignitate potiuntur, annulos
who these excellently for of-office their dignity possess rings
etiam pontificales mirabili pretiosorum lapidum varietate
even pontifical with-wondrous of-precious stones variety
gemmatos eidem imponere tabulæ præsentes abnegabant,
jeweled to-the-same to-put panel present refused
verum absentes a transmarinis etiam partibus, sanctorum
but absent from overseas even parts of-the-holy
Martyrum amore invitati, ultro delegabant. Ipse etiam
Martyrs by-love invited of-their-own-accord sent himself also

rex inclytus perlucidas et maculis distinctas smaragdines,
the-king renowned translucent and with-spots marked emeralds
comes Theobaldus jacinthos, rubetos, optimates et principes
count Theobald jacinths red-ones magnates and princes
diversorum colorum et valitudinum pretiosas margaritas
of-various colors and values precious pearls
ultro offerentes, nos ipsos ad peragendum gloriose
of-their-own-accord offering us ourselves to completing gloriously
invitabant. Præterea tot venales ab omnibus pene terrarum
invited besides so-many for-sale from all almost of-lands
partibus nobis afferebantur, et unde eas emeremus Deo donante
parts to-us were-brought and whence them we-might-buy God granting
offerebantur, ut eas sine pudore magno et Sanctorum offensa
were-offered that them without shame great and of-the-Saints offense
dimittere nequiremus. Hic et alibi experiri potuimus: sit
to-let-go we-could-not here and elsewhere to-experience we-could let-be
bonum opus in voluntate, ex Dei adjutorio erit in
good the-work in the-will from of-God help it-shall-be in
perfectione. Hoc itaque ornamentum tantorum devotione,
completion this and-so ornament of-so-many by-the-devotion
tantis protectoribus commodatum si quis temerario ausu
to-so-great protectors lent if anyone with-rash daring
auferre aut scienter minuere præsumpserit, domni Dionysii
to-take-away or knowingly to-diminish shall-presume of-the-lord Denis
offensam et Spiritus sancti mucrone perfodi mereatur.
the-offense and of-the-Spirit holy by-the-blade to-be-pierced may-be-deserve
Nec illud etiam silere dignum duximus, quod dum
nor that also to-be-silent fitting we-have-thought that while
præfatum novi augmenti opus capitellis et arcubus
the-aforesaid of-the-new addition work with-capitals and arches
superioribus et ad altitudinis cacumen produceretur, cum
upper and to of-height the-summit was-being-carried when

necdum principales arcus singulariter veluti voltarum cumulo
not-yet the-principal arches singly as-if of-the-vaults by-the-mass
cohærerent, terribilis et pene tolerabilis obnubilatione nubium,
cohered a-terrible and almost bearable by-the-clouding of-clouds
inundatione imbrium, impetu validissimo ventorum subito
by-the-flooding of-rains with-onset most-powerful of-winds suddenly
tempestatis exorta est procella; quæ usque adeo invaluit,
of-tempest arisen has a-storm which so far grew-strong
ut non solum validas domos, sed etiam lapideas turres
that not only strong houses but also stone towers
et ligneas tristegas concusserit. Ea tempestate, quadam
and wooden towers it-shook in-that tempest on-a-certain
die, anniversario gloriosi Dagoberti regis, cum venerabilis
day on-the-anniversary of-the-glorious Dagobert king when the-venerable
Carnotensis episcopus Gaufredus missas gratiarum pro anima
of-Chartres bishop Geoffrey masses of-thanks for the-soul
ejusdem in conventu ad altare principale festive celebraret,
of-the-same in the-convent at the-altar principal festively was-celebrating
tantus oppositorum ventorum impetus præfatos arcus nullo
so-great of-opposed winds the-onset the-aforesaid arches by-no
suffultos podio, nullis renitentes suffragiis impingebat, ut
propped scaffold by-no resisting supports struck that
miserabiliter tremuli, et quasi hinc et inde fluctuantes subito
wretchedly trembling and as-if hence and thence wavering suddenly
pestiferam minarentur ruinam. Quorum quidem operturarumque
a-pestilent threatened ruin of-which indeed and-of-the-roofings
impulsionem cum episcopus expavesceret, sæpe manum
the-pushing when the-bishop was-terrified often the-hand
benedictionis in ea parte extendebat, et brachium sancti
of-blessing toward that part he-stretched-out and the-arm of-the-holy
senis Simeonis signando instanter opponebat, ut manifeste
old-man Simeon by-signing urgently set-against that manifestly

nulla suî constantia, sed sola Dei pietate et Sanctorum
by-no of-themselves firmness but by-sole of-God piety and of-the-Saints
merito ruinam evadere appareret. Sicque cum multis in locis
merit ruin to-escape it-appeared and-thus though many in places
firmissimis, ut putabatur, ædificiis multa ruinarum incommoda
to-most-firm as was-thought buildings many of-ruins harms
intulisset, virtute repulsa divina, titubantibus in alto solis
it-had-inflicted by-power driven-back divine to-the-tottering on high lone
et recentibus arcubus, nihil proferre prævaluit incommodi.
and new arches nothing to-bring was-able of-harm
Secutum est aliud dignum memoria factum, quod non ex
followed has another worthy of-memory deed which not from
accidenti, sicut de talibus judicant qui illi consentiunt
chance as about such judge those-who that agree-with
sectæ, videlicet quod
sect namely that

Foris incerta vagatur,
chance uncertain wanders
Fertque refertque vices, et habent mortalia casus,
and-brings and-brings-back changes and have mortal-things falls

sed divina largitione, quæ in se sperantibus magnis et parvis
but by-divine largess which in it to-those-hoping great and small
in omnibus providet affluenter, et quæ novit profutura
in all-things provides abundantly and which knows things-to-profit
administrat. Cum enim quadam die de apparatu proximæ
supplies when for on-a-certain day about the-preparation of-the-next
consecrationis curiæ, quia maximam fore præstolabamur, et
consecration of-the-court because the-greatest to-be we-expected both
cum amicis et ministerialibus et villicis nostris ageremus,
with friends and officials and stewards our we-were-dealing

et pro temporum gravitate (mense enim junio pene omnia
and for of-the-times the-hardness in-the-month for June almost all
victualia cara erant) de aliis fauste satis providissemus,
provisions dear were for others happily enough we-had-provided
hoc nos solum graviter offendebat, quod carnes arietinas,
this us alone heavily vexed that meats of-rams
propter ovium quæ eodem anno extiterant morticinia,
because-of of-sheep which in-the-same year had-been the-murrains
Aurelianensi pago et versus Burgundiam quæritare oporteret.
in-the-Orléans district and toward Burgundy to-seek it-was-necessary
Cumque mille solidos, aut quantum oporteret ob hoc illuc
and-when a-thousand shillings or as-much-as was-needful for this thither
pergentibus dari graviter, ne tarde redirent, quia sero
to-those-going to-be-given strictly lest late they-return because late
incœperant, præcepissem, sequente mane, cum de camerula
they-had-begun I-had-ordered on-the-following morning when from little-chamber
nostra ad sancti sacrificii ex consuetudine accelerarem
our to of-the-holy sacrifice from custom I-was-hastening
celebrationem, subito quidam de fratribus albis monachus
the-celebration suddenly a-certain of brothers white a-monk
renitentem ad cameram me retrahit. In quem aliquantisper,
resisting to the-chamber me draws-back against whom somewhat
quia nos a tanto impediebat opere, commotus, cum
because us from so-great he-was-hindering a-work moved when
minus bene respondissem: «Audivimus, inquit, domine Pater,
less well I-had-answered we-have-heard he-says lord Father
vos ad instantem consecrationis vestræ solemnitatem arietinis
you for the-approaching of-consecration your solemnity of-ram
carnibus indigere; et inde a fratribus nostris missus arietum
meats to-have-need and thence by brothers our sent of-rams
gregem maximum Paternitati vestræ adduco, ut quod vobis
a-flock very-great to-Paternity your I-bring that what to-you

placuerit retineatis, et quod non placuerit nobis dimittatis.»
shall-please you-keep and what not shall-please to-us you-let-go
Quo audito, ut post missas nos expectaret præcipimus, et
which heard that after masses us he-should-await we-order and
quod offerebant eo præsente, finita Missa, nostris retulimus;
what they-offered him present finished the-Mass to-ours we-reported
qui hoc ipsum divinæ ascribebant largitioni, eo quod hoc
who this very to-divine ascribed largess by-this that this
solum quod deerat, quod quærendo fatigaremur, inopinate
only which was-lacking which by-seeking we-were-wearied unexpectedly
religiosorum fratrum deportatione delegasset.
of-religious brothers by-the-conveying it-had-sent

6 · THE ASSEMBLY FOR THE CONSECRATION

Suger sets the consecration for June 11 and invites the prelates of France. The king, Queen Eleanor, the queen mother, and seventeen archbishops and bishops come, and after a night of vigil the bishops, robed in white, consecrate the water at a vat and sprinkle the church's outer walls while the king and his men hold back the crowd.

Urgebat deinceps novæ fieri consecrationem ecclesiæ tam
pressed thereafter of-the-new to-be-made the-consecration church as-much
operis laboriosa consummatio quam nostra, quæ ad hoc diu
of-the-work the-laborious completion as our which for this long
anhelaverat, suspensa devotio. Et quoniam tam ipsam quam
had-panted suspended devotion and since as-much it as
sanctorum dominorum nostrorum, velut pro gratiarum actione
of-the-holy lords our as-if for of-thanks the-giving
et laboris nostri gratissimo fructu, translationem fieri
and of-labor our for-the-most-welcome fruit the-translation to-be-made
celeberrimam optando affectaremus, regiæ majestatis serenissimi
most-solemn by-desiring we-were-aiming-at of-royal majesty of-the-most-serene

regis Francorum Ludovici placido favore (desiderabat enim
king of-the-Franks Louis with-the-placid favor he-desired for
sanctos Martyres suos protectores ardentissime videre), diem
the-holy Martyrs his protectors most-ardently to-see a-day
agendi secunda junii dominica, videlicet III idus, quod est
for-doing on-the-second of-June Sunday namely third ides which is
Barnabæ Apostoli, consulte assignavimus.
of-Barnabas the-Apostle advisedly we-assigned
Invitatorias itaque nuntiis multis, etiam cursoribus et
invitatory and-so by-envoys many also by-runners and
præambulis pene per universas Galliarum regiones litteras
forerunners almost through all of-the-Gauls regions letters
delegavimus; archiepiscopos, episcopos, ex parte Sanctorum et
we-sent the-archbishops the-bishops on behalf of-the-Saints and
debito apostolatus eorum tantæ interesse solemnitati votive
by-the-debt of-apostolate their so-great to-attend solemnity eagerly
sollicitavimus. Quorum cum multos et diversos ad hoc
we-urged of-whom when many and various for this
peragendum gratanter, gratantius omnes, si fieri posset,
completing gladly more-gladly all if to-be-done it-could
excepissemus. Ipse dominus rex Ludovicus, et regina
we-would-have-received himself the-lord king Louis and the-queen
conjux ejus Aanor, et mater ejus, et regni optimates
wife his Eleanor and mother his and of-the-kingdom magnates
perendie adventarunt. De diversis nationum et regnorum
on-the-third-day arrived of various of-nations and kingdoms
proceribus, nobilibus, et gregariis militum et peditum
nobles noble and common of-knights and of-foot
turmis, nulla suppetit computatio. Archiepiscoporum vero
troops no is-at-hand count of-the-archbishops but
et episcoporum assistentium hæc intitulata sunt nomina:
and of-bishops present these inscribed are the-names

Samson Remensis archiepiscopus, Hugo Rothomagensis
Samson of-Reims archbishop Hugh of-Rouen
archiepiscopus, Guido Senonum archiepiscopus, Theobaldus
archbishop Guy of-Sens archbishop Theobald
Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Gaufredus Carnoti episcopus,
of-Canterbury archbishop Geoffrey of-Chartres bishop
Joslenus Suessorum episcopus, Simon Noviomi episcopus,
Joscelin of-Soissons bishop Simon of-Noyon bishop
Elias Aurelianis episcopus, Odo Belvaci episcopus, Hugo
Elias of-Orléans bishop Odo of-Beauvais bishop Hugh
Autissiodori episcopus, Alvisus Atrebati episcopus, Guido
of-Auxerre bishop Alvise of-Arras bishop Guy
Catalaunis episcopus, Algarus Constantiarum episcopus,
of-Châlons bishop Algar of-Coutances bishop
Rotrocus Ebroicensis episcopus, Milo Teruanensis episcopus,
Rotrou of-Évreux bishop Milo of-Thérouanne bishop
Manasses Meldis episcopus, Petrus Silvanectis episcopus. Qui
Manasses of-Meaux bishop Peter of-Senlis bishop who
omnes cum gloriose ex altioribus ecclesiæ suæ personis pro
all when gloriously of the-higher of-church their persons for
tanta et tam nobili actione tanto spectaculo accessissent,
so-great and so noble an-action to-so-great a-spectacle had-come
interiorem mentis et corporis intentionem cultus et habitus
the-inner of-mind and of-body intent dress and bearing
exterior designavit. Nos autem non tantum exterioribus
outward showed we moreover not only by-outward-things
(ea enim affluenter sine querela exhiberi præceperamus),
these for abundantly without complaint to-be-furnished we-had-ordered
die sabbati proxima, Sanctorum corpora de suis
on-the-day of-Saturday next of-the-Saints the-bodies from their
assumentes oratoriis, ex consuetudine in palliatis tentoriis in
taking oratories from custom in curtained tents at

exitu chori decentissime reponendo locavimus. Sacramentalia
the-exit of-the-choir most-fittingly by-laying-away we-placed the-sacramental
consecrationis instrumenta devote tantum gaudium præstolantes
of-consecration instruments devoutly so-great joy awaiting
præparabamus, quo intenta tantarum personarum, tam sancta
we-prepared by-which intent of-so-great persons so holy
expedite ecclesiam intus et extra perlustrare posset processio,
readily the-church within and without to-go-round could the-procession
componebamus. Unde cum gloriosum et humillimum
we-arranged whence when the-glorious and most-humble
Francorum regem Ludovicum ut per optimates et nobiles
of-the-Franks king Louis that through magnates and nobles
suos ab ipsa processione obviantem arceret turbam
his from the-very procession meeting he-should-keep-off the-crowd
humiliter rogassemus, humilius satis per seipsum et per
humbly we-had-asked more-humbly enough through himself and through
suos hoc se libenter facturum respondit.
his-men this himself gladly to-be-going-to-do he-answered
Pernoctantes itaque tota nocte vespertina matutinorum
spending-the-night and-so the-whole night evening of-matins
synaxi in laudem Divinitatis, Jesum Christum Dominum
by-the-office in praise of-the-Divinity Jesus Christ Lord
nostrum propitiationem pro peccatis nostris factum, quatinus
our propitiation for sins our made that
pro suo honore et Sanctorum suorum amore sanctum locum
for his honor and of-Saints his love the-holy place
misericorditer visitare, et sacris actionibus non tantum
mercifully to-visit and at-the-sacred actions not only
potentialiter, sed etiam personaliter adesse dignaretur,
in-power but also in-person to-be-present he-would-deign
devotissime flagitabamus. Igitur summo mane archiepiscopi,
most-devoutly we-begged therefore at-highest morning archbishops

episcopi, de propriis hospitiis cum archidiaconis et abbatibus
bishops from own lodgings with archdeacons and abbots
et aliis honestis personis ad ecclesiam accedentes, episcopaliter
and other honorable persons to the-church coming episcopally
se componebant, et ad dolium pro consecratione aquarum
themselves arrayed and at the-tub for the-consecration of-the-waters
superius, inter sanctorum Martyrum sepulturas et sancti
above between of-the-holy Martyrs the-tombs and of-the-holy
Salvatoris altare, satis decenter, satis venerabiliter assistebant.
Savior the-altar quite fittingly quite venerably stood
Videres, et qui aderant non sine devotione magna
you-might-see and those-who were-present not without devotion great
videbant, tot tantorum choream pontificum vestibus
saw so-many of-so-great a-dance pontiffs with-vestments
albis decoram, mitris pontificalibus et circinatis aurifrisiis
white handsome with-miters pontifical and circled orphreys
pretiosis admodum comatam, pastorales virgas manibus tenere,
precious very tufted pastoral staffs in-hands to-hold
circumcirca dolium ambire, nomen Domini exorcizando
all-around the-tub to-go-round the-name of-the-Lord by-exorcizing
invocare; tam gloriosos et admirabiles viros æterni sponsi
to-invoke so glorious and admirable men of-the-eternal bridegroom
nuptias tam pie celebrare, ut potius chorus cœlestis quam
the-nuptials so piously to-celebrate that rather a-chorus heavenly than
terrenus, opus divinum quam humanum, tam regi quam
earthly a-work divine than human as-much to-the-king as
assistenti nobilitati videretur apparere. Populus enim pro
to-the-attending nobility seemed to-appear the-people for because-of
intolerabili magnitudinis suæ impetu foris agebatur, et dum
the-unbearable of-size its onset outside was-driven and while
chorus præfatus aquam benedictam extra, hysopo ecclesiæ
the-chorus aforesaid water blessed outside with-the-hyssop of-the-church

parietes virtuose aspergendo, projiciebat, rex ipse ejusque
the-walls powerfully by-sprinkling threw the-king himself and-his
decuriones tumultuosum impetum arcebant, et virgis et
officers the-tumultuous onset kept-off and with-rods and
baculis regredientes ad portas protegebant.
sticks those-returning at the-doors protected

7 · THE TRANSLATION OF THE SAINTS AND THE ALTARS

The king himself carries the silver shrine of Saint Denis in procession through the cloister, and the relics are laid on the upper altar. The prelates consecrate the principal altar and twenty others in the choir and crypt at once, and their masses sound angelic. All acclaim Christ, praying that he make heaven and earth one commonwealth.

Ut autem, peractis ordinarie sanctæ consecrationis mysteriis,
when moreover completed in-order of-the-holy consecration the-mysteries
ventum est ad sanctarum reliquiarum repositionem, ad
come it-was to of-the-holy relics the-laying-away to
sanctorum dominorum nostrorum antiquos et venerandos
of-the-holy lords our the-ancient and venerable
tumulos accessimus (neque enim adhuc de loco suo mota
tombs we-approached nor for yet from place their moved
erant). Prosternentes autem se tam ipsi pontifices
they-were prostrating moreover themselves as-much the-very pontiffs
quam dominus rex, et nos omnes, quantum pro loci
as the-lord king and we all as-far-as for of-the-place
angustia permittebamur, inspectis isto operto venerandis
the-narrowness we-were-allowed beheld this opened the-venerable
scriniis rege Dagoberto fabricatis, in quibus sanctissima et
shrines by-king Dagobert made in which the-most-holy and

Deo chara eorum continebantur corpora, gaudio inæstimabili
to-God dear their were-contained bodies with-joy inestimable
psallebant et flebant, regemque tam devotum quam humilem
they-sang-psalms and wept and-the-king as devout as humble
accersientes: «Vade, inquiunt, et tu ipse manibus tuis
summoning go they-say and you yourself with-hands your
dominum et apostolum et protectorem nostrum huc afferre
lord and apostle and protector our hither to-bring
adjuva, ut sacratissimos cineres veneremur, sacratissimas urnas
help that the-most-sacred ashes we-may-venerate the-most-sacred urns
amplectamur, toto tempore vitæ nostræ eas suscepisse,
we-may-embrace for-the-whole time of-life our them to-have-received
eas tenuisse gratulemur. Hi sunt enim sancti viri, qui pro
them to-have-held we-may-rejoice these are for the-holy men who for
testamento Dei sua corpora tradiderunt, qui pro salute
the-covenant of-God their bodies handed-over who for salvation
nostra, charitatis igne accensi, terram suam et cognationem
our of-charity by-fire kindled land their and kindred
exierunt, qui fidem Jesu Christi apostolica auctoritate omnem
left who the-faith of-Jesus Christ by-apostolic authority all
Galliam edocuerunt, pro eo viriliter certaverunt, nudi virgas,
Gaul taught for him manfully strove naked the-rods
ligati feroces et famelicas bestias compescuerunt, equulei
bound fierce and famished beasts they-restrained of-the-rack
extensionem, clibani succensionem illæsi, demumque hebetatis
the-stretching of-the-oven the-kindling unharmed and-at-last with-blunted
securibus decapitationem felicem sustinuerunt. Age igitur,
axes beheading happy endured come therefore
rex christianissime, beatum suscipiamus susceptorem nostrum
king most-Christian the-blessed let-us-take-up sponsor our
Dionysium, suppliciter flagitantes ut pro nobis petat ab
Denis suppliantly begging that for us he-may-ask from

eo qui fideliter promisit; dilectio et benignitas quam habes
him who faithfully promised the-love and kindness which you-have
semper pro quibuscumque petieris impetrabit.» Protinus
always for whatever you-shall-have-asked shall-obtain at-once
lacerti moventur, brachia extenduntur, tot et tantæ manus
shoulders are-moved arms are-stretched-out so-many and so-great hands
mittuntur, quod nec etiam septima manus ipsa sancta scrinia
are-put-forth that not even the-seventh hand the-very holy shrines
attingere valeret. Eapropter ipse dominus rex se medium
to-touch could therefore himself the-lord king himself in-the-middle
eis ingerens, lecticam argenteam specialis patroni de
among-them thrusting the-bier silver of-the-special patron from
manu episcoporum, sicut videtur, de manu Remensis
the-hand of-the-bishops as it-seems from the-hand of-the-Reims
archiepiscopi, Senonensis, Carnotensis et aliorum assumens,
archbishop of-Sens of-Chartres and of-others taking
tam devote quam honeste prævius egrediebatur. Mirabile visu!
as devoutly as honorably going-before he-went-out wondrous to-see
Nunquam talem, præter illam quæ in antiqua consecratione
never such besides that which in the-ancient consecration
cœlestis exercitus visa est, processionem aliquis videre
of-the-heavenly host seen was procession anyone to-see
potuit, cum sanctorum corpora Martyrum et Confessorum
could when of-the-holy the-bodies Martyrs and Confessors
de tentoriis palliatis, humeris et collis episcoporum et
from the-tents curtained on-shoulders and necks of-bishops and
comitum et baronum, sanctissimo Dionysio sociisque ejus
counts and barons most-holy Denis and-companions his
ad eburneum ostium occurrerunt; per claustrum cum
at the-ivory door met through the-cloister with
candelabris et crucibus et aliis festivis ornamentis, cum
candlesticks and crosses and other festal ornaments with

odis et laudibus multis processerunt; dominos suos tam
songs and praises many they-proceeded lords their as-much
familiariter quam præ gaudio lacrymabiliter deportaverunt.
intimately as for joy tearfully they-carried
Nullo unquam majori in omnibus potuerunt gaudio sublimari.
by-no ever greater in all-things could-they joy to-be-exalted
Revertentes igitur ad ecclesiam, et per gradus ad altare
returning therefore to the-church and by the-steps to the-altar
superius quieti Sanctorum destinatum ascendentes, super
upper to-the-rest of-the-Saints destined climbing on
antiquum altare pignoribus Sanctorum repositis, de
the-ancient altar the-pledges of-the-Saints laid-away concerning
nova ante novam eorum sepulturam consecranda agebatur
the-new before the-new their tomb to-be-consecrated was-dealt
principali ara, quam domino Remensi archiepiscopo Samsoni
principal altar which to-the-lord of-Reims archbishop Samson
imposuimus consecrandam. Agebatur etiam de aliis tam
we-assigned to-be-consecrated it-was-dealt also about other as
gloriose quam solemniter aris viginti consecrandis: quarum
gloriously as solemnly altars twenty to-be-consecrated of-which
illam quæ in medio Salvatori nostro et sanctorum choro
that which in the-middle to-Savior our and of-the-holy to-the-choir
Angelorum et sanctæ Cruci assignatur, domino Cantuariensi
Angels and to-the-holy Cross is-assigned to-the-lord of-Canterbury
archiepiscopo Theobaldo; beatæ semperque virginis Dei
archbishop Theobald of-the-blessed and-ever virgin of-God
Genitricis Mariæ, domino Hugoni Rotomagensi archiepiscopo;
Mother Mary to-the-lord Hugh of-Rouen archbishop
sancti Peregrini, domino Hugoni Autissiodorensi episcopo;
of-Saint Peregrinus to-the-lord Hugh of-Auxerre bishop
sancti Eustachii, domino Werdoni Catalaunensi episcopo;
of-Saint Eustace to-the-lord Guy of-Châlons bishop

sanctæ Osmannæ, domino Petro Silvanectensi episcopo; sancti
of-Saint Osmanna to-the-lord Peter of-Senlis bishop of-Saint
Innocentii, domino Simoni Noviomensi episcopo; sancti
Innocent to-the-lord Simon of-Noyon bishop of-Saint
Cucuphatis, domino Alviso Atrebatensi episcopo; sancti
Cucuphas to-the-lord Alvise of-Arras bishop of-Saint
Eugenii, domino Algaro Constantiarum episcopo; sancti
Eugene to-the-lord Algar of-Coutances bishop of-Saint
Hilari, domino Rotroco Ebroicensi episcopo; sancti Johannis
Hilary to-the-lord Rotrou of-Évreux bishop of-Saint John
Baptistæ et sancti Johannis Evangelistæ, domino Nicolao
the-Baptist and of-Saint John the-Evangelist to-the-lord Nicholas
Cameracensi episcopo sacrandam imposuimus. In crypta vero
of-Cambrai bishop to-be-consecrated we-assigned in the-crypt but
inferius, majus altare in honore sanctæ Dei Genitricis
below the-greater altar in honor of-the-holy of-God Mother
Mariæ virginis, domino Gaufredo Burdegalensi archiepiscopo;
Mary virgin to-the-lord Geoffrey of-Bordeaux archbishop
in dextra parte, altare sancti Christophori martyris, domino
on the-right side the-altar of-Saint Christopher martyr to-the-lord
Heliæ Aurelianensi episcopo; sancti Stephani protomartyris,
Elias of-Orléans bishop of-Saint Stephen protomartyr
domino Gaufredo Carnotensi episcopo; sancti Eadmundi regis,
to-the-lord Geoffrey of-Chartres bishop of-Saint Edmund king
domino Werdoni Senonensi archiepiscopo; sancti Benedicti,
to-the-lord Guy of-Sens archbishop of-Saint Benedict
domino Josleno Suessionensi episcopo. In sinistra parte,
to-the-lord Joscelin of-Soissons bishop on the-left side
sanctorum Sixti, Felicissimi et Agapiti, domino Miloni
of-the-saints Sixtus Felicissimus and Agapitus to-the-lord Milo
Taruanensi episcopo; sancti Barnabæ apostoli, domino Manassæ
of-Thérouanne bishop of-Saint Barnabas apostle to-the-lord Manasses

Meldensi episcopo; item et sancti Georgii martyris et
of-Meaux bishop likewise both of-Saint George martyr and
Gauburgis virginis, eidem episcopo; sancti Lucæ evangelistæ,
of-Walburga virgin to-the-same bishop of-Saint Luke evangelist
domino Odoni Belvacensi episcopo consecrandam assignavimus.
to-the-lord Odo of-Beauvais bishop to-be-consecrated we-assigned
Qui omnes tam festive, tam solemniter, tam diversi, tam
who all so festively so solemnly so diverse so
concorditer, tam propinqui, tam hilariter ipsam altarium
harmoniously so near so cheerfully the-very of-the-altars
consecratione missarum solemnem celebrationem superius
with-the-consecration of-masses solemn celebration above
inferiusque peragebant, ut ex ipsa suî consonantia et
and-below performed that from the-very of-itself consonance and
cohærente harmoniæ grata melodia potius angelicus quam
by-the-coherent of-harmony pleasing melody rather an-angelic than
humanus concentus æstimaretur, et ab omnibus corde
human concert it-was-reckoned and by all with-heart
et ore acclamaretur: «Benedicta gloria Domini de
and with-mouth it-was-acclaimed blessed the-glory of-the-Lord from
loco suo; benedictum et laudabile et superexaltatum nomen
place his blessed and praiseworthy and exalted-above-all name
tuum, Domine Jesu Christe, quem summum Pontificem
your Lord Jesus Christ whom as-highest Pontiff
unxit Deus Pater oleo exsultationis præ participibus
anointed God the-Father with-the-oil of-gladness above fellows
tuis. Quæ sacramentali sanctissimi Chrismatis delibatione et
your who by-the-sacramental of-the-most-holy Chrism anointing and
sanctissimæ Eucharistiæ susceptione materialia immaterialibus,
of-the-most-holy Eucharist by-the-receiving material-things to-immaterial
corporalia spiritualibus, humana divinis uniformiter concopulas,
bodily to-spiritual human to-divine uniformly you-join

sacramentaliter reformas ad suum puriores principium; his
sacramentally you-reform to their purer beginning by-these
et hujusmodi benedictionibus visibilibus invisibiliter restauras,
and such blessings visible invisibly you-restore
etiam præsentem in regnum cœleste mirabiliter transformas,
even the-present into the-kingdom heavenly wondrously you-transform
ut cum tradideris regnum Deo et Patri, nos et
that when you-shall-have-handed-over the-kingdom to-God and Father us and
angelicam creaturam, cœlum et terram, unam rempublicam
the-angelic creation heaven and earth one commonwealth
potenter et misericorditer efficias; qui vivis et regnas
mightily and mercifully you-may-make who live and reign
Deus per omnia sæcula sæculorum. Amen.»
God through all the-ages of-ages Amen
